Structuring Knowledge

The development and evaluation of tools to support learning

William Ross Reader

Submitted for the degree
of
Doctor of Philosophy

University of York
Department of Psychology

September 1994

ABSTRACT

The use of computer-based knowledge mapping and knowledge structuring tools in education is something that has recently excited much interest. The approach is not new, many of the techniques described here date back to the 1960s and 1970s (and perhaps earlier), although then maps were drawn on paper. Use of computer-based knowledge mapping tools provides us with the possibility of harnessing the power of the computer to produce more engaging and interactive software. This thesis examines some of the issues involved in developing and using these tools. It was found that the free-form knowledge mapping software, although useful, may provide learners with too much freedom and not enough support. Following on from this observation an attempt was made to develop and evaluate tools that required learners to build more structured representations. Although more research needs to be conducted, the results of the evaluative studies were encouraging, suggesting that constrained knowledge structuring tools may provide a useful method for aiding the process of learning.

CONTENTS

Abstract i
Contents ii
Figures viii
Tables xi
Declaration xiii
Acknowledgements xiv
Dedication xv
Preface and overview xvi

Chapter 1: The process of learning 1

1.1 Introduction 1
1.2 The goals of learning 1
1.2.1 Learning as progression towards expertise 6
1.2.2 Legitimate peripheral participation 7
1.2.3 Summary 8
1.3 Acquiring knowledge 8
1.3.1 Knowledge structures and learning 9
1.3.2 Accretion 10
1.3.3 Restructuring and conceptual change 13
1.3.4 The tuning of conceptual structure 15
1.3.4.1 Schemata and procedural and declarative knowledge 18
1.3.4.2 Discrete or progressive learning? 18
1.3.5 Summary 20
1.4 Self-reflective learning: monitoring and repair 21
1.4.1 Summary 22
1.5 Can effective monitoring and reflective skills be taught? 23
1.6 Conclusions 24

Chapter 2: Computer-assisted learning 27

2.1 Introduction 27
2.2 Programmed learning 28
2.3 Microworlds 29
2.4 Intelligent tutoring 31
2.5 Hypertext 32
2.5.1 Application areas of hypertext 32
2.5.2 Hypertext for learning 33
2.5.3 Problems with hypertext 35
2.5.3.1 Getting lost 35
2.5.3.2 The implications of disorientation for learning 37
2.5.3.3 Comprehension failure 37
2.5.3.4 Problems with access 38
2.5.3.5 Inefficient learning strategies 39
2.5.4 Summary 40
2.5.5 Supporting learning from hypertext 40
2.5.5.1 Quizzes and questions 41

2.5.5.2 Hypertext and artificial intelligence........................41
2.5.5.3 User-created hypertexts....................................42
2.6 Discussion..43

Chapter 3: Learning through knowledge mapping....................44

3.1 Introduction 44
3.2 Ausubel's influence on concept mapping.........................45
3.3 Cognitive accounts of knowledge mapping 48
3.4 An analysis of claims for knowledge mapping.....................49
3.4.1 Knowledge mapping improves retention...........................49
3.4.2 Knowledge mapping fosters understanding 50
3.4.2.1 Visualisation..51
3.4.2.2 Supporting relational thinking...............................52
3.4.2.3 Supporting communication....................................53
3.4.3 Other factors..54
3.4.4 When concept mapping may not be effective 55
3.4.5 Evidence for the effectiveness of knowledge mapping 56
3.5 Computer-based knowledge mapping tools 56
3.5.1 SemNet...57
3.5.2 Learning Tool – an "Ideas Processor"..................................59
3.5.3 KNOT 61
3.5.4 TextVision 3D 62
3.5.5 Theories embodied in the tools 64
3.5.6 Discussion 67
3.6 Conclusions...69

Chapter 4: Learning and access strategies in hypertext............70

4.1 Introduction 70
4.2 The hypertext system 71
4.2.1 Access tools..71
4.2.2 Navigation facilities..72
4.2.3 The knowledge mapping tool..73
4.3 Method...74
4.3.1 Design..74
4.3.2 Experimental procedure 75
4.3.2.1 Practice session..75
4.3.2.2 Experimental session...76
4.3.3 Subjects 77
4.3.4 Measurements 77
4.3.4.1 Screen recordings..77
4.3.4.2 Verbal protocols 77
4.3.4.3 Video recording...78
4.4 Results...78
4.4.1 Access of material screens 78
4.4.2 Differences among pairs..78
4.4.3 Scores on the test..83
4.4.4 Strategies for the interaction: a first pass 83
4.4.5 The processes involved in the interaction 84
4.4.5.1 The process of categorisation 84
4.4.5.2 The comprehension level 85
4.4.5.3 The regulatory level...86
4.4.5.4 The interaction level..88
4.4.5.5 General comments..89
4.4.5.6 Summary of categories 89

4.4.6 Use of the knowledge mapping tool 91
4.5 Discussion and implications for further research 93
4.5.1 Why was there an absence of goal-directedness? 93
4.5.2 Effective learning and effective knowledge mapping 94

Chapter 5: Developing and evaluating tools to support learning and access 95

5.1 Strategies for more effective learning and search 95
5.1.1 The problem of goal-directedness 95
5.1.2 Supporting goal-directed access 96
5.2 Evaluating the effectiveness of knowledge mapping and questioning strategy 97
5.2.1 Method 98
5.2.1.1 Design 98
5.2.1.2 Procedure 98
5.2.1.3 Materials 99
5.2.1.4 Subjects 100
5.2.2 Results 100
5.2.2.1 Testing for increased learning 100
5.2.2.2 Discussion 102
5.3.2.3 Testing for more goal-directed access 103
5.3.2.4 Discussion 104
5.3.2.5 What is the source of the effect on learning? 105
5.2.3 Summary of quantitative results 109
5.2.4 Qualitative results 110
5.2.4.1 Investigating the process of knowledge map construction 110
5.2.4.2 The relationships between organising and structuring 112
5.2.4.3 Accounting for these results 113
5.3 Conclusions 114

Chapter 6: Evaluation of paper-based maps 116

6.1 Introduction and motivation for study 3 116
6.1.1 Subjects 117
6.1.2 Instructions 117
6.1.3 The task 117
6.2 Analyses of knowledge maps 119
6.2.1 Analysis of macro-structure 119
6.2.1.1 Structural hierarchies 119
6.2.1.2 Representations based on information flow 120
6.2.1.3 Process versus structure distinction 120
6.2.1.4 Network maps 120
6.2.2 Summary of macrostructure 124
6.2.3 Achievement of task goals 124
6.2.3.1 Representing structure 124
6.2.3.2 Representing processes 125
6.2.3.3 Representing argument 125
6.2.4 Synthesis 126
6.2.4.1 Misconceptions and mis-misconceptions 126
6.2.5 The students' perspective 127
6.2.6 Relationships to the maps produced in Study 2 127
6.2.6.1 Differences 127
6.2.6.2 Similarities 128

6.3 Discussion 129

Chapter 7: Knowledge structuring tools 131
7.1 Introduction 131
7.2 Representing argument 131
7.3 Notations and tools for representing argument 132
7.3.1 Green's cognitive dimensions 133
7.3.2 Toulmin argument structures 135
7.3.3 IBIS, gIBIS and PHI 138
7.3.4 ARL and Euclid 139
7.3.5 QOC 141
7.4 Summary 142
7.5 Hybrid Systems 143
7.5.1 Writing Environment (WE) 143
7.5.2 Author's Argumentation Assistant (AAA) 144
7.5.3 Summary 145
7.6 Relationships with knowledge mapping 146

Chapter 8: Using structured maps 147

8.1 Introduction 147
8.1.1 Subjects 147
8.1.2 Instructions 147
8.1.3 The task 148
8.2 Analyses of maps 148
8.2.1 Overview 148
8.2.2 Some observed problems 149
8.2.2.1 When hypotheses are not hypotheses 150
8.2.2.2 Problems specifying evidence 155
8.2.2.3 Lack of structure revisited 155
8.3 Summary 156

Chapter 9: The design of a knowledge structuring tool 160

9.1 Introduction 160
9.2 The notation used for AKA 160
9.3 Using AKA 164
9.3.1 The user interface 164
9.3.2 Nodes and links 165
9.3.3 Creating objects 165
9.3.4 Moving objects 166
9.3.5 Deleting objects 167
9.3.6 Linking objects 167
9.3.7 More about arrows 169
9.3.8 Changing the name and type of nodes and links 169
9.3.9 Text fields 170
9.3.10 Changing the strength of links 171
9.3.11 Balloon help 172
9.3.12 "Why not?" help 173
9.3.13 Flashing direction 174
9.3.14 Listing nodes 174
9.3.14.1 Listing by order 175
9.3.14.2 Listing by type 175
9.3.15 Aliases 175
9.3.16 Refreshing the screen 177

9.4 Summary 177

Chapter 10: Two case studies

10.1 Introduction..179
10.2 Method 180
10.2.1 Subjects..180
10.2.2 Materials 180
10.2.3 Procedure..181
10.3 Case study 1: health economics 181
10.3.1 Use of the tools..182
10.3.2 Description of the interaction..182
10.3.3 Using the constrained tool..189
10.3.4 Summary 192
10.4 Case study 2: structuralism 192
10.4.1 Use of the two tools..192
10.4.2 Use of the unconstrained tool..192
10.4.3 Use of the constrained tool 196
10.5 Summary..201
10.5.1 Usability issues..201
10.5.2 Problems with the model 201
10.5.3 Conceptual issues: using the tools..202
10.6 Factors affecting the structure of knowledge maps..203
10.6.1 Framing effects 204
10.6.2 Viscosity..204
10.6.3 Premature commitment to structure..204
10.6.4 Unconsidered relations..205
10.6.5 Domain knowledge..205
10.6.6 Reasoning and argument skills..206
10.7 Summary..206

Chapter 11: A comparison of structured and unstructured tools..206

11.1 Introduction..206
11.1.1 Formalisation and premature commitment revisited..206
11.1.2 Is learning different? 207
11.1.2.1 No premature commitment, no commitment..209
11.1.2.2 Fluidity: escape from the problems of early commitment? 209
11.1.3 Summary 211
11.2 Method 211
11.2.1 The task..211
11.2.2 Design..213
11.2.3 Procedure..213
11.2.4 Subjects..215
11.2.5 Potential outcomes..215
11.3 Results..216
11.3.1 Initial comparisons 216
11.3.1.1 Number of nodes..216
11.3.1.2 Node types..218
11.3.1.3 Link types..218
11.3.1.4 Summary..220
11.3.2 Scoring the maps 220
11.3.2.1 Ratings 222
11.3.2.2 Efficiency 222

11.3.2.3 Proposition agreement....224
11.3.2.4 Summary....225
11.3.3 Descriptions of the maps....225
11.3.3.1 Constrained tool subjects....225
11.3.3.2 Unconstrained tool subjects....228
11.3.4 Scores on the summaries....229
11.3.4.1 Pre-test....229
11.3.4.2 Post-test....230
11.3.5 Revisions....230
11.4 General discussion....231

Chapter 12: Summary and conclusions....234

12.1 Introduction....234
12.2 Factors influencing knowledge mapping....235
12.3 Future developments....237
12.3.1 Better developed passive systems....237
12.3.2 Active systems....239
12.4 Some questions for future research....241

References....243

Appendix 1: instructions for study 1....257

Session 1: familiarisation with operations....257
The concept mapping tool....261
Session 1 - Parts 2 & 3....265
Session 2....266
Questions....268

Appendix 2: instructions for study 2....269

Using Q-Tool....272
Practice session....276
Questions for session 2....277
Knowledge maps....280

Appendix 3: instructions and marking schemes for final study....288

Instructions for using AKA....288
Instructions for using K-Tool....295
The goals of the task....303
Hints Sheet....304
Rating sheet....305
Marking scheme for maps....306
Knowledge maps....309

FIGURES

Figure 1.1 Part of a possible categorisation scheme for ontological categories, adapted from Chi (1993)....11

Figure 1.2 One of the problems that McCloskey gave subjects to solve. Does the ball thrown into the tube follow trajectory A or B after leaving it? 12

Figure 1.3 Thagard's types of conceptual change (adapted from Thagard, w1992)....14

Figure 1.4 Schematic of the ACT architecture....17

Figure 3.1 Novak-Gowin style concept map showing hierarchical structure, hatched cross-links and dotted instance ellipses....47

Figure 3.2 An example of a SemNet network relating to the "Twin Peaks" television series. 58

Figure 3.3 Learning tool concept map and masterlist windows....60

Figure 3.4 An example Knot network based on approaches to educational computing....61

Figure 3.5 An example screen from TextVision 3D, showing indegree similarity....63

Figure 3.6 Comparisons of Knot Networks showing expert (left) and intermediate (right) understanding of statistical tests. 68

Figure 4.1 Table of contents screen from the 'Callanish' system, note the highlighted potion on the 'Topics' window indicating the topic selected, also note the italicised text indicating that the corresponding screen has been visited. 72

Figure 4.2 An example screen from the 'Callanish' system....73

Figure 4.3 The knowledge mapping tool used in this experiment 74

Figure 4.4 Mean number of screens accessed by each facility....79

Figure 4.5 Facilities for access of material....79

Figure 5.1 An example of the augmented knowledge mapping tool showing a questions, subquestions, concept nodes and answer nodes....96

Figure 5.2 A flow chart of the ideal strategy 97

Figure 5.3 Interaction between question type and condition. 101

Figure 5.4 A typical map from the augmented tool condition. 105

Figure 5.5 Map showing failure to link, spatial clustering and superordinate link organisation. 111

Figure 5.6 Map showing arbitrary link names being used to organise information 111

Figure 5.7 Map showing a large number of structural relationships112

Figure 6.1 A hierarchical map..121

Figure 6.2 map based on information flow..122

Figure 6.3 a map dichotomising process and structure 123

Figure 7.1 An example of Toulmin's argument structure.....................................136

Figure 7.2 Basic syntax of IBIS (adapted from Lee & Lai 1991)...........................138

Figure 7.3 Comparison of the five notations discussed..142

Figure 8.1 Map showing hypotheses that are really claims...................................151

Figure 8.2 A map showing testable hypotheses..152

Figure 8.3 Map showing an intervening hypothesis between a claim and evidence (text starting "Concrete words recalled...")..........................154

Figure 8.4 In this map, the sentence starting "It's very difficult to determine..." is labelled 'evidence' (coloured boxes were used to indicate this) but is more of a critique..157

Figure 8.5 Example of inexplicit evidence-hypothesis linking..............................158

Figure 9.1 The tools palette...164

Figure 9.2 The main components of the network...165

Figure 9.3 Choosing the object type from the pop-up menu..................................166

Figure 9.4 A dialog box warning about deletion...167

Figure 9.5 Linking nodes by dragging between them whilst in link mode, note that the line with the arrow follows the mouse-pointer as it is moved...168

Figure 9.6 The dialog box presented when two nodes cannot be linked together..168

Figure 9.7 Scrolling dialog containing the permitted link names...........................169

Figure 9.8 The 'change type' and 'rename node' options....................................170

Figure 9.9 Changing the strength of a link 171

Figure 9.10 Balloon help for the "delete node" button......................................172

Figure 9.11 Balloon help for linking...173

Figure 9.12 "Why not?" help window selected after the user attempted to link to evidence nodes...174

Figure 9.13 Listing the nodes by order of construction..176

Figure 9.14 Listing the nodes by type..176

Figure 9.15 Dialog box presented when attempting to delete an alias......................177

Figure 9.16 Dialog box presented when attempting to delete a node that has an alias associated with it..178

Figure 10.1 Notes created for the node 'Class differences in health"......................183

Figure 10.2 Skeletal notes in explanation note-field..184

Figure 10.3 An evidence and critique node, note that the information in the evidence node is more of a critique than evidence...............................185

Figure 10.4 The skeletal outline is expanded, note that the assertion 'Downward drift' contains both expository information and information that criticises this position...185

Figure 10.5 Explanation nodes are linked to the central 'note' node 'Common sense'..187

Figure 10.6 The network with some of the note-fields visible..............................188

Figure 10.7 The finished map created using the constrained tool...........................191

Figure 10.8 The network constructed using the unconstrained tool almost complete...194

Figure 11.1 Cumulative agreement scores..225

Figure 12.1 Mock up of tutor interface..241

TABLES

Table 3.1 A comparison of the essential features of the tools..............................65

Table 4.1 Overview or experimental procedure...75

Table 4.2 Access of material summarised..80

Table 4.3 The verbal protocols categorized...85

Table 4.4 Percentage number of relevant and irrelevant screens accessed.................90

Table 4.5 Total number of occurrences of each category in the regulatory level for all pairs...91

Table 5.1 Instructions for augmented knowledge mapping tool condition.................99

Table 5.10 Correlations for knowledge mapping tool condition.............................107

Table 5.11 Correlations for augmented knowledge mapping tool condition...............107

Table 5.2 Instructions for knowledge mapping condition....................................99

Table 5.3 Instructions for notes condition..99

Table 5.4 Mean percentage scores for each of the conditions...............................100

Table 5.5 Percentage of time spent on each of the facilities.................................101

Table 5.6 Times spent of irrelevant/relevant screens...103

Table 5.7 Mean numbers of screens accessed per condition.................................103

Table 5.8 Correlation matrix of principal variables for all three conditions................106

Table 5.9 Correlations for note tool condition..107

Table 6.1 Printed instructions given to students..117

Table 6.2 Number of students showing each type of macrostructure......................119

Table 8.1 The task description as presented to the students.................................148

Table 9.1 List of nodes and permitted relationships...163

Table 11.1 Instructions given to all subjects..213

Table 11.2 Hint sheet given to all subjects..214

Table 11.20 Mean percent scores for post-test summaries.....................................230

Table 11.21 Mean number of revisions per condition...230

Table 11.22 Activities for both conditions that occurred in the first and second halves of the interaction, revision activities in bold text.........................231

Table 11.3 Instructions for writing summaries....214
Table 11.4 Comparison of number of nodes per condition....216
Table 11.5 Comparison of number of words per condition....217
Table 11.6 Mean number of words per node....217
Table 11.7 Number of propositions in the text per condition....217
Table 11.8 Total number of system and user defined node types per condition....218
Table 11.9 Link types for both conditions....218
Table 11.10 Categories for link types....219
Table 11.11 Mean percent scores for maps....221
Table 11.12 Mean number of propositions expressed in the map....221
Table 11.13 Rated scores for completeness....222
Table 11.14 Rated scores for communicability....222
Table 11.15 The mean number of all propositions for both conditions....222
Table 11.16 Mean efficiency index per condition....223
Table 11.17 Efficiency index taking scores on maps into consideration....223
Table 11.18 Agreement scores for propositions....224
Table 11.19 Mean percent scores for the post-test....230

Declaration

Work for this thesis has resulted in the following publications:

Trapp, A, Reader, W.R, Hammond, N.V. (1992). Tools for Knowledge Mapping: A Framework for Understanding. in *Proceedings of the East-West Conference on Emerging Computer Technologies in Education*, International Centre for Scientific and Technical Information, Moscow, Russia.

Reader, W.R. & Hammond, N.V. (1993). Computer-based tools to support learning in hypertext: concept mapping tools and beyond. *Computers and Education., 22,* 1/2, 99-106.

Reader, W.R. & Hammond, N.V. (1993). Supporting search and learning in hypertext using computer-based tools. *Psychology Teaching Review* 2, 89-95.

McKendree, J.E. & Reader, W.R. (1994). The homeopathic fallacy in hypertext: misocnceptions of psychology in the design of computer courseware. *ALT News.* April, 1994.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

First of all thanks must go to my supervisor Nick Hammond for all the help he has given me during my time at York, he gave me just the right mixture of freedom and constraint to enable me to get this thing done. I would also like to thank Jean McKendree for discussing many of the ideas contained in this thesis with me, forcing me to sharpen them up and pointing me down new and intresting avenues of thought.

Various friends should also deserve a mention, not just for the oft expressed reason of 'providing a life outside the PhD', but also for providing ideas that are included in this thesis. Thanks to Mike, Richard, Charles, Alison, Martin and Keith.

Special thanks must go to Catriona for her love and her ability to truly understand.

Finally I must thank my parents for everything that they have given. This thesis is dedicated to them both.

To my parents

PREFACE AND OVERVIEW

Not every end is a goal. The end of a melody is not its goal; but nonetheless, if the melody had not reached its end it would not have reached its goal either. A parable.

F.W.Nietzsche, The Wanderer and his shadow (1880).

This thesis is primarily concerned with an approach to learning known as directed reflection, and a means of achieving this through knowledge mapping and knowledge structuring activities. Knowledge mapping (and knowledge structuring) is a deceptively simple technique for supporting the process of learning, it simply requires the creation of some form of network-based graphical representation of one's knowledge, or some set of learning materials with which one is engaging. The motivation for this is based on a number of assumptions regarding teaching and learning.

The first assumption is that many of the concepts and methods of academic subjects are unnatural in that they are not merely extensions of things that we might have learned through experience. The second assumption is that academic concepts are complex, requiring the learner to assimilate a large amount information. Even apparently simple constructs such as basic atomic structure require much prerequsite knowledge in order to understand them. An in-depth understanding of a construct such as schizophrenia requires the learner to assimilate a huge amount of information relating to symptoms, aetiology, diagonostic criteria, evidence supporting or contradicting various interpretations, models of the disorder and so on. The third assumption is that many of the criteria necessary for understanding these concepts are not taught explicitly. To go back to the schizophrenia example, much of what is taught on schizophrenia requires learners to know what makes a suitable theory of the disorder; how well this theory accounts for what is known about the disorder; what new evidence would be explained by the theory and what evidence would contradict it and so forth.

The experimental chapters of this thesis, reported here in chronological order, can be seen as representative of a journey culminating not in answers but questions. Every study threw up new issues only a handful of which could be pursued in any rigorous way in subsequent studies.

The key attributes of knowledge mapping are focus, externalisation, visualisation and communication. Focus because the idea is that it directs the learners attention on certain attributes of the materials that one is learning about, primarily these involve the relationships between concepts. There can be many different types of relationship:

hierarchical, causal, argumentative and problem-solution to name just four; one of the strengths of knowledge mapping is that it encourages learners to think (and think hard) about relationships that they may not otherwise have considered. Externalisation is the second important attribute. A number of methods serve to focus learners' attention on specific sorts of relationships (tutorials for example); knowledge mapping is different because it holds a record of the relationships that one has previously thought about in portions of the network created earlier. Because information is kept in the network in this form, one is constantly reminded of the results of previous actions, which is likely to have an impact on what one is thinking about at any other point. As we shall see, this often causes problems of consistency. Flowing from the idea of externalisation is visualisation: the map enables things like arguments, hierarchies and so on to be represented in a easy to read manner, something that can facilitate the process of thinking. Communication is the final attribute; learning does not occur in a vacuum (nor should it) we learn as much, if not more, as a result of discussing, chatting and arguing with others as we do sitting alone pouring over a book. Knowledge mapping with its emphasis on focus, externalisation and so forth, can aid certain forms of communication.

Missing from the attributes, but of no less importance in terms of its impact on learning is feedback. Feedback occurs naturally as a result of the other attributes, in some ways the map can be said to 'speak back' to the learner. But only so much. Knowledge mapping and knowledge structuring can only go so far in helping the learner, there is no substitute for incisive comment and even friendly criticism. It is on the question of how to provide effective feedback to learners that this thesis ends, indicating the importance and difficulty of this particular phenomenon.

As I stated above this *summary represents the culmination rather than the starting* point of the research reported in these pages, the journey to this point is summarised below.

The first study (Chapter 4) reports a simple observational study that attempts to investigate the important factors involved in learning from hypertext. It was found that people tend to browse hypertext in a rather undirected fashion something that is consistent with a number of studies (see Chapter 2). This chapter concludes by asking whether there could be ways that encourage learners to be more goal-directed without losing the self-directed nature of hypertext. As well as a hypertext system subjects in Study 1 also used a simple knowledge mapping tool, another question that seemed to be of interest was what effect using a knowledge mapping tool would have on learning when compared to standard note tools such as those that have been incorporated into a number of hypertext systems.

Given these two questions relating to goal-directedness and learning Study 2 was conducted. This investigated methods to encourage active engagement in learning materials and goal-directedness. There were three conditions: knowledge mapping condition, note-tool condition, and a condition that used an augmented knowledge mapping tool that required learners to specify their goals as questions to encourage goal directedness. Study 2 suggested that whilst both the knowledge mapping tools seemed to have equally beneficial effects on learning when compared to the note tool, there was no measurable effect of the augmented tool on goal-directedness. This study also suggested that learners may need more support in creating knowledge maps that are educationally effective and communicable. Study 3 came to a similar conclusion, this was rather different to the previous two studies in that it was based not in the laboratory using experimental subjects, but used real students on a psychology course. It was found that although students were quite able to create interesting maps, they may need more support in directing their attention towards different sorts of relationships in the text-books that they read.

The finding of Studies 2 and 3 led to the notion of constrained knowledge mapping tools, something that I term knowledge structuring tools. These tools require learners to construct maps in accordance with some form of notation (something that is discussed in Chapter 7). A simple constrained notation was used in Study 4 which used three elements: theory, hypothesis and evidence; and three relationships: predicts (theories *predict* hypotheses), supports and contradicts (evidence can either *support* or *contradict* a hypothesis). This notation was designed to capture the argumentative nature of many psychology texts. The results of Study 4 (conducted in the same manner and on the same students as Study 3) suggested that although promising, the notation used would need to be expanded if it is to capture the subtleties of even the most plainly written psychological argument. Chapter 9, therefore, attempts to take the findings of the Study 4 into account and develop a suitable notation and the development of a computer-based tool that embodies this notation.

Chapter 10 looks at two longish studies where the new constrained tool is used together with an unconstrained knowledge mapping tool by two students (one undergraduate, one graduate) tó help them during the initial stages of essay writing. This study, in addition to suggesting further modification to both notation and tool, pointed out some of the different effects that constrained and unconstrained tools may have. It appeared that although unconstrained tools are fine for brainstorming, it was the constrained tool that seemed to really force the students to reflect on their ideas, and get them thinking. There were also some negative aspects of the constrained tools that were used: due to the way that they are created students are always building upon earlier ideas, new insights might make these redundant which makes it difficult to fit the new conception in with the old portions of the network. There are (at least) two alternative perspectives that can be taken on this fact; the first is that since a learner's initial ideas will change in some way over time, one should not require them to impose any formality on their ideas until their ideas have achieved some degree of stability. The second perspective argues that it is the process of formalising that it partly responsible for learners seeing that their earlier conception was lacking in some way, and because of this it is important that they formalise their ideas early on to help them to see this. Furthermore, many of the researchers who suggest that what is called premature commitment to structure is bad, also suggest that formality is bad in itself (see, Shipman and Marshall, 1993).

Study 6 (Chapter 11) looked at some aspects of this argument by comparing subjects creating maps using either a tool that required some degree of early commitment, or a tool that allowed more progressive structuring. Two groups of subjects participated and were required to build maps based on materials contained in a research paper. It was found that maps produced using the constrained tool contained more information relevant to the task goals, and were judged as communicating the main ideas of the paper more effectively than maps created using the unconstrained tool.

This thesis conludes by giving some suggetions for the direction for future research into the development of knowledge structuring tools for learning.

1

The process of learning

1.1 INTRODUCTION

The ability to learn complex behaviours is essential to our survival both as individuals and as a species. Learning is an adaptive function that allows an organism to survive in a changing environment, it operates over the lifespan of the organism unlike other adaptive processes such as problem solving which offer short-term adaptation; and biological adaptation which occurs over generations (Langley and Simon, 1981). Langley and Simon define learning as:

> "...any process that modifies a system so as to improve, more or less irreversibly, its subsequent performance of the same task or tasks drawn from the same population."

This view of learning as a natural process has led to something of a paradox: if learning is natural, why do we need to spend so much time training teachers; why is so much effort and money invested in educational research; why is the development of effective educational software often so difficult and, perhaps most tellingly, why have we all had occasion to feel that what we are doing is anything but natural? Some have argued that the unnatural nature of most learning is a result of the unnatural nature of the educational system (Papert, 1980, 1987; Gardner, 1994), whilst others argue that it is due to the difficulty of the things that needs to be learned in academic settings (Chi, 1993; Laurillard, 1993). This chapter is an attempt to investigate these and other issues, with the goal of trying to specify some of the factors that influence the ability of people to learn effectively, and then to suggest some ways that we might support the process of learning using educational technology.

1.2 THE GOALS OF LEARNING

If the goal of learning is to adapt to the environment, it begs the question: which environment? There is not a single unitary environment that we all inhabit, rather different people need to respond to very different demands. The environment of the concert pianist has different demands to that of a software designer; a mathematician different from a newscaster. Each environment requires a different range of skills, and places different values on these skills. The goal of learning is defined by these demands and as such there is no monolithic solution to the learning problem. In many learning situations goals can be described on a number of levels. A student working on an essay may have the goal of trying to get a good grade, however the essay may also be given to ensure that the student reads material relevant to the course that they are on, or it may be to develop communication skills. In both these cases the purpose of the essay can be seen as a step on the way to the achievement of longer-term goals such as being able to write effective essays in order to pass the exam. Note that it is not necessary for the student to be aware of the learning goals in order to learn effectively so long as the environment is suitably structured. We do not need to know that we are learning language to learn it, but on some occasions it can help. Given a poorly structured task it often helps the learner to know what they are supposed to learn from it.

For many, particularly non-vocational, courses this could be seen as the final goal. However, beyond this is some form of life outside the institution where they may be required to use their knowledge as part of a job, or during their social life. Greeno (1991) takes this point up:

> "We would like students to be able to participate in conversations that are informed by concepts. We would like students to benefit from understanding concepts in the work they do or in other organisations, including analytic projects and plans for proposed group activities. We would like students who understand a concept to be able to explain it to other people, and we would like students' understanding of concepts to support their further learning, including understanding of information that the concepts help make meaningful and learning of other concepts that are related to those that were learned earlier." (Greeno, 1991, P. 211)

Any approach to learning and education should try and identify the types of skills that the student will need in the world at large. Of course it may not be profitable to examine the minutiae of course content and fret over what skills it is endowing the student with, but it should fit into some overarching educational framework to some degree.

Consistent with this approach is the theoretical stance that learning is situated. In its crudest terms this argues that what we learn is a response to a specific set of environmental constraints, and as such its transferability is limited to situations similar to those under which learning took place. Such a view contrasts strongly with the 'faculty' view of learning, popular in the last century (Anderson, 1990a) which stated the mind consisted of different faculties that could be exercised by providing practice on abstract problems. Hence, logic and Latin were thought to strengthen the mind enabling it to perform better on a wide variety of tasks.

The situatedness of learning has been worked on by, among others, Jean Lave (1988; Lave & Wenger, 1991). Lave and Wenger see the ultimate goal of learning as being to enable the learner to become a participant in a community of practice, the guiding principle being *legitimate peripheral participation* (see Section 1.2.2). Lave argues that standard educational practice with its emphasis on learning in the abstract does not achieve these goals and as a result learners are often poorly equipped to participate in whichever community of practice they choose. At a simplistic level Lave (1990) reports a study of the way that people perform arithmetical calculations in everyday life, for example in assessing which food is the best value when it varies in both price and weight. She found that individuals often use heuristics solutions rather than the correct mathematical procedure, suggesting that what had been learned in the classroom was not being applied to real world problems. This set of issues is not new, Vera and Simon (1993) point out that the above effect used to be cast in terms of problems relating to the *transfer of learning* where individuals fail to apply knowledge learned in different contexts and under different task demands. Evidence of this from a cognitive perspective comes from Carraher, Carraher and Schlieman (1985) who observed that Brazilian school children working as street vendors often fail to solve simple mathematical problems as presented in school, but can perform relatively complex calculations when working out prices of food and so on—and this in a country which at the time of the study had three different currencies. Although the view of learning as being situated is often pitched against cognitive science (Lave & Wenger, 1991) some cognitive researchers are now attempting to explain the context dependency of learning within a cognitive framework (Anderson, 1990b).

Transferability of knowledge and skills is an obvious problem for education. The modern workplace is not a static entity, new demands are being placed on the individual all the time and it is no longer the case that skills learned during apprenticeship last the individual a lifetime[1]. If skills cannot be transferred then it paints a very depressing picture for education. However, it seems that all is not quite as gloomy as it may seem: sometimes skills do seem to be transferable, so long as there is sufficient match between the old and new skills—which may imply that jobs should be re-designed to try and

[1] It could be argued that this was never the case, that people always needed to learn during work. However, it seems that these demands are even more prevalent nowadays.

utilise old skills where possible (Anderson & Singley, 1993; Singley & Anderson, 1989).

As a final caveat, although it is true that educators should have some idea of what skills the learner should possess, it is also true that learning can occur in the absence of explicit goals. When a child learns language, it does not have the conscious goal to learn, nor does anyone with whom the child engages have to have the goal of teaching the child; learning occurs simply by virtue of the child interacting with other language speakers. The example of language could be perceived as something of a red herring in this context; after all a number of people believe that there is some genetic component to the acquisition of language (Chomsky, 1972; Pinker, 1994). However, there are other examples of unintentional or incidental learning. Mandler (1967) demonstrated that subjects who were requested to sort cards with words printed on them into semantic categories were able to recall as many words later on as subjects who had been told to learn the words, and Hyde and Jenkins (1969) demonstrated that intention to learn did not effect the ability of subjects to recall words that they had previously been instructed to rate for pleasantness. Both these studies (and many others) might be seen as suggestive for the 'natural' status of learning. Other studies, however, seemingly contradict this view. In the days when telephone dials had both digits and letters Morton (1967) showed that experienced telephone users were unable to correctly recall the correspondence of letters to numbers, even thought they had seen the dial hundreds of times. A more up to date study conducted by Mayes et al (1988); showed that users of the word processing package MacWrite were unable to recall the order of the items on the menu-bar, which again had been used many times. Presumably if the subjects of either of these experiments had been given the goal before hand of recalling the items in question, then they could have learned them intentionally. Why is there this paradox, on the one hand intention to learn makes no difference, whilst on the other hand it makes all the difference? The answer to this is that certain types of activity afford different types of processing, and one of the important factors in whether or not something is remembered is the way that it was processed. The type of processing can either be determined implicitly in the task (as for the studies by Mandler, and Hyde and Jenkins, but not the Morton and Mayes et al task) or it can be determined by the learners meta-cognitive skills (see Section 1.4). Hence, goals can make a difference, in instructional design we need to know what we want people to learn so that we can decide how best to help them to learn it.

A more complex example of how task can influence the sort of knowledge acquired is provided by Berry and Broadbent (1984) and Broadbent, Fitzgerald and Broadbent (1986). Subjects were provided with a simulation of, among other things, an economic system. The system contained a large number of parameters which the subjects could manipulate to change the behaviour of various output measures. For the purposes of this discussion there were two key conditions: (1) an informed condition where subjects were instructed as to the various effects of the parameters on output measures and interactions between them; and (2) an uninformed condition where subjects were simply given the system with no description of the effects of the parameters. There were two key findings. First it was found that when there was a large number of parameters to control subjects in the uninformed condition could control the system better than those who were given instructions. Second, although subjects given no information could operate the system to produce reasonable outcomes, they showed little awareness of what they were doing and why when interviewed at the end of the study. It therefore seems that individuals are able to learn implicitly[2] in the sense that they have no direct verbalisable knowledge about what they are doing and that in some circumstances (such as that in the above experiment) this can lead to a performance advantage. In other situations such implicit knowledge might be problematic. First, it is likely that learners will acquire rules that although workable are incorrect or inefficient, being given explicit instructions will help the student to use the correct (or more effective) rules. Second, it seems likely that if students have no easily accessible knowledge about the principles underlying the rules that they are using it may make it even harder for them to generalise to other related tasks, or to recover themselves when things go wrong. Third, and related to the previous two points, there is no guarantee that the benefits of implicit learning are very long lived. As we shall see in Section 1.3.4 having verbal rules can initially lead to slow and error-prone performance due to the demands that they place on working memory, after practice performance gets faster and more accurate as rules are proceduralised. The studies by Broadbent and collegues measure performance at these early stages and it is likely that subjects in the instruction condition might, given sufficient practice, overtake the subjects given no instructions. Generally though the best method of teaching will depend on the goals of the instruction, often we do not need to know the underlying priciples of some system or piece of apparatus to use it effectively, the level of knowledge needed about computers will depend on whether one is a casual operator, a 'power user' or an engineer. Given these goals we can decide what an individual needs to know and tailor the instruction accordingly.

From the above we have an abstract (and not at all surprising) guiding principle for learning outcomes: that learning should be directed towards the acquisition of the skills and knowledge that the student will need to perform in the world, whether they be job

---

[2] There is currently great debate about the status of implicit knowledge. Suffice to say that here I use it simply in the sense that subjects can learn to do things that they are not able to articulate.

skills, life skills or intellectual skills. In order to make these goals usable they need to be instantiated so they are relevant to the particular discipline in question. Help can be obtained by looking at people who have the necessary skills and look to them for a performance model.

1.2.1 Learning as progression towards expertise

One model of learning that is popular in cognitive approaches to learning and education is obtained by looking at expert performance. Intelligent tutoring systems often work by having a model of a good student built into them (often referred to, rather inaccurately, as the expert model). The student's performance is compared to predictions generated by the 'expert' model, and the students deviation from the model can initiate remediative procedures. Hence the tutor is able to ensure that the learner stays on the 'optimal learning trajectory' (Anderson, Boyle, Corbett and Lewis, 1990).

Other approaches which use an expert model outside the realm of intelligent tutoring include those which have investigated expert problem solving. Sweller and colleagues have conducted research into the nature of expert problem solving, primarily in the domain of mathematics. Sweller, Mawer and Ward (1983) showed that expert mathematicians solve medium complexity problems differently from novices. Experts typically work forwards, taking the givens of the problem and applying appropriate equations to effect a result; novices on the other hand work backwards, using a means-ends analysis technique, working backwards from the goal state and applying equations that reduce the difference between the goal state and the initial state. Sweller's basic aim was to try and facilitate the development of more expert-like problem solving strategies in subjects by providing them with conditions that are optimal for learning to take place. Sweller argues that mere intensive practice on a task may actively prevent the development of expert performance. Using weak problem solving techniques, such as means end analysis, may have the effect of filling up working memory, preventing learners from seeing more effective strategies. Instead, Sweller argues that learners should be encouraged to explicate and reflect upon their strategies and understanding. Cooper and Sweller (1987) demonstrated that problem solving behaviour can be enhanced if the learner is encouraged to categorise rather than solve a battery of questions. They argue that solving problems is such a demanding task that often there is little chance for learners to reflect upon the nature of the problem itself. Categorising problem descriptions can encourage learners to focus upon the structure of the problem rather than simply on evoking the correct procedures to solve it.

In general, expert models can be useful in that they provide some ultimate goal for the learning process. Care must be taken, however, not to overwhelm the learner. Merely observing how an expert performs a task and then trying to emulate him or her may be of little help to the learner. There are two reasons for this: first, many of the cognitive operations that the expert will be performing may be hidden from view—in fact models of skill acquisition (see Section 1.3.4) state that this is a fact of expertise. The learner may therefore see only the what the expert does rather than how they achieve it. Second, even if these hidden operations are made explicit it is likely that the learner will find it impossible to perform them in an appropriate manner. An expert will have spent many hours practising their chosen field enabling them to perform certain actions automatically. A student would more than likely find this impossible as they would have to consciously process most of the components of the task.

The expert model can be used effectively to help to design a learning program. However in order to do this we must incorporate additional assumptions about the way that the cognitive system operates. For example, the finding that in mathematical tasks experts tend to work forwards from the givens can be used as a goal for instruction. Once we identify the behaviours that we want, we can start to specify the type of knowledge that we wish learners to acquire, and we can then start to specify activities that support the acquisition of this knowledge, as Cooper and Sweller demonstrated.

1.2.2 Legitimate peripheral participation

Lave and Wenger's (1991) notion of legitimate peripheral participation (LPP) provides another performance model which can be used as a goal of education for specific domains. As already stated above, and in the Greeno quotation, LPP involves the gradual inclusion of the learner in a community of practice. LPP relates to an attempt to reinterpret learning, to free it from the cognitivist viewpoint that learning is something that occurs solely inside the heads of individual, by the formation and development of structured representations of knowledge. Instead, learning is seen as being something that occurs within the community itself; the result being LPP.

Lave and Wenger argue that LPP is most adequately achieved by apprenticeship. Under the conditions of apprenticeship, the learner learns not only about the required skills of the discipline, but also the norms and values of the community, the communication patterns and so on. In short, apprenticeship provides a far richer set of experiences that give the novice far greater chance of becoming a member of the group. Theoretical shortcomings left aside for the moment, there are two problems with this approach: (1) apprenticeship is expensive inasmuch as it is labour intensive (often one-to-one); and (2) LPP presupposes that there is an extant community of practice with its own values, norms and so forth that one can use as a guiding principle. This second point is only really a problem if one adopts LPP in its strong form; the participation in a community of practice was seen by Vygotsky (1962) as both the goal of education and the primary means by which learning occurred. To Vygotsky learning involved the internalisation of interactions between the learner and other actors in the learning environment. Through this mechanism the values, assumptions, language, methodologies and so on of the community were inculcated into the student, who gradually takes on the world view of the community and can act as an increasingly autonomous practitioner.

In sum, LPP adds an extra level of complexity on top of the expert model, making explicit many of the assumptions of expertise and also broadens the arena to incorporate factors such as the language used and the specific ways of behaving, rather than just the behaviours themselves. It is not necessarily the case that LPP and the expertise model are incompatible; rather they are different types of description of the same phenomenon—although the advocates of LPP would probably not agree with this. LPP may inform the expert model as to the wider context of action, whilst the expert model may be useful in determining effective ways to teach—particularly when we use computers rather than human instructors. Since the purpose of this thesis is to suggest ways of supporting learning, rather than a philosophical inquiry into the nature of pedagogy the expert model and LPP (in its weaker sense) will be taken as being commensurable.

1.2.3 Summary

Goals are important as they have an effect upon the nature of the learning that students do. We should be aware of the extent to which the tasks that we set students are mapping on to the goals that they have been given. For example most would agree that one of the primary goals of education is to endow students with some form of intellectual autonomy; the ability for them to think for themselves. However, there must be mechanisms that map between the goals that the instructor has and the activities that the learners are engaging in. We may have the goal of students developing analytical skills, for example, but without any knowledge of what this means and how tasks enable the development of these skills, any programme will be doomed to failure. This is where cognitive psychology can help.

1.3 ACQUIRING KNOWLEDGE

Perhaps the most important learning mechanism possessed by an organism is the ability to form generalisations from specific instances, such an ability is the key to the adaptive nature of learning. If one is bitten by a dog then it makes sense to generalise the fear of this specific dog to a fear of all similar dogs; without this simple ability the individual would be condemned to a life of frequent bitings by different dogs. Generalisation has to be constrained somehow, otherwise one might avoid all dogs for ever more, or all foodstuffs following sickness induced by a specific foodstuff. Happily, there are mechanisms that constrain generalisation and a great deal of the animal learning literature is concerned with such propensities, although such a discussion is beyond the scope of this thesis. In the human literature discussions about the ability to form generalisations have tended to centre on the formation and use of knowledge structures or schemata.

A schema is, at its simplest, a structured set of abstract knowledge that allows us to make sense of a world in which no two objects or events are ever exactly the same. We recognise a house that we have never seen before as a house because, it is argued, we have a generalised schema that captures the general property of house-ness. A house schema may therefore possess some of the components of a house: floor, roof, walls and so on, which can be filled when the specific house is encountered. It will also contain some functional attributes, such as the fact that people tend to live in them, and some specific instances, such as the particular house the individual inhabits and so on. Once evoked a schema permits individuals to draw certain inferences that enable them to go beyond the information given such as in the following example from Charniak (1972):

> Jane was invited to Jack's birthday party. She wondered if he would like a kite. She went to her room and shook her piggy bank. It made no sound.

The information content in the above example is impoverished, but we are still able to make sense of it because it triggers our background knowledge about birthday parties, not only that but we can answer questions about it such as "How did Jane feel after this event?".

It has been shown that schemata can exert powerful effects on learning, allowing learners access to schemata by providing them with context can result in a substantial increase in recall (Dooling & Lachman, 1971; Bransford & Johnson, 1973). It is as if schemata provide slots for new experiences to latch on to, aiding retention. It is this mapping of incoming information onto extant knowledge structures that according to many constitutes understanding (Schank, 1986; Johnson-Laird, 1983).

1.3.1 Knowledge structures and learning

How do such knowledge structures develop, and how is new information integrated into pre-existing structures? Rumelhart & Norman (1978) propose a framework for the development of schemata by suggesting that there are three phases of learning each of which results in a different knowledge state. The phases are referred to as accretion, restructuring and tuning. Accretion involves the gradual accrual of domain information and assimilation into extant knowledge structures. Thus new instantiations of older data structures are made and the knowledge base grows accordingly. Restructuring occurs when the existing structures fail to account adequately for the incoming information. If this failure cannot be overcome by minor modifications of the schemata (by tuning) then the schemata must be changed in order to render them useful. This will involve a process of restructuring whereby old relationships are replaced and new ones formed. The knowledge is therefore recast into different organisational structures which can be used to explain and predict new events more effectively than before; whilst still accounting for previously explainable events, though perhaps in new, more insightful ways. Finally, the process of tuning involves the gradual refinement of knowledge structures, by practice on problem solving tasks; to produce faster, more accurate behaviour.

1.3.2 Accretion

Accretion is perhaps the most obvious of the three categories, after all new knowledge needs to be acquired somehow, what processes occur in this stage? It would surely be a mistake to see accretion as somehow being akin to stuffing newly acquired concepts into some cognitive in-tray to be filed later by some other process, perhaps during restructuring; new concepts are interpreted and categorised immediately by virtue of whatever schema is currently active, this being determined by the context, knowledge retrieved by association to the target concept, or by a combination of both. Given that a concept is interpreted in some way, the way in which it is interpreted is going to have an implication for the way that it is learned and consequently the inferences that one might draw from it in problem solving. Chi (1993) makes the point that one of the great problems with learning about certain academic concepts and constructs is that they are effectively mis-categorised for two reasons:

- The absence of the correct ontological categories in memory,
- The learner is lead to incorrectly categorise the construct by some environmental conditions.

Taking the absence of correct categories first. Chi argues that during the course of development and learning the individual forms a hierarchical structure of ontological categories, a subset of these are shown in Figure 1.1 below. When a new concept is learned about, it is placed somewhere in the ontological hierarchy; this is not necessarily a conscious process, it just happens because it has to go somewhere. Certain concepts such as learning about a new chemical element will cause little problem, it is a form of matter and matter is something that most people have ample experience of, even those who have never been to school. Problems arise when the concept is in reality a member of a category that the learner does not posses, gravity, for instance, is not a type of matter it is a type of process. Further, it is not a process like the sort that people generally experience, such as buying a book, it is a much more arcane form of process that Chi terms *acausal interaction.* Acausal interaction processes have no direct cause gravity is a force of mutual attraction between objects by virtue of them having mass, there is no direct cause of gravity in the simple sense. When a student encounters members of these categories the temptation is to think of them in terms of categories that they do have, misconceptions arise because the newly categorised concept inherits properties from similarly categorised concepts; students might incorrectly assume, for example, that gravity has some direct cause.

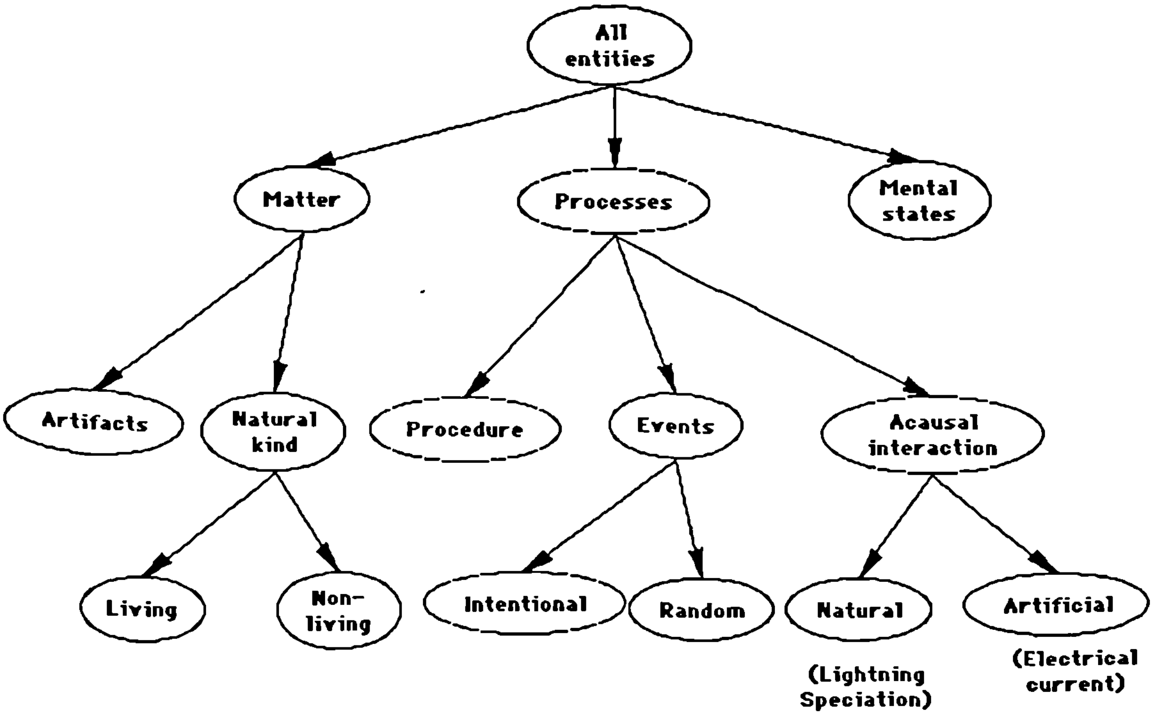


Figure 1.1 Part of a possible categorisation scheme for ontological categories, adapted from Chi (1993).

The second reason why misconceptions arise is because learners are mislead into thinking about them in terms of other properties. Electric current, another member of the acausal interaction category, is often taught to students by using the metaphor of water flowing through pipes (see Gentner and Gentner, 1983). Although initially helpful in visualising electric current by grounding it in something that students understand, it also has the effect of making them think that electric current is a sort of matter, again leading to inherited misconceptions.

Such a framework may go some way to explaining why students tend to display anomalous behaviour when solving problems. McCloskey (1983) demonstrated that physics undergraduates when asked to solve physics problems, such as that shown below in Figure 1.2, often derive predictions that are out of touch with what the claim to know. In Figure 1.2 a ball is thrown into the circular tube and the subject is asked for the trajectory that it follows on leaving the tube, path A or path B. Many students chose B the correct answer, but a large number of them chose the incorrect option, A. McCloskey claims that students who choose path A in the task have a conception of physics that is pre-Newtonian, often describing force as if it were matter that an object possessed that gradually dissipated over time. Such naive physics might be explainable by using a scheme such as that above.

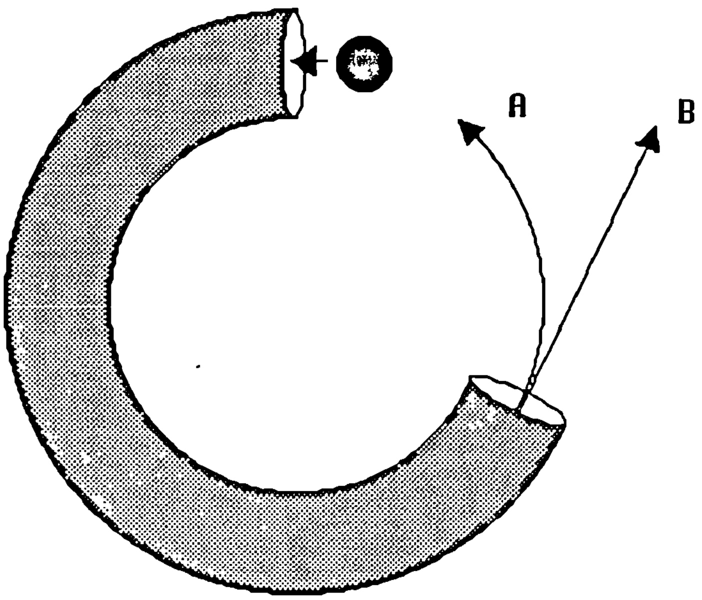


Figure 1.2 One of the problems that McCloskey gave subjects to solve. Does the ball thrown into the tube follow trajectory A or B after leaving it?

There are two things to bear in mind about the integration of new concepts into knowledge structures. The first is that most concepts are likely to be categorised in a correct way, any problems with understanding are probably more to do with lack of knowledge than concepts being subsumed under the wrong ontological category. The second is that although Chi shows concepts as a hierarchical tree containing categories that are ontologically distinct, it does not imply that human conceptual knowledge is cast into such a rigid discrete structure. Some concepts seem to be described by students as if they are part matter and part process depending on the context under which they are questioned; the scheme is really only a guide to describe what seems to be happening in the majority of situations when learners display misconceptions.

One might reasonably ask how many academic constructs are of this type? Are the problems referred to by Chi ones that apply to academic concepts in general, or do they only apply to a handful of special cases such as electric current? It seems that there are a whole host of academic concepts and constructs that are fundamentally non-intuitive, and result in persistent misconceptions. In psychology the persistence of homuncular explanations of perception and reasoning; comprehending systems where there is no controlling central executive, such as flocking behaviour in birds; comprehending disorders that have complex mediated causes such as schizophrenia; natural selection mechanisms; economic principles such as supply and demand where supply effects demand (and vice versa) but not in a simple nor direct way; and so on. All of these are cases where students' tendencies are to assume simple causal processes; getting rid of these preconceptions is not easy.

Of course there are many other reasons why comprehending certain constructs might be such as when they are abstract, or when they involve reasoning with mutually interactive variables, but it seems that Chi's framework provides a useful starting point for understanding why the task of the student is often a difficult one.

Errors such as those described by Chi and McCloskey although persistent eventually change following repeated experience, such conceptual change is what Rumelhart and Norman refer to as restructuring, or more generally conceptual change. The next section describes a framework for conceptual change that has been developed by Paul Thagard.

1.3.3 Restructuring and conceptual change

Thagard (1992) has developed a more specific framework for the reconstructive nature of learning; he divides conceptual change into four categories of increasing complexity: addition, deletion, reorganisation and hierarchy redefinition (see Figure 1.3, below). The simplest form of conceptual change involves the simple addition of an instance, concept, part-relationship and so on to the knowledge base such that it has little effect on the extant conceptual organisation. Finding out, for example, that there is an animal called a dugong might involve simply adding the name to some list of animals already present (addition of a concept). If we are told that the animal is part of the Walrus family, then this might lead to the simple addition of a kind-relation (a dugong is a kind of walrus) or may involve more complex forms of reorganisation, such as those covered later. Elements of knowledge might also be deleted, although here it is difficult to see how something can be deleted without some other form of restructuring. If we are told that a Unicorn is not a real animal, we do not simply delete the concept from our knowledge base, we place it somewhere else, under mythical animals for example. The only apparent example of simple deletion is that of an instance, where an object may be falsely recognised as belonging to one set, when in fact it is another, for example, initially recognising a object in the distance as a dog and then realising that it is not. Even in this restricted case it is likely that the deletion will be accompanied by an addition of some sort.

Reorganisation, the next category in Thagard's scheme, is more complex than simply adding and deleting elements from the knowledge-base, and is divided into two sorts, simple reorganisation and revisionary reorganisation. Simple reorganisation is further subdivided into decomposition, coalescence and differentiation. *Decomposition* is where new part relations are added to a concept, this can be a rather benign process akin to addition, or more radical where what was thought to be a thing in itself is shown to consist of more fundamental elements. Thagard's example of this last sort being the atom which was shown to consist of electrons by Thompson. *Coalescence* is where two previously unrelated concepts are linked by a higher level concept that subsumes them; finding out that spiders and humans are both animals is an example of this. *Differentiation* is where a concept held as being one thing is found to be two or more distinct entities. An example of this is the division of ones concept of computer memory into Random Access Memory (RAM) and disk-space, something that often confuses new computer users. The key thing about differentiation is that the concept in its undifferentiated form is entirely replaced by the new concepts, in decomposition, the higher level concept still exists it is just refined by the addition of lower level concepts. A atom still exists even though it consists of electrons, the differentiated concepts of RAM and disk-space entirely obliterate the old general concept of memory.

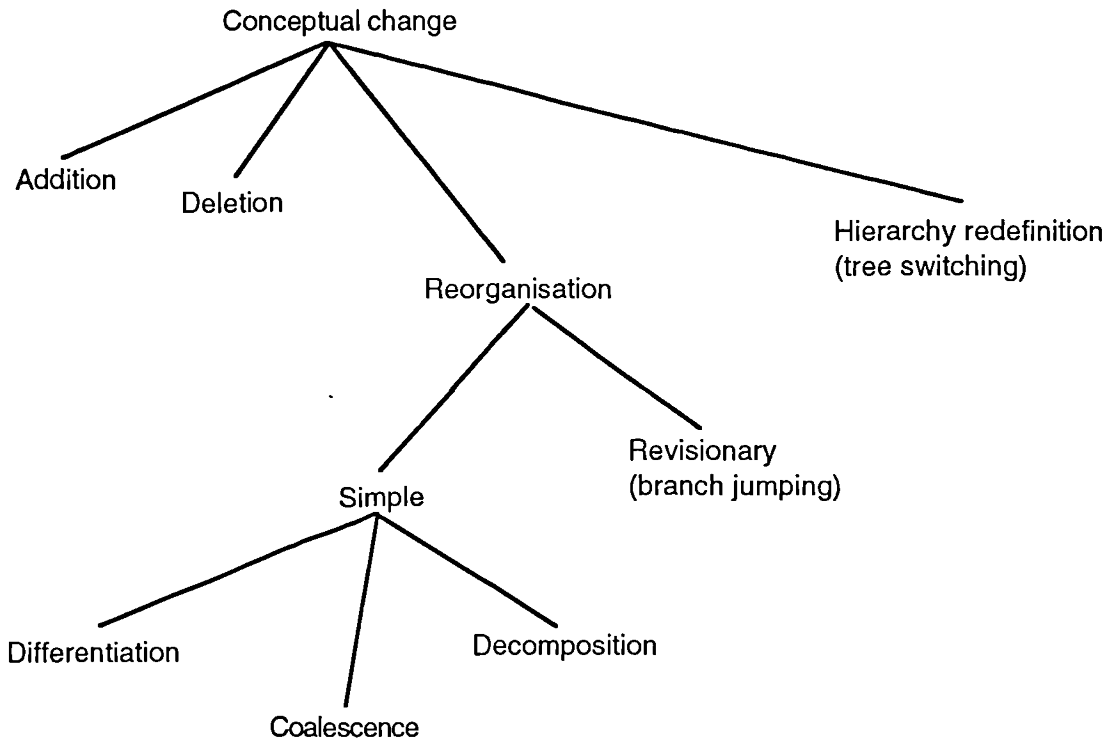


Figure 1.3 Thagard's types of conceptual change (adapted from Thagard, 1992).

Revisionary reorganisation is the most radical form of reorganisation according to Thagard, and involves the re-categorisation of a concept under a different branch of the kind-of hierarchy. Being told the simple fact that a whale is a kind of mammal will cause this kind of change; the concept of whale switches from being classified as a kind of fish to being a kind of mammal. Revisionary reorganisation is also known as branch jumping because concepts are shifted from being on one branch of the hierarchical tree to another.

In the above forms of reorganisation concepts may be added, deleted, or shuffled around the knowledge tree, but the overall structure of the tree remains the same; this is because none of the above types of conceptual change the organising principles of the knowledge. Sometimes, however, it may be impossible to explain new information or events by simply tinkering with the local structure of the knowledge, a more global restructuring is necessary; this is known as hierarchy redefinition. Such radical restructuring is rare, but has occurred in the history of science. Darwin's theory of natural selection did not simply require a revision of the creationist episteme that preceded it, it required it to be abandoned and a new one be put in its place. Thagard argues that in creationist terms the definition of 'kind' related mainly to the physical similarity between organisms, in Darwinian terms it took on a histórical interpretation.

Thagard's scheme was primarily developed as a model of the process of scientific discovery rather than a theory of personal conceptual development, although he has applied it to individuals with the question: does ontology recapitulate phylogeny? There is some evidence to suggest that it does to a certain extent. Studies by Carey (1985) illustrate that coalescence, differentiation and decomposition all occur within the during childhood development, and Chi (1991) provides evidence that students undergo branch jumping when learning about physics. There is, however, little evidence that the individual undergoes hierarchical redefinition during learning and development.

1.3.4 The tuning of conceptual structure

In Rumelhart and Norman's scheme, tuning refers to the way that practice makes the use of knowledge more efficient: access of information might be faster, more task-relevant and less irrelevant knowledge might be accessed, and the knowledge that is accessed will be structured in a way to help solve the problem. Rumelhart and Norman are not clear as to the behavioural manifestations of tuning (other than increased efficiency and speed of access), but what is certainly missing so far from this three-phase model is any notion of practice effects. In the area of skill acquisition frameworks such as those proposed by Anderson (1983) and Logan (1988) emphasise the increasing automaticity of action following repeated practice; actions gets more accurate, faster, and less demanding of attention or working memory. Is this the same as tuning? Before this an attempt is made to answer this question, some exposition of Anderson's theory, known as ACT, is necessary.

Basically, Anderson's theory states that there are two sort of knowledge: declarative knowledge and procedural knowledge. Procedural knowledge is often termed *knowing how* whilst declarative knowledge is described as *knowing that*—a distinction that dates back to Ryle (1949). Declarative knowledge relates to information that one is able to verbalise, such as that Paris is the capital city of France, or what one had for breakfast on a particular morning, and is represented in Anderson's theory by a semantic network. Procedural knowledge, on the other hand, relates to practical knowledge: being able to ride a bicycle, solving an overlearned set of problems or driving, and is represented by production rules. There is a third component to Anderson's model, a working memory which contains a representation of whatever an individual is aware of at any time. Following many other researchers (Miller, 1956; Simon, 1974; Baddeley, 1990) working memory is seen as a short-term storage system that can hold a limited amount of information, anywhere between three and seven chunks of knowledge. Knowledge in working memory can come from two places, either from information in the outside world that is being attended to (a sentence, a mathematical formula, a picture) or from declarative memory. Often working memory contains information from both sources: if someone presents you with the sentence "I like cats" in addition to having the sentence in working memory because that it what you are attending to, you might retrieve information from declarative memory about cats. Because working memory is of limited capacity both of these sources of information will compete for space. This simple model explains why learning complex skills is often difficult. If you have to pay attention to some set of environmental cues and retrieve information from memory at the same time, then working memory becomes overloaded and errors occur; either you fail to attend properly to the external stimuli, or you fail to retrieve some important action. When we learn to drive we often find that when we change gear, we lose control of the steering temporarily, or if something on the road captures our attention then our driving might go to pot. Such interference problems become less likely as competence develops, to the point that we can 'multi-task' and perform more than one action at once. Anderson explains this by stating that skilled performance is dependent upon procedural knowledge which does not compete for working memory. Instead information in working memory matches on to the conditions (the 'IF' parts of the production rules) which then fire giving rise to the action specified in the tail (the 'THEN' part) of the rule (see Figure 1.4). An production rule for driving might be:

IF	the goal is to stop
THEN	dip the clutch and apply the brakes

Whenever working memory contains conditions that match the head of the goal, the production fires automatically and the action is performed. At first blush this makes humans sound like automata under complete control of the environment, but recall that the information in working memory can derive either from the environment or from declarative storage. It is therefore not just the environment, but the way that the environment is appraised that effects a production firing and hence controls behaviour.

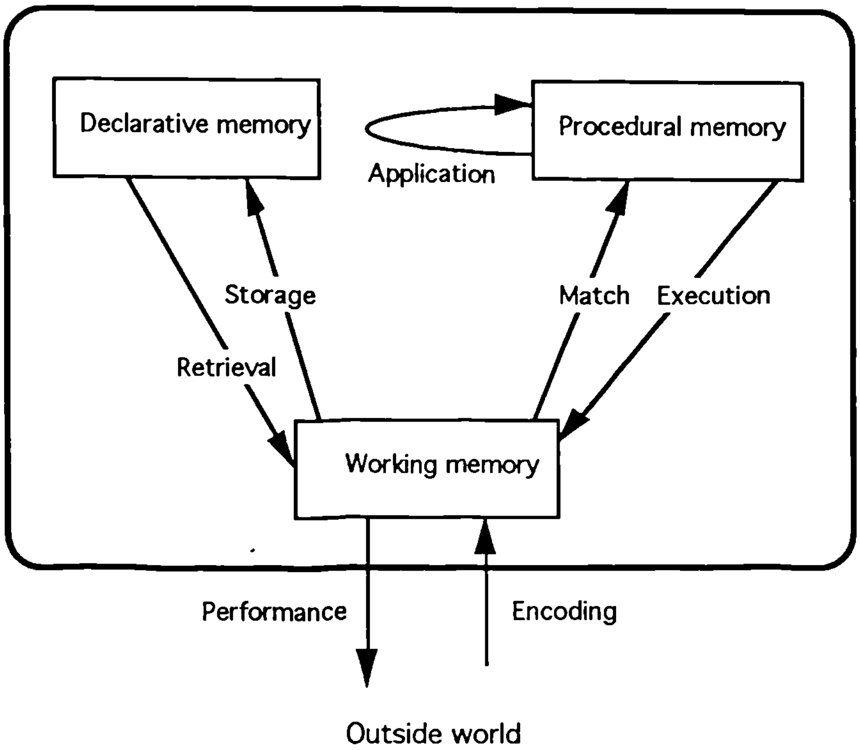


Figure 1.4 Schematic of the ACT architecture

The acquisition of a skill in ACT is one of proceduralization; a progression from behaviour based on declarative knowledge to behaviour based on procedural knowledge, a process that depends upon practice. Procedural knowledge has a great deal going for it: it is applied quickly, it is accurate and it demands little or no conscious effort. Sometimes this automaticity is not always positive: once created productions are robust to change meaning that errors are often difficult to eradicate, this is compounded by the fact that because procedural knowledge is impenetrable to consciousness an individual is unlikely to know what knowledge is causing the errors, more of which later.

Anderson's distinction between declarative and procedural knowledge is not merely one that is theoretically convenient, there does seem to be a psychologically real difference. Neuropsychological studies (Cohen & Squire, 1980), experimental studies (Wellington, Nissen & Bullemer, 1989) and skill acquisition studies (Anderson, 1993) all indicate that there are qualitative differences between the two types of knowledge. Schema theory, on the other hand, makes little reference to the distinction, this and the very different learning mechanisms proposed for by the two theories seem suggest that the two theories are poles apart. I shall briefly examine some of these differences in the search for some common ground.

1.3.4.1 Schemata and procedural and declarative knowledge

The most salient difference is the separation in ACT of procedural and declarative knowledge, whilst schema theory makes little reference to such a distinction. In truth this probably has more to do with theoretical necessity, and the nature of the data being explained rather than any real polarisation: ACT was proposed to explain the acquisition and automation of skills, schema theory is proposed to explain already competent behaviour. If we look at practically any complex, knowledge-intensive behaviour it will use both procedural and declarative knowledge in varying measures. Seen from this angle a schema is nothing more than a set of declarative memory nodes that are activated by virtue of them being previously useful for that particular context, this part of declarative memory will match the heads of specific productions that have been acquired through repeated exposures. This account of schemata describes them not as monolithic constructions of related knowledge, but as far softer entities, that are built up when needed as a result of patterns of association between more basic entities. Barsalou (1986), for example states that often our knowledge about the world, when closely examined, refuses to show the static nature associated with certain conceptions of structured knowledge. Rumelhart has also recently argued against the view that schemata are things in themselves, stating that they emerge as a result of "...large numbers of much simpler elements all working in concert with one another." (Rumelhart, Smolensky, McClelland and Hinton, 1986, p.20).

1.3.4.2 Discrete or progressive learning?

On the face of it both ACT and schema theory make difference predictions about the way that learning progresses. Anderson (1983) agues that learning seems to occur smoothly and progressively, not in schema-like jumps during the restructuring process. This is true, but there are two things to bear in mind: first, Anderson focuses very much on factors such as speed and accuracy during the process of skill acquisition, whereas those who make a claim for restructuring focus on less quantitative measures (Miyake, 1986; Carey, 1985). There is no reason why shifts in understanding should cause a dramatic shift in problem solving behaviour, particularly when you bear in mind that it might take time for the new form of understanding to become effectively tuned. It is well known that when an overlearned skill is restructured, then there is often a dip in performance because it takes time to automate the new procedure.

Second, restructuring is unlikely to come all at once in a flash of inspiration, it is more likely that it comes gradually over repeated experience. Thagard's analysis of the development of Lavoisier's theory of oxidisation that replaced the earlier phlogiston theory shows that arose slowly over the course of a number of years, not all of a sudden. In cognitive terms revising a conceptual structure will come in fits and starts. When a child is told that a whale is a mammal and not a fish, she does not suddenly branch switch and treat the whale the same way as a cow or a dog in terms of their mammalian properties. More likely is that over a period of time the child will see the whale as having increasingly less fish-like and more mammalian properties. Chi (1991) argues that children's conceptual development involves a functional rather than structural reorganisation, viewed in this light coalescence, branch switching might occur, but the old structure remains intact; behaviour changes when the strengths of the new associations are higher than those of the old associations. This particular model of conceptual change would accord with the idea that restructuring occurs gradually as weights between concepts are altered due to experience, rather than suddenly through concepts being 'physically' moved. The gradual switch would manifest itself in two ways: first, there would be a period where behaviour becomes unpredictable, sometimes behaving as if the individual has the old structure, sometimes as if they are behaving in accordance with the new one. Second, there would be a large effect of local context upon behaviour; when there are only small differences between the connection strengths of the two structures a particular context might tip the balance in favour of one or other structures. Such context effects are well known in the psychological literature; when memory traces are weak, as might be the case when an individual is given a short time to learn a list of words, context can have a large effect on recall (Godden and Baddeley, 1975) when something is overlearned, context has less effect on performance; memories tend to become context independent (Barsalou, 1986).

There are therefore commonalities between schema theory and the skill acquisition literature, three of which I have summarised below.

- Some bits of knowledge seem to be available to consciousness, whilst others are unconscious and automatic. We saw this in Chi's example, people are often unaware of the categorise that they are using to derive predictions.

- Both schema theory and ACT make claims about the effects of practice on efficiency and speed.

- In ACT incorrect productions are never lost or obliterated by new productions: the old ones just simply have a higher threshold for activation, and are therefore unlikely to be used. The implication here is that it is entirely possible for two different bits of knowledge to exist for the same thing—as Chi claims.

1.3.5 Summary

The above tells us a number of things about learning. First, it tells us that background knowledge plays a critical role in the way that people understand a particular set of concepts. More crucially, it informs us that many of the concepts that we expect people to learn about in academic situations are difficult because people do not have the conceptual machinery to understand them. The paradox of learning that I outlined in the first section is not, I believe, wholly the fault of the education system, it is because the nature of many topics cannot be directly experienced nor can they be related to any of the other concepts that we might be familiar with. Attempts to use analogies for these forms of concept, be they self-derived or given by an instructor, can give rise to false beliefs and misconceptions. Chi's proposal might also provide us with some insight into the difference between experiential and academic knowledge, or percepts and precepts (Vygotsky, 1962; Laurillard, 1993). There exists a possibility that there may be some innate propensity to acquire categories for direct causal relations, for the behaviour of matter, for grammar, for certain forms of social interaction and so on (see Pinker, 1994 for a discussion). This would suggest that no degree of restructuring of the education system would render certain academic concepts as easily learnable as those that we acquire by direct experience. This is, of course, highly speculative but if it was true it would suggest that using an experiential model for teaching difficult academic subjects is just the wrong approach to take, since the learner is doomed to re-categorise new information in terms of their old conceptual structure. More effective learning would be brought about by gearing the educational intervention to explaining the nature of the categories in a explicit way, rather than hoping that they acquire them implicitly.

The second thing that we know is that learning often involves some degree of conceptual re-organisation; one of the possible misconceptions of reorganisation is that it happens suddenly and obliteratively—overwriting the older conceptualisation. It seems more realistic, and certainly more in accordance with the data to suggest that reorganisation occurs gradually over repeated exposures of the information, and that the change is one of emphasis than a real reordering. Viewed from this perspective, conceptual change would predict the sensitivity to context and the inconsistencies that are often seen during the process of learning and development.

Third, the ACT framework says much about the problems of correcting misconceptions. If we repeatedly think about concepts in a certain way (such as thinking about electrical current as flowing water) we make it functionally harder to acquire the correct conceptualisation later on[3]. It also makes claims about the nature of processing during learning and the ability to verbalise that knowledge. Recall the study by Broadbent, Fitzgerald and Broadbent (1987, Section 1.2). This study demonstrates that it is possible to control a complex system with little ability to verbalise what rules one is following, which is explained by ACT by stating that productions are formed without concommitant a declarative representation sufficiently robust to permit verbalisation.

So far learning has been described in a way that detaches it both from the thinking human being in which it occurs, and from the environment[4] that both precipitates and provides the raw materials. A learner is viewed as having knowledge, even structured knowledge, but learning has been described as an unconscious process whereby knowledge is slotted into extant categories like marbles tossed in a series of boxes. Finally, conceptual change is seen as some covert flipping of conceptual structure that happens beyond conscious awareness. Such a view seriously underplays the self-regulated nature of a great deal of learning; to a certain extent learners are consciously trying to make sense of information that is presented to them and relating this to what they already know. As we shall see, there are differences in the extent to which learners do this.

1.4 SELF-REFLECTIVE LEARNING: MONITORING AND REPAIR

Self-monitoring is indispensable when it comes to learning and understanding; at its simplest it describes the process by which learners ensure that their understanding of a domain accords with the domain itself. Monitoring performance is closely related to feedback; if we are learning to throw a ball through a hoop then the fact that the ball misses can serve as a direct indication that we have done something wrong. In other forms of monitoring, there is no direct feedback to indicate that ability or knowledge is wanting, learners have to deploy specific processes themselves.

Glaser and Bassok (1989) propose four types of comprehension monitoring skill: predicting, summarising, questioning and clarifying. *Predicting* is where learners try to test out their understanding of the information presented to them in the learning set by anticipating what comes next. *Summarising* is where learners from summaries of material to attempt to integrate information presented to them to form a coherent overview, again this can serve to aid identification of inconsistencies. *Questioning* is

---

[3] By functionally I mean that although it is no harder to lay down the correct trace in memory it becomes more difficult to get the new conceptualisation to a higher level because the activation level of the incorrect competing theory is so high from all the practice.

[4] Environment here means the to-be-learned information, the instructors, peers and anything else that occurs outside the individuals head.

where learners attempt to resolve understanding failures by asking themselves questions about the information. For example, they may ask: "How does this information relate to what I have read before?", or "What is the relevance of this?". Finally, incongruous information may result in learners *clarifying* certain points, simply re-reading material may help here, although other strategies such as stepping through the set of propositions to be understood providing self-explanations; or trying to find an analogy may also help.

Chi, Bassok, Lewis, Reimann and Glaser (1989) investigated students learning physics from worked examples, and found that the students who did best were those who engaged in self-explanations: deriving each line of the example from the previous line and relating it to the problem whole. Similar results have been obtained by Fergusson-Hessler and DeJong (1990), and Laurillard (1993). Self-explanations serve two functions: first the learner's attention is focused upon the relevant information that links two set of propositions (these might be mathematical statements as for the Chi et al study, or textual structures as for Laurillard's studies), enabling a learner to assess whether they understand the links. Second, generating the self-explanation mobilises knowledge that can be used to understand the example more completely. Self-explanations, therefore, not only enable comprehension to be monitored and help to resolve any understanding failures that may occur; they might also actively prevent certain forms of misconceptions from occurring because the student is engaged in justifying their reasoning.

On the back of this (and other) research, VanLehn (1988) argues for impasse-driven learning. In one implementation the learner is forced to generate self-explanations by being taken through an example one line at a time, providing a justification before continuing on the next line. This approach attempts to minimise the tendency of weaker students to simply ignore transitions in the problem statement because it seems to be too much effort. The results of this approach are so far unknown.

Other attempts to encourage self-explanation have shown some degree of success, Bielaczyc, Pirolli and Brown (in press) demonstrated that if learners are taught to explicitly use self-regulatory strategies such as self-explanation and monitoring in learning the Lisp programming language, then their performance is enhanced, when compared to a group who are not taught these skills.

1.4.1 Summary

The results of the above studies show the importance of engaging in some form of self-reflective reasoning during learning, it also shows that learners can often be taught (or forced) to use reflective skills and that this can have a positive effect on learning. The research by Bielaczyc et al, shows that within a narrow area of application (Lisp learning) a requirement to monitor and reflect by generating self-explanations can turn poor learners into better learners. Is this effect limited to specific domains, or will the teaching of learning strategies such as those above generalise to other problem domains? The next section attempts to answer this question.

1.5 CAN EFFECTIVE MONITORING AND REFLECTIVE SKILLS BE TAUGHT?

There are many programmes that aim to teach general meta-cognitive skills to students (Bransford, Sherman & Sturdevant, 1987; Lipman, 1987; Sternberg, 1987) by providing a relatively small number of general heuristic strategies. After a review of the literature Singley and Anderson (1989) remark that:

> "These heuristics all have the ring of truth and seem quite reasonable on the surface. However their application to a particular problem is difficult, given the abundance of abstract nouns in search of referents."

Singley and Anderson's point relates to the fact that the use of so-called weak heuristic methods are no substitute at all for domain specific methods such as those found by Sweller et al (1983; see Section 1.2.1). Somebody may advise that a good way of critically evaluating an argument is to explicate its hidden assumptions and deciding on their plausibility. What is the novice to do when faced with such a task; what are the critical assumptions and how should they be addressed?

There is the additional problem of transferability of these skills. Even if a student does effectively use monitoring and reflective skills when told to in a set of examples, would they necessarily use them, or be *able* to use them in other problems? Reflective skills are as likely as any other form of knowledge to suffer from the context and task specificity of learning and people may often fail to see how such skills might be deployed. Hayes & Simon (1977) showed that subjects who were able to solve the Tower of Hanoi problem were unable to use this skill to solve problems that were structurally isomorphic but superficially dissimilar. Hayes & Simon argue that this is because subjects fixate on the superficial features of the problems and are unable to see the deeper or more abstract structure. Gick & Holyoak (1980; 1983) demonstrated that even when subjects were instructed to think about the underlying structure of problems, there was little transfer to isomorphs. Cheng, Holyoak, Nisbett & Oliver (1986) showed that performance on Wason's four-card problem, which has an underlying logical structure, was no better for subjects who were trained in logic when compared to subjects with no such training.

Some general learning strategies, on the other hand, do seem to be of some use. PQ4R (Thomas & Robinson, 1972), is a strategy for learning from text which has proved useful in a number of cases (Frase, 1975), whilst subjects trained to use Dansereau et al's

MURDER text comprehension strategy, performed 14-18 percent better than untrained subjects (Dansereau, McDonald, Collins, Garland, Holley, Diekhoff & Evans, 1979). Why is it, therefore, that some strategies seem to have an effect, whilst others do not? Perhaps the main reason is that the stages in strategies such as MURDER and PQ4R pertain to fairly mundane activities, such as 'Set a number of questions to answer before you read the text', or 'After an initial reading, try and recall the main points of the text'. These are all very specific, all things that anyone can do and none of Singley and Anderson's 'abstract nouns in search of referents'. The reason that PQ4R and MURDER work, whilst strategies such as Rubinstein's (1975) problem solving heuristics do not is likely to be because PQ4R and MURDER require learners to do things that they can do relatively easily, but tend not to do in the normal course of events. Asking someone to do something which is unfamiliar to them is likely to result in little improvement, as is asking them to do things that they do in the normal course of their learning. It may be that this reason underlies the effectiveness of teaching self-explanations referred to in Section 1.4, as it is something that most learners are perfectly able to do, but tend not to.

1.6 CONCLUSIONS

This chapter has attempted to show some of the factors that are important in the design of educational computing systems. Learning is geared towards helping the individual adapt to the environment but it is not often clear, least of all to the learner, what skills and knowledge they will need to do this, this is why deciding on goals is an important facet of the design process. Like all forms of adaptation, learning is constrained in the sorts of changes that can be made, in this case by both by the architecture of the mind, and by the knowledge that we already have. Correct understanding of a topic is a prerequisite for correct behaviour, but one of the blocks on aiding this is that often the knowledge that is being used to define concepts is often deeply entrenched and learners are often unaware of it. Such knowledge is not only a problem for errorful behaviour, we often need knowledge of the categories that we are using to act in an appropriate way, when we are aware of what type of entity electrical current is, it may open up a world of analogous categories and structures.

Jonassen, Beisser and Yacci (1993) coined the term *structural knowledge* to refer to the meta-knowledge about the organisational framework that act as the architecture for our conceptual understanding. As Jonassen et al point out there is no psychological basis for positing structural knowledge (unlike the procedural-declarative distinction), but it is useful for discussion purposes. Structural knowledge, as used here, is necessarily based upon abstractions and generalisations of 'real' relationships. Structural knowledge of a psychology experiment E1 is that is has the relation 'supports' with theory T1 and 'contradicts' theory T2. As was discussed in Section 1.5 the psychological evidence regarding the formation abstraction is often gloomy: on the one hand people do it with ease, on the other hand they are not always the correct abstractions and transfer is often weak. The educational psychology of theorists like Ausubel (see section 3.2) stresses the importance of teaching top-down (from the abstract to the specific) something that is echoed by Meyer (1984) in her work on text structure. Situated cognition researchers, on the other hand, emphasise a more bottom-up approach, working from the specifics to and allowing learners to induce the abstractions (Brown, Collins and Duguid, 1989). Still others argue that neither top-down nor bottom-up is correct, but we should teach middle out (White, 1993).

The difference in emphasis between top-down and bottom-up methods of learning and teaching recapitulate the conceptualisation of learning held by these theorists. Constructivists and cognitive psychologists emphasise the acquisition of abstractions, the integration of knowledge into schemata and the organisational capacity of the mind. Situated learning theorists, on the other hand, emphasise the dialectical relationhip between the complexity of task and behaviour, the dominance of local context on performance and the need to acquire specific rather than general skills. Put crudely the former cap argue that you should concentrate on the generalities and the specifics look after themselves, whereas the latter argue the converse. Although coming from a cognitivist perspective, I have as yet made no specification as to which of these approaches would best foster effective learning. The view that I adopt for the reast of this thesis is in one sense that neither of these extreme views is correct, and in another both are. Teaching abstractions is often meaningless to students in the first instance because they give little away as to how they might be used in a specific instance (such as the problem solving strategies referred to in Section 1.5). On the other hand, exposure to specific instances gives learners free reign to treat every problem as the same or form inadequate generalisations as we saw in Section 1.3.2. What seems to be needed is an approach that operated at the level of specific instances, but draws learners attention to and focuses their thought processes on the abstract relationships between elements. Such an approach is not new (see Collins and Brown, 1988) but has so far been explored in only a small number of domains. This approach is known as *directed reflection* because the intention is to direct the learners thinking towards issues of importance to the domain. Such a term, however, is vacuous without any specification of what these issues might be, and how best to direct learners' attention, in order to try and render this concept more tractable I make the following assumptions:

- Academic knowledge is structured in precise ways, and one of the goals of learning is to learn about these and use them effectively to solve problems or communicate with others.

- There are constraints upon an individuals ability to discover these structures; some of these are due to the effects of prior knowledge, and some are due to computational constraints, such as the limitations of working memory.

- The activities that learners engage in can have a large effect on what is learned due to the differences in processing that occurs during learning.

The approach that is adopted is termed *directed reflection.* The intention is to try and focus the learner's attention on the specific types of knowledge and skills that are important to the educational goals, taking the various constraints above into consideration. Of course knowing what the goals are is all important, and in later chapters I shall say more about goals when more specific types of domain are discussed. The next chapter looks at a number of approaches which use educational technology to support the process of learning, these are discussed in relation to directed reflection.

2

Computer-assisted learning

2.1 INTRODUCTION

Computer-assisted learning is a broad church, encompassing a great number of different approaches that have been tailored to suit a number of different educational, political, psychological and technological considerations. In this chapter I consider a few of these approaches with particular reference to some of the considerations that were outlined in the previous chapter. In particular the relevance of the approaches to directed reflection will be considered.

The two main approaches that are based on psychological principles are Microworlds such as LOGO (Papert, 1980, 1987 which are based on neo-Piagetian constructivist principles, and certain intelligent tutoring systems such as the ACT family of tutors, which are based John Anderson's model of skill acquisition[1]. Interestingly both of these approaches are used for domains that are both well-defined and formal. This is no mere coincidence, formal domains happen to lend themselves to these types of systems, whereas poorly defined declarative domains do not. The reason for this is two-fold: first both microworlds and intelligent tutoring require some form of domain model, something that is easier if the domain is formal; and second, these domains are nearly always require a great deal of natural language to convey their concepts and natural language dialogues are difficult to implement in computer systems.

The rest of this chapter discusses some approaches to educational computing, including microworlds and intelligent tutoring. The main focus, however, is on a method that has been used for domains that are primarily declarative in content: the hypertext approach.

---

[1]Interestingly LOGO and the ACT tutors are at opposite poles in the model of learning that they implement.

2.2 PROGRAMMED LEARNING

The primary way in which presentation systems communicate the knowledge to the learner is by presenting, or allowing the learner to have access to, a corpus of information. There is little attempt by the system to involve itself in the process of learning in a sophisticated way. Historically they are perhaps the earliest form of educational computing and date back to the late 1950s and early 1960s. The first systems were linear tutorials, which would present information to the learner in textual or graphical form, the learner progressed through these screens in a sequential fashion and had no control over what they saw next. Some of these systems did require some form of active involvement by the learner; the information screens may be interspersed with sets of questions, normally of multiple choice format, the successful completion of which was prerequisite to the learner progressing onto the next series of information screens. Failure to answer questions correctly would normally result in learners staying at the same level, reading the same information screens until they eventually got the questions correct. More sophisticated systems could deal with learners failing to answer questions correctly by offering remediation in the form of extra screens of information. These branching systems, as they were known, were perhaps one of the first attempts to produce systems that could respond to the needs of the individual, albeit in a severely restricted way.

The interest in systems that regulated the learner's behaviour was based partly on one of the major prevailing psychological theories of learning: Skinnerian learning theory (Skinner, 1968). This suggests that learning could best be achieved by the systematic, incremental shaping of a learner's behaviour by reinforcing behaviour that is correct or appropriate. It is essential in this approach that mastery of a sub-topic occurs before the learner is allowed to progress to the next. Thus assessment is effected by using quizzes.

In their book 'Principles of Instructional Design', Gagné, Briggs and Wager (1988) outline a number of principles designed to aid in the development of courseware, using an approach that has become known as the systems approach. The systems approach is what Carroll (1990) refers to as a monolithic approach to instruction, since the attempt is to impose a single cohesive set of principles on the process of learning. In the systems approach the information to be taught is hierarchically decomposed, first into units known as target objectives, which may be thought of as topic areas, and then to decompose these into still lower level units that represent the material and activities that the learner actually engages with, known as enabling objectives. Enabling objectives are sequenced in a logical way starting with the most fundamental information and building upon it.

The systems approach makes a number of assumptions about the domain to be taught and about the students themselves. First, it assumes that the domain can be hierarchically decomposed, so that the domain is ultimately reducible to a number of low level activities. Second, it assumes that the successful achievement of enabling objectives ultimately results in the learning of the domain itself, or at least the portion of the domain in the system. Third, it assumes that learners are intrinsically motivated to achieve the enabling objectives. Fourth, it assumes that learners do not differ in their goals or background knowledge, or at least it assumes them to make no difference.

The systems approach has been criticised from a number of perspectives. In particular Carroll refers to its treatment of individuals almost as *tabula rasa* with no knowledge or goals of their own as being a major stumbling block. Learners always have some reason for learning, and these reasons are likely to differ in all but the most homogeneous population; failure to take account of these may result in under-use of the systems, due to the laboriousness of the interaction. Additionally, Carroll attacks the notion that there is such a thing as a novice; even on a domain that they have not encountered before learners will bring with them a large amount of information that is relevant to the domain, which is likely to have an influence on the way that they interpret the information. Such background knowledge may facilitate understanding of the information, but it may also interfere with the new domain knowledge resulting in misconceptions (see Section 1.6.6).

The systems approach and variations are still used, particularly in computer-based training where the learning population are relatively homogeneous and the teaching materials relatively procedural. However the shortcomings of the systems approach led to the desire to provide more adaptive systems. With the advent of artificial intelligence, there was a possibility for developing systems that could first go beyond the mere presentation of information learning materials that were truly interactive and generative, and secondly could adapt the course of the interaction to the learners individual requirements. The two systems that perhaps best typify this approach are microworlds and intelligent tutoring.

2.3 MICROWORLDS

Microworlds are an attempt to foster the learning of academic and other concepts by situating them in an computer-based environment that enables experiential learning. Papert (1980, 1987), the father of the microworlds approach, argues that learning is natural and the reason why it is sometimes hard or unsuccessful is due to the unnatural nature of the pedagogy. Children learn, among other things, the rules of grammar, social interaction and causality without being explicitly taught about them, so why should academic concepts such as those in mathematics and physics be any different? Microworlds therefore attempt to recreate the conditions under which we learn these 'natural' phenomena and apply them to concepts that are traditionally taught by pedagogic means. The best known microworld is the *mathworld* or LOGO which, as the name implies is a environment for supporting the acquisition of mathematical concepts. The goal of LOGO is to get a small graphical pointer (known as a turtle) to move around the computer screen so that it draws geometric shapes. In order to do this the child (or other learner) needs to give the turtle instructions, the language that the child uses is called turtle-speak which is a computer programming language that follows the rules of mathematics. Just as a child has a need to learn language to get other people to fulfil its goals, and obtains feedback by observing the successfulness its communication in terms of whether these goals are achieved, so the child learns about mathematics by interacting with the turtle using the mathematical language of turtle-speak and watching how it behaves. The analogy with language goes deeper: language is generative in that the individual can use the grammatical rules to combine the elements into unique forms, expressing things that they have never before thought about, and describing new events, objects or situations. Papert argues that concepts learned by microworlds become what he terms 'powerful ideas': generative, transferable knowledge that permits true intellectual autonomy. In contrast knowledge acquire through pedagogic means suffers from the context dependency, inflexibility and use-specificity that was described in Section 1.5.

The analogy is, superficially at least, very seductive, but is it correct: do microworlds lead to powerful ideas? Most of the evidence for the effectiveness of LOGO is anecdotal, or suffers from inadequate methodology (Kransor & Mitterer, 1984). Mitterer and Kransor (1986) found that skills transfer for children using LOGO was no greater than other interventions such as programming in BASIC and traditional problem solving. Despite the lack of evidence for their effectiveness, microworlds are still a relatively powerful force in computer-assisted learning (see White, 1993). Part of the reason for this is that they offer a way out of the learning paradox by apportioning blame to pedagogy: if all learning is natural then all we need to do is to find the correct environment to engage the natural learning mechanisms. Can academic subjects be learned in the same way as language, causality, natural categories and social interaction? Laurillard (1994) think not, she says about physics microworlds that:

> "...they are learning about the Newtonian world through experiencing it. So it is not academic knowledge that they are acquiring, but experiential knowledge. ...[T]he reasoning that students are doing while operating in a microworld, is helping to build their personal theory of that world, just as the child builds theories of the physical world by playing with bricks."

The thing about personal theories is that, as Chi (1993) points out (Section 1.3.2) is that they are often wrong. Laurillard's point is that microworlds, used by themselves, do not convey the correct conceptualisation of a concept, rather they permit the reinterpretation of new information in terms of old knowledge.

2.4 INTELLIGENT TUTORING

Intelligent tutoring bases its instructional approach on traditional educational practice: the tutorial model. The reason for this is that it is well known that in practically any domain you care to mention one-to-one tutoring produces by far the best results; the problem is that it is very costly to implement. The goal of intelligent tutoring is therefore simple: to provide an educational environment similar to one-to-one tutoring whilst replacing the human tutor with a computer. Intelligent tutoring shares with the systems approach an emphasis on the system regulating the interaction, based on a decomposition of the knowledge and skills to be acquired. It differs from the systems approach in that the specification of the curriculum is less rigid and is tailored to the demands of the individual learner. In order to do this it is necessary to have a the following: an analysis of the skill and sub-skills of the domain and the dependencies between these, such that skill X is prerequisite to skill Y; an understanding of how these individual skills may best be acquired; strategies of communicating the skills; and common misconceptions and deviations from target skills and knowledge that learners exhibit. The system then requires some form of representation of the student's level of understanding so that it can select the appropriate course of action at the right time. When these criteria are fulfilled, intelligent tutoring can be extremely effective; the Geometry Tutor developed by Anderson and colleges has been shown to increase students' performance on standardised tests by around one standard deviation when compared to traditional educational practice (Anderson, Boyle & Yost, 1985).

Intelligent tutoring, properly designed and implemented, can fulfil many of the goals of directed reflection. The tutor can set the focus of the interaction on relevant knowledge; provide tasks that encourage the learner to consider appropriate concepts and relationships and provide meaningful corrective feedback to the learner. Additionally, methods such as the provision of a task goal-stack in the Lisp tutor, or the use of a graphical proof-tree interface in the geometry tutor can serve to support working memory limitations; allowing the learner to focus all of their attention on the relevant concepts. Intelligent tutoring could be seen in some ways to be the ideal candidate for supporting directive reflection, in reality, however, there are enormous problems getting the systems to work in domains when the domain is non-procedural; when there is little or no well-defined objective to the learning; when it is difficult to decompose competence into sub-skills; or when a lot of the knowledge declarative. Many academic disciplines: psychology, economics, philosophy, history, etc. fill all or most of these criteria and are therefore largely impenetrable to tutoring. However, within these disciplines there are often sub-topics that are relatively well-defined and formal, statistics being an obvious candidate. However, in terms of directed reflection we are only on the first rung of providing any sort of formal analysis of the skills and knowledge needed to support such a task and tutoring seems a far off goal. Perhaps in recognition of this and other problems with intelligent tutoring, many practitioners have advocated approaches where the learner has more control, the claim being that if we cannot regulate the interaction in a meaningful way, then we should permit the learner to regulate it themselves, to allow them to take responsibility for their own learning. Hypertext is one such approach, and it is to this that I shall now turn.

2.5 HYPERTEXT

In his now classic paper, "As we may think" Vannevar Bush (1945) outlines the Memex system, which is recognised as containing many of the features of hypertext. Memex allows individuals to store information in the form of associative networks, where semantic relationships can be used to structure and access a knowledge-base. The Memex system would also allow the individual to access information deposited by others, thus the Memex was a shared memory, a notion that is still currently being implemented to this day in tools such as CM/1 (Corporate Memory; Conklin, 1993). As Bush states: "...science may implement the ways in which man produces, stores and consults the records of his race."

The name most closely associated with hypertext is Ted Nelson (Nelson, 1988). Nelson conceived his Xanadu system in the 1960s as a vast interconnected network of 'all human knowledge' that anyone in the world could access via a terminal. Nelson's Xanadu, like Bush's Memex has still yet to reach implementation, (although a new version of Xanadu, Xanadu light, is in preparation) and all of the hypertext systems that exist today are more modest in scope.

2.5.1 *Application areas of hypertext*

Hypertext has been used for a number of purposes, lending itself well to areas where the task of the user is difficult to specify in advance, or where the learner population is likely to be untrained in using databases. Some of theses application areas are: on-line help systems, reference works, electronic books and learning systems. Since the main thrust of this thesis is hypertext for learning, the lions share of the discussion centres around this area of application, before I discuss learning in more detail.

On-line help systems such as the one which comes with HyperCard (Apple computers, 1994) use hypertext links. These allow the user to browse various topics which may be of interest, and jump to a selected topic immediately. Once in a topic the system provides a list of additional topics which are related to the topic currently being viewed. Selecting one of these topics takes the user to further information, which itself include related topics. Thus, the user may find information that they require by accessing information that seems close to their interests and by browsing related topics.

Hypertext systems have been used for producing on-line databases (such as Glasgow on-line, Baird & Percival, 1989). Here the goal is to provide quick access to information that the learners wants, but may not be able to ask for specifically enough for a query system to handle. Information can be accessed via a graphical display that divides the information up into different topic areas that are likely to be of interest to visitors to the city of Glasgow.

Various on-line encyclopaedias, are also based on the hypertext metaphor. Here the ability to cross reference words or topics is made easier by the provision of hypertext links which allow users to access related information more quickly, and without the page-flipping required for paper-based encyclopaedias. The Grolier encyclopaedia is an example of such a system. The advent of the World Wide Web has opened up myriad possibilities for people to develop their own personal hypertext publications, many for educational purposes.

2.5.2 Hypertext for learning

Hypertext excited a lot of interest for its potential as a computer-assisted learning medium, although trying to pin down why this should be so is rather difficult. Certainly it has the potential for wide dissemination; electronic documents can be accessed over information servers in seconds, however this is the case for all electronic media, not just hypertext. A more reasonable explanation may be found in the oft-referred to similarity between hypertext and the structure of memory or even the structure of the brain.

> "The book is a wonderful invention, but it has one major flaw - the linear artefact. Computers allow information to be stored and accessed relationally, thereby mimicking the central nervous system." (Noblitt, 1991)

The above quotation emphasises what can be called the 'homeopathic fallacy' in hypertext (McKendree & Reader, 1994); namely that a solution to a problem (a cure for a disease, an approach to learning) can be found by looking for something that resembles either the problem itself, or the effects of the solution. Such an *episteme* was popular in renaissance times. Foucault (1970) refers to aconite, a plant that was used as a cure for blindness based on the resemblance of its seeds to the human eye: "They are tiny dark globes seated in white skinlike coverings whose appearance is much like that of eyelids covering an eye." If you replace blindness with ignorance, aconite with hypertext and the eye with the brain (or as we shall see shortly, the mind) and you have a perfect mapping.

A more common comparison is that between the structure of hypertext and the structure of memory (see also Bush's quotation, Section 2.4).

> "[A] basic hypothesis of our study is that better concept structures can be developed — structures that when mapped into a human's mental structure will significantly improve his capability to comprehend and to find solutions within his complex-problem solving situations." (Englebart, 1963).

> "Access to the information is facilitated by the associative organisation of the information which may resemble the associative structure of memory." (Jonassen & Grabinger, 1990)

Both of these derive from the fact that hypertext can be seen as a network of associations, a model that has also been used for human declarative memory (Quillian, 1968; Collins & Quillian, 1969; Anderson & Bower, 1973). Again mere structural similarity can be misleading. Access of information such as word concepts from long-term memory can be facilitated if words that are semantically similar are presented beforehand, this so-called associative priming can be modelled by assuming that words are stored in a network which is accessed by a spread of activation from the primed word to all its semantic relatives; this activation causes the activation level of all the words touched by the spread of activation to be reduced, resulting in quicker access next time around. This way of storing information may serve some adaptive function because it means that events that tend to co-occur in the environment will tend to prime each other leading to faster access when required; in short it give the human cognitive system some means of predicting what may happen next based on the prior probabilities of co-occurrence. Hypertext could in principle be seen to be like this; providing access to related information if required. The problem here is that although this may be an effective method of aiding access for a knowledgeable person it may cause problems for the novice, unaware of the reason for the semantic connections coded in by the expert. In this sense it becomes rather like trying to make sense of someone else's personal filing system. And indeed this is another, perhaps more plausible account of why hypertext may be an effective medium for the delivery of educational material. The claim here is that following the hypertext links gives the learner a clearer idea of the way that the information fits together in the domain to form a coherent whole. Whilst this may be true, it is contingent upon the learner processing the links in a meaningful way; merely moving from one screen to another is unlikely to give the learner any insight as to what the connection between the two screens is.

Mayes, Kibby and Watson (1988) take up this line of reasoning in their StrathTutor system. StrathTutor was designed to encourage the learners to reflect upon and meaningfully process the relationships between semantically congruent screens of information. Unlike standard hypertext which is geared towards making screen to screen transitions as smooth as possible, StrathTutor attempts to turn the access of a new screen into a problem solving exercise; one of the learner's tasks during the interaction is to make sense of the relationships between the different screens. By actively encouraging learners to make sense of the relationships, StrathTutor provides an environment that demands meaningful, active processing; something which many hypertext systems tend to ignore.

StrathTutor, however, encompasses attributes that lie outside the hypertext model, and although an interesting system, is really something different. In the final analysis, there are perhaps two substantive reasons as to why hypertext is useful for learning:

- Hypertext allows learners to direct the interaction themselves,
- Hypertext allows information to be accessed rapidly.

Even these supposed benefits, particularly the first mentioned, are not without problems, in the next section I discuss some of the problems with hypertext that have been observed.

2.5.3 Problems with hypertext

Hammond and Allinson (1989) outline five problems with using hypertext for learning:

> First, users get lost, The knowledge base may be large and unfamiliar; the links provided are unlikely to be suitable for all learners and for all tasks...Second, users may find it difficult to get an overview of the material. They may fail to see how parts of the knowledge base are related and even miss relevant sections entirely. Third even if learners know specific information exists they may have difficulty finding it. The knowledge base may not be structured in the way they expect, or their lack of knowledge might mislead them. ...Fourth, learners may ramble through the knowledge base in an unmotivated and instructionally inefficient fashion. The materials may not provide sufficient tutorial guidance for learners to ask themselves the right questions or to help them to formulate or attain to their goals. Finally, coming to grips with the interface for controlling the various facilities may interfere with the primary task of exploring and learning about the materials.

In the following sections I discuss each of these problems in turn

2.5.3.1 Getting lost

One of the problems that hypertext researchers quickly came up against was how user are able to find information in hypertext information bases, when the goal state is not specified as an option on the currently viewed screen. Obviously a default top-level access screen such as a table of contents screen could be made easily accessible, but this can only list a finite number of topics which may have a potentially infinite number of descriptors. Due to the strong spatial metaphor that has become associated with hypertext this problem became known as one of navigation. The comparison is often drawn between navigating hypertext and finding your way around an unfamiliar city; both tasks may require you to achieve some goal (find some information, or find a say a railway station); there are various means of reaching your goal state (following hypertext links or walking along streets); and some clues as to how near you are to the goal and possible routes to it (the information currently displayed may seem relevant, signposts may be indicate possible directions). Cities however often contain fewer possible options than a large hypertext system, after some time wandering round an unfamiliar city we will often encounter areas that we have seen before, and because of the strong visuo -spatial cues in the shapes of buildings etc. choosing alternative options becomes progressively easier as we build up a mental map. With hypertext it is often extremely hard to acquire such maps due to the lack of such cues (Fiderio, 1988) and disorientation may occur. As Elm and Woods (1985) claim, navigational problems occur because of:

> "The user not having a clear conception of the relationships within the system, or knowing his present location in the system relative to the display structure, and [thus] finding it difficult to decide where to look in the system."

Disorientation manifests itself as confusion and frustration and leads to time being wasted wandering round the information base, reducing the effectiveness of the system.

Thus hypertext's great strength is also its Achilles' heel, it is just the lack of linearity, the flexibility of the medium that leads to problems of disorientation (Conklin 1987). Attempts to overcome the problem of disorientation have tended to either give the user more cues in order for them to orientate themselves; such as maps (Foss 1987, Hammond & Allinson 1989), or other spatial cues (Fiderio 1988); or to attempt to 'linearize the non-linear' by providing paths through the information relating to a specific goal. This not only aids the access of material, it may aid learners to develop some type of mental map (Edwards & Hardman 1989; Zellweger 1989), which can enable to find their way around more easily. These linear paths were dubbed 'guided tours' by Hammond & Allinson who extended the spatial metaphor comparing an interaction with hypertext (in this case with an educational purpose) to travelling round a foreign country; users (or tourists) can either 'ramble' on their own; going where they please, or opt to take a guided tour where the system 'selects' an itinerary of interesting topics for them to see based around some theme. Guided tours have the effect of linearizing hypertext, however in the implementation developed by Hammond & Allinson; The Hitch-Hiker's Guide, tours are only one way through the material, during at any point the tour can be suspended, allowing full use of all the other access facilities. There are many other approaches to aiding the learner's task of finding their way around large hypertext information bases, see Section 2.4.5.2.

2.5.3.2 The implications of disorientation for learning

Disorientation of varying degrees is bound to have an effect on learning, most generally this is taken to be a negative effect: disorientation prevents learners from getting where they want to go; it slows down the access of meaningful and relevant material; it confuses and bewilders the learner sapping their patience and eroding their motivation to learn. Additionally, the demands that the system makes on the learner to continually choose where to go next, may result in 'cognitive overheads' (Wright, 1991; Jonassen and Grabinger 1990); learners spend so much time choosing and navigating that they have little time to devote to reading and learning the information.

Kibby and Mayes (1991) take different line on disorientation, they suggest that the process whereby learner actively seeks recovery from being lost can actually be a positive learning experience. They give the example that an effective way to learn your way around a strange city is to get lost and then have to find your way again. Thus getting lost in hypertext may force learners to consider the organisation of the hypertext system more closely, which may give them more of an idea as to the way that the domain information is organised. Such a learning experience may only arise if the structure of the hypertext system corresponds to the structure of the domain closely, without this mapping the learner may be misled into making false inferences about the relationships in the domain itself. Kibby and Mayes here draw a distinction between hyperspace: the general framework of the hypertext system; and conceptual space: the actual conceptual interrelations. Only getting lost in conceptual space would have any educational benefit, so it is suggested that hyperspace follows the structure of conceptual space as closely as possible. The notion of getting lost as being a positive learning experience can again be attributed to constructivist epistemology and we shall return to this notion again when concept mapping tools are considered later in this chapter.

2.5.3.3 Comprehension failure

There are few explicit reasons as to why hypertext should be useful for learning, there have been some vague allusions to the fact that because hypertext is basically an associative network, a form of representation that had been used to model human memory. Cognitive interpretations of learning and memory emphasise the interconnected nature of knowledge is represented in a 'tangled hierarchy' (Anderson, 1983); this has led to the assumption that because hypertext explicitly represents information in a network it signals the conceptual relationships, hence enabling learners to more readily understand and integrate the information. Such assumptions may well be true, but there is some doubt as to whether novices can make sense of all the interconnections and therefore construct some form of coherent overview. Text typically has a wide variety of structural patterns that provide information such as where the text is going, providing integrations between what is currently being read and information that the reader has encountered before, or information that they will encounter later on. Such cataphoric and anaphoric references are just one of the various signals made explicit by text, are based upon the assumption that the text will be read left to right, top to bottom, front to back. It is suggested that when these structures are removed that comprehension will become problematic. Gordon, Gustavel, Moore & Hankey (1988) compared the effectiveness of hypertext presentations of technical and non-technical topics with conventional linear tutorials. They found that when subjects were later asked a series of questions which required them to recall information from the texts that recall was significantly higher in the linear conditions both for basic factual information and for information requiring them to integrate the material. Subjects also expressed a preference for the linear presentation. Indeed in studies where text and hypertext have been directly compared no study shows that hypertext has any advantage over text for comprehension or learning.

Studies such as the ones above should not be seen as indicating that hypertext can never be more effective for the delivery of instructional materials than standard text; there is likely to be an interaction between comprehension and the level of domain specific expertise. For example Kintsch's (1987) text comprehension model, the Construction-Integration model predicts that non-linear representations may be useful when the learner have some understanding of the domain (Folz, 1991). The argument here is that knowledgeable users may be able to use content specific markers in the hypertext to signal structure, rather than explicit structure.

2.5.3.4 Problems with access

Folz's point, above, also has a bearing on the ability of learners to access known material (Hammond and Allinson's third point). Generally hypertext systems tend to be structured with respect to the conceptual interrelationships of the particular domain; whilst access may appear logical to someone who understands the subject, it may afford little help to novices. This tends to contradict the stance taken by Jonassen and Grabinger (1990) who refer to hypertext as the ultimate accretion medium, using Rumelhart and Norman's interpretation of the term. Jonassen and Grabinger argue that the structure of hypertext is tailor-made for novice to build up a workable understanding of the topic area. In contrast it appears that hypertext is more of a medium for tuning, whereby learners with well developed domain schemata can use the non-linear structure effectively to access relevant information.

2.5.3.5 Inefficient learning strategies

The connections in hypertext mean that learners can access material with only minimal knowledge of what it is they are looking for. This is achieved by browsing, following the various links that are present within the information itself. Users can follow links, perhaps denoted by keywords, that seem to indicate the sort of information that they are interested in finding out about. It is a heuristic strategy akin to a game of 'hunt the thimble' where the similarity of present information to the goal informs the user as to whether they are getting 'warmer' or 'colder'. It may be inefficient in terms of the time taken: many blind alleys may be followed, and there is no guarantee of the goal being reached; however it is useful in the sense that it will often result in success, when all other attempts have failed.

Marchionini (1988) states three reasons as to why hypertext users browse:

> "Firstly, they browse because they cannot, or have not defined their search objective... Second, people browse because it takes less cognitive load to browse than it does to plan and conduct an analytical, optimised search... Third, people browse because the information system supports and encourages browsing."

Marchionini's third point illustrates that not only does hypertext *permit* browsing, but the various on-screen affordances (see Gaver, 1991) positively encourage the learner to browse, irrespective of whether or not it is the most sensible strategy to adopt. Additionally Hammond (1993) points out that very often hypertext can offer mis-affordances in that buttons or active text tend to remain on-screen irrespective of whether the learner has seen the information has been seen before; causing looping, or whether the information is relevant to the learners goals. Such affordances may therefore actively detract from the learner using their own goals to drive the interaction. McAleese (1989) states that browsing should be purposeful, and that the design of the system can, in some respects, support the user in their task to find information, by providing meaningful structure to enable successful navigation. However, often hypertext consists of a mass of interconnections that have no contextual sensitivity: one button looks pretty much like another. A learner who is uninformed with respect to the domain is going to find information seeking difficult. Not surprising, therefore, that learners often find that browsing is the only realistic option open to them. This may have severe effects on the quality of the learning experience, as it may side-track the learner resulting in them covering irrelevant material.

Suchman (1987) argues that many behaviours that seem planned are in fact the result of situated *actions* caused by responses to changes of state in a system. The way that we use a photocopier, to use Suchman's example, is not the result of plan following behaviour, rather it consists of a sequence of actions in direct response to the particular demands of the system itself. Whether this theoretical orientation is correct is up for question, however it is certainly the case that often our behaviour is determined to a large extent by the prevailing environmental conditions. Hypertext offers many things for the learners to do, but often these things are not designed to have any instructional value other than leading to extra information screens. If learners are to learn then they need to take charge of the learning themselves by making summaries, testing themselves, drawing overview diagrams and so on. The result of this is that learning from hypertext places demands on the learners meta-cognitive learning strategies, in order for them to learn the information in an effective manner. As Hammond and Allinson indicate, learners rambling in an instructionally inefficient way, for example merely reading the information, may result in them being able to recall very little after an interaction.

2.5.4 Summary

As well as inheriting problems from standard texts (such as passive learning) hypertext also bring new problems to the use of text (such as disorientation, lack of clear structure or narrative, poor integration and so on). The romantic view of hypertext that learners explore conceptual space, integrate concepts and reflect upon the nature of these integrations is rather too good to be true. What seems to happen, at least with domain novices, is that they often fail to see the relationships that connect screens of information because they are too busy reading text, clicking buttons, trying not to get lost and so on. Furthermore hypertext does not focus the learners attention upon relationships, it positively conceals them behind a 'Go to' button. Additionally many of these buttons are not conceptually relevant, for example a button bearing the legend 'More' probably has more to do with limitations on screen-size than any conceptual relationship. Unsurprising that learners quickly abandon trying to infer relations, if they ever did in the first place. Hypertext does not therefore support or encourage directed reflection, the interaction is often anything but directed and the requirement to reflect is often nil.

These problems have led to a number of attempts to improve upon the basic hypertext model in various way to increase its educational effectiveness.

2.5.5 Supporting learning from hypertext

We have seen that there are a number of problems with the use of hypertext in education, some of which are a result of the specific features of hypertext, and some of which it inherits from its paper-based ancestors. The passive nature of hypertext is something that is true for all text as text does not require the learner to engage in effective learning strategies. The disorientation problems and lack of coherent structure, however, are problems that tend to be specific to hypertext itself.

A number of methods have been used to aid learning from hypertext, the simplest involve providing learners with quizzes to encourage active learning; more complex approaches attempt to marry hypertext to artificial intelligence techniques.

2.5.5.1 Quizzes and questions

As was indicated earlier, the use of multiple choice questions in CAL dates back to some of the earliest systems. Well designed multiple choice questions, with appropriate canned remediation if the answers are incorrect and explanations for correct answers, can be a useful addition to hypertext, and have been implemented in a number of educational hypertext systems such as The Hitch-hiker's Guide (Hammond and Allinson, 1989). Quizzes can encourage learners to test themselves, thus making them more active learners, they can also serve to identify misconceptions and may encourage learners to be more goal oriented: answering a question can serve to direct learners' efforts to answering the question. Such facilities are, however, seriously limited: they can only accommodate a subset of learners' goals, and remediation in the form of corrective feedback is either primitive or non-existent. Since the system does not 'understand' the questions, it is impossible for the system to effect responses that the author had not explicitly encoded into the system during development. This problem was a motivating factor behind the application of Artificial Intelligence techniques to educational computing. Some of these techniques have also been applied to hypertext-based CAL systems.

2.5.5.2 Hypertext and artificial intelligence

Some developers of hypertext-based CAL systems have attempted to support the learner by applying artificial intelligence approaches to hypertext. Most of these tend to be directed at supporting browsing and information access by using search algorithms that can extract certain contextually relevant subsets of information based on some measure of the learner's goals (see Scott, 1993, for an example of this type of system). Other approaches such as those suggested by Fischer (1992), use hypertext together with knowledge mapping tools and critiquing systems to produce hybrid systems that aid learning. Fischer's system Janus (Fischer, McCall and Morch, 1989) is a learning environment designed to teach architects the rudiments of kitchen design, Janus contains two components: Janus-construction, a knowledge-based construction component and

Janus-argumentation, a hypermedia system structured with respect to argumentation. Learners are allowed to construct potential kitchen designs in Janus-construction, using a graphical interface; when design principles are violated the critics in the knowledge-based component feeds information to the hypermedia system in Janus-argumentation, allowing access to information relevant to the particular set of the domain relevant to the task. Thus not only is immediate feedback presented to the individual, but some degree of remediation fostered. Fischer's systems can be seen as falling in with guided construction category of systems, offering a synthesis of intelligent tutoring principles and the principles of open learning. In contrast to standard hypertext systems learners engage with a task, rather than browse an information-base, the goals are therefore more concrete as they are reified in some problem to be solved. This, perhaps, offers learners a more engaging, motivating environment, with more scope for the recognition and remediation of misconceptions. Currently it is a point of debate exactly when the system should step in, as the recovery from errors of understanding can be useful in the development of meta-cognitive skills, however it does appear useful for *some* form of remediation and support to exist, rather than allowing learners to persist with misconceptions, or to flounder with a problem in an unprofitable manner.

The aforementioned StrathTutor, although not based on strict AI techniques, attempts to provide a reactive environment within which learners can explore conceptual space. StrathTutor utilises the semantic distance between concepts within the hypertext as a problem solving exercise; it is the learner's task to discover explicitly the relationships between items of information.

2.5.5.3 User-created hypertexts

A final way in which learning may be facilitated places hypertext in a rather different role. Instead of the learner accessing information to learn, the learner creates or modifies the hypertext itself. As I pointed out in Section 2.4.2 merely following relational links does not guarantee that the learner will think about the relationship, if the learner is required to create the links themselves, it may at the very least get them thinking about the structure of the information. Beeman, Anderson, Bader, Larkin, McClard, McQuillian and Shields (1987), attempted to use the hypertext application Intermedia (Meyrowitz, 1986) in order to foster what is known as pluralistic learning. Pluralistic learning means simply that as well as learning given content material, learners also integrate ideas, form abstractions, think critically and learn skills that may help them to do this more efficiently in the future. The development of these *critical thinking skills* as they have been termed is embodied in many educational cultures, particularly in Britain and the USA. Beeman *et al* required learners to construct hypertext documents themselves, trying to relate the ideas together, form abstractions, derive generalisations and so on, thus engaging learners in processes which may engender pluralistic learning.

2.6 DISCUSSION

There are a vast number of different approaches to computer-assisted learning, and it is fair to say that there is not one approach which would serve as an educational panacea; different approaches suit different educational demands. If our goal is to achieve directed reflection then it appears that although intelligent tutoring may be a useful approach to adopt, the effort required to formalise the requirements of directed reflection might be too great. Approaches such as hypertext, whilst fine for presenting information in a textual or graphical form to the learner are not really appropriate without much modification. The demands that have shaped hypertext are not strictly speaking educational, rather they are ones concerned with expedience. Some see hypertext as liberating the learner, freeing them from the shackles of educational dogma, but as a number of studies have shown for the domain novice hypertext is often less effective than the humble textbook. It seems that the best view of hypertext is not as an educational system, but as part of an educational system, used as a information resource in a way, perhaps, like that used by Fischer.

Learners need to do something with the information in order to learn it, especially when they have little or no domain specific schematic knowledge. The next chapter discusses a method of getting learners to do something meaningful with information, presented by various media, by using the techniques of knowledge mapping, and tools that embody these.

3

Learning through knowledge mapping

3.1 INTRODUCTION

This next section looks at possibly one of the more fruitful techniques for supporting the directed reflection; the approach known as knowledge mapping. Knowledge mapping, in its most basic form, is simply the construction by the learner of a graphical, network-based representation of some area of knowledge. This knowledge could be material that has been recently been presented to the learner, knowledge that the learner already knows about, or (most commonly) some combination of the two.

Before I go on it seems appropriate to discuss briefly some of the terms that will be used in discussing knowledge mapping tools. I use the term *knowledge mapping* as a generic terms that subsumes all approaches to learning in which the learner tries to map out their knowledge (or information) graphically. This therefore includes lots of other terms such as cognitive mapping, semantic networking, concept mapping, mind mapping and knowledge structuring, all of which have been used by other authors. The reason for using knowledge mapping is that it is fairly neutral, making few bold claims as to the nature of the activity, representational formalism or tool. Concept mapping, for example, relates to Novak and Gowin's approach, which uses hierarchically structured representations; semantic networking relates to Fisher's SemNet; and knowledge structuring is a term that I use to refer to more structured tools such as gIBIS and Euclid (see Chapter 5).

Two distinct evolutionary routes can be traced in the development of computer-based knowledge mapping tools: many of the tools known as concept mapping tools derive from Ausubelian constructivism, whereas other tools derive attempt to support various tasks by allowing the manipulation of information rich objects. Some of the last-mentioned tools are discussed in Chapter 6, and include various systems designed to support argumentation, authoring and decision making. However, for the moment I shall concentrate on those tools that are specifically designed to support learning.

Perhaps the first advocate of knowledge mapping as an approach to learning was Joseph Novak (Novak and Gowin, 1984) in his work on concept mapping. Novak and Gowin define a concept maps as: "...a schematic device for representing a set of concept meanings embedded in a framework of propositions." (p. 15) Novak's notion of concept mapping draws heavily from Ausubel's (1968) theory of learning and education, and it seems profitable at this point to say a little about this theory.

3.2 AUSUBEL'S INFLUENCE ON CONCEPT MAPPING

Ausubel's theory, like more recent ventures (Thagard, 1992; Chi, 1993; see Section 1.3.3) emphasises the role of concepts and conceptual structure in the process of learning and understanding: "Meaningful learning is so important......because it is the human mechanism par excellence for açquiring and storing the vast quantity of ideas and information represented by any field of knowledge".

Ausubel has an affinity for speaking about concepts: "...man lives in a world of concepts rather than in a world of objects events and situations" (Ausubel, 1968, p 505). Ausbel believes that we understand the world through concepts and their relationships; indeed, as the previous quotation highlights, the world that we inhabit *is* our concepts, and since we all have slightly different experiences, we all inhabit slightly different worlds.

The key to Ausubel's theory is what he terms subsumption, which provides both an account of conceptual learning, an explanation of why things sometimes go wrong and, to an extent, prescriptions as to the best way to teach and learn. Subsumption is simply the process whereby concepts become subsumed under more inclusive and general concepts. In some forms of subsumption, both the general and more specific concepts remain; in other forms, so called *obliterative* subsumption the general concept entirely replaces the specific ones. Obliterative subsumption is seen as a mechanism for affording economy of storage space, but in fact it is a bit of a double-edged sword. If the specific concepts are entirely derivable from the general concepts (so-called *derivative* subsumption), then obliterative subsumption might be of some use. For example if you learn that a whale in a mammal and that all mammals suckle their young, then there is no need to store the attribute of *suckles_young* at the level of whale; it can be subsumed under mammal and derived (or inherited) from the general concept. However, often the subsumed concepts are not entirely derivable from the subsumer—so-called *correlative* subsumption. For instance, if you make the (not entirely correct) inference that all mammals give birth to live young and store this at the general 'mammal' concept, then incorrect predictions would be made in the case of the platypus; sometimes it makes sense to store attributes as specifics rather than generalities. In order to best aid conceptual development and encourage obliterative subsumption when it is useful and discourage it when it might cause problems, Ausubel proposes a number of heuristic principles for teaching and learning. These are: progressive differentiation, integrative reconciliation and consolidation.

Progressive differentiation. Information should be presented to the learner from the most general, inclusive level to the most specific; something that Ausubel views as a natural process of the cognitive system. Hence we should be taught what mammals are before we learn what platypuses are, and presumably we should learn about typical mammals (dogs, apes) before we learn about atypical mammals (platypuses, whales). The purpose here is to ensure that we obliteratively subsume useful concepts (suckle_young, warm_blooded) rather than incorrect ones (lays_eggs and so on). This prescriptive method contrasts with that of Glock (1967) who argues that the reverse should be sought, details being presented before higher level abstractions; something that is also argued by adherents to situated learning (Brown, Collins and Duguid, 1989).

Integrative reconciliation. Ideas and concepts may be acquired by the learner under many circumstances and under different names, and often the relationships between these concepts is not made explicit in the educational environment. The result of this, according to Ausubel, is that the learner stores far more information than is necessary, and knowledge becomes unduly compartmentalised. Integrative reconciliation states that the instructor should serve to aid integration by either stating integrations explicitly in the form of overviews, or encouraging the learner to do so.

Consolidation. The last of Ausubel's principles discussed here is consolidation. This is the insistence that learners understand well a particular topic before going on to the next. This would flow naturally if obliterative subsumption is to be avoided Recall that obliterative subsumption is the result of new knowledge being integrated inappropriately with old concepts, such that the subsuming concept stands for the whole of the one subsumed. Ausubel argues that consolidation should be achieved by feedback, practice on different tasks and repeated exposure to learning material.

Novak and Gowin's form of concept mapping is a meta-learning activity that rigorously implements a number of Ausubel's principles in the form of a number of conventions that effect both the appearance of the completed map, and the process by which a map is constructed. The notation, in accordance with Ausubel's contention that conceptual structure is hierarchical, is hierarchically based: going from the most general concept at the top of the page to the most specific at the bottom, concepts are enclosed by ellipses, and the links represented by solid lines. Non-hierarchical relationships are permitted but requires a different form of notation. Cross links between concepts on the same level, for example, must be drawn using dashed rather than the usual solid lines; additionally, things that are not concepts such as specific instances and examples are enclosed with dotted rather than solid ellipses (see Figure 3.1). Thus the distinction between hierarchical structure and other forms of structure is preserved.

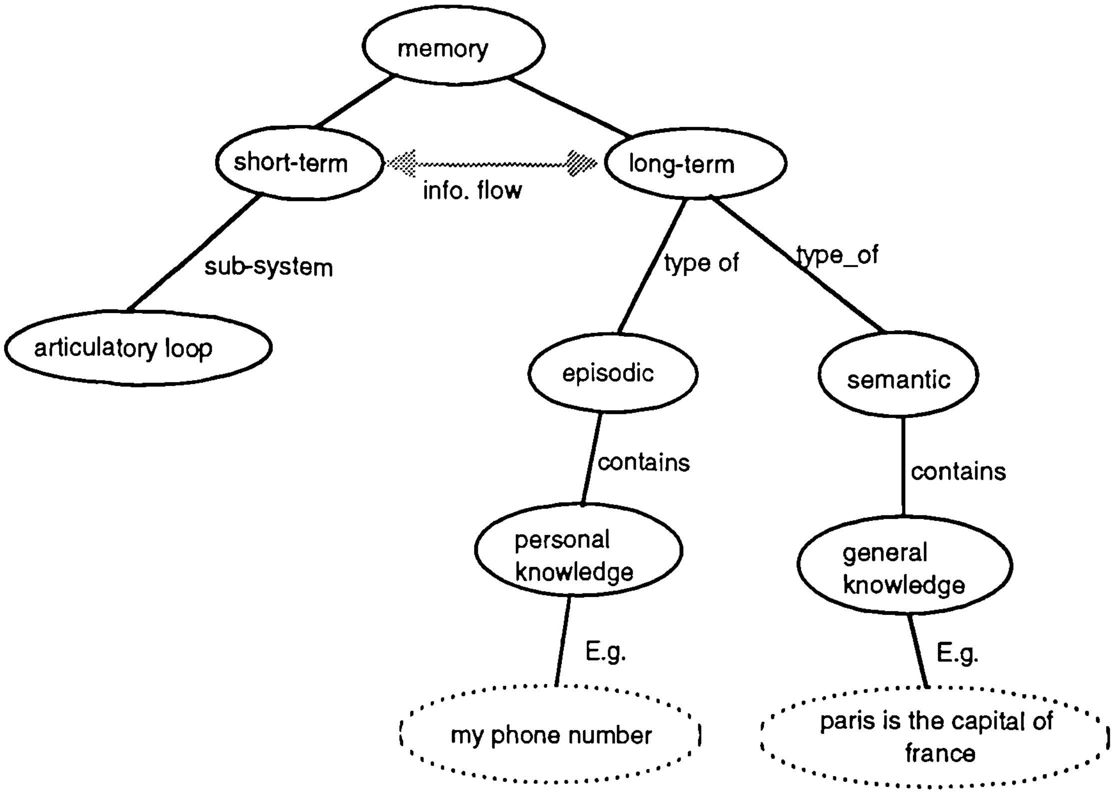


Figure 3.1 Novak-Gowin style concept map showing hierarchical structure, hatched cross-links and dotted instance ellipses.

The process of construction is also regulated. Learners start with the most inclusive concept relevant to their task and work downwards to the most specific; any links between concepts are requested to be stated before moving down to the next level, in accordance with Ausubel's principles of integrative reconciliation and progressive differentiation.

It should be apparent that the Novak-Gowin version of concept mapping requires rather more of learners then simply to map out their ideas using nodes and links; it is in fact a meta-learning strategy that students need to learn before they can map effectively. In particular the importance of training and practice is emphasised: Wandersee (1991) estimates that it can take eight to ten weeks before a student can use the strategy in an educationally effective manner.

3.3 COGNITIVE ACCOUNTS OF KNOWLEDGE MAPPING

Not all advocates of knowledge mapping use Ausubel's principles of learning. For example Kozma, (1992) a co-developer of the 'ideas processor' Learning Tool, takes a more cognitive interpretation of knowledge mapping. According to Kozma, there are three limitations on our ability to learn: the limited capacity of working memory; the difficulty in retrieving needed information from long-term memory; and the inefficient of ineffective use of cognitive and meta-cognitive strategies to obtain, manipulate and restructure information. Knowledge mapping tools can be used by learners as an external aid to both long and working memory: learners can note the contents of working memory using concepts and text, and link in ideas that may be retrieved during the note making process.

Fisher (1992) also uses cognitive science to justify the knowledge mapping approach[1]. She sees knowledge mapping as supporting a number of factors in learning:

(1) The acquisition of both conceptual and relational knowledge by the activity of naming and linking concepts.

(2) Permitting the learner to see their concept map from different perspectives.

(3) The progression towards more expert-like knowledge structures by browsing expert maps and comparing them to their own.

(4) Aiding the reflection on their knowledge by examining it reified in a semantic net by using (2) and (3) above.

(5) The development of knowledge representation strategies. All of these are subsumed within:

(6) Fisher also claims that concept mapping can be useful in the sense that it allows the instructor to get a more adequate, explicit idea of the sorts of beliefs that student has about the topic area, in her words they offer the instructor "a window on the students' mind".

In the next section I assess some of the claims that have been made for the effectiveness of concept mapping.

---

[1] Fisher, one of the developers of SemNet, uses the more specific term of semantic networking.

3.4 AN ANALYSIS OF CLAIMS FOR KNOWLEDGE MAPPING

Knowledge mapping researchers make three claims for the potential outcomes of concept mapping activity, no matter what theoretical stance they adopt, these are:

(1) Knowledge mapping improves retention of information.

(2) Knowledge mapping fosters a deeper understanding of domain knowledge

(3) Knowledge mapping aids the development of meta-cognitive skills.

Different researchers tend emphasise different aspects of knowledge mapping. Kozma and Fisher tend to emphasise the first and especially the second of the above points; Buzan (1993) pays particular attention to the first point; whilst McAleese (1994) acknowledges the role of knowledge mapping in the development of self-regulatory skills. Finally, Novak has much to say about all three. Of course separating the claims out like this is artificial from a psychological point of view. We know that, for example, any tool that improves understanding is likely to have a concomitant effect on retention— schema theory tells us this (Dooling & Lachman, 1971, see section 1.3), although this does not necessarily work in the opposite direction. In the next few sections I investigate some of these claims with a view to ascertaining what factors might give rise to these outcomes.

3.4.1 Knowledge mapping improves retention

There may be many routes by which retention can be aided, having a deeper understanding is one way, since I deal with this in Section 3.4.2, I shall look here at mechanisms that more or less aid retention directly.

Depth of processing (Craik & Lockhart, 1973) is a principle that is related to the retention of information. Put simply if subjects have to think about the meanings of concepts then it is more likely that will be recalled at a later date (providing the meaning is required in recall) than if the meaning is not thought about. Simply, one of the arguments that has been put forward for concept mapping is that it forces the learner to think conceptually in the action of creating and naming nodes and linking them together (Mayes, 1992).

Another psychological principle that Mayes invokes in support of concept mapping is known as the enactment effect. This states that superior recall of the names of objects presented to a subject is obtained if the subject does something with the object rather than just imagines that they perform the action; for example a match may be presented to subjects and they might be instructed to break the match.

Both of these principles seem to work as a result of other information that the to-be-remembered item is elaborated with: meaningful processing relates the target item to semantically related information, whereas performing and action encodes sensory-motor information as part of the event. Elaborations, work by increasing the number of retrieval paths to the target item. Mayes quotes Craik and Tulving (1975) who state that people remember not what was 'out there' when they are learning, but what they did when they were encoding the information; something which accords with this retrieval cue account of the enactment effect and levels of processing.

Both these two principles relate the storage of information in episodic memory—memory for concepts stored as part of the event itself rather than semantic memory, which is information abstracted from the actual means and context of encoding.

3.4.2 Knowledge mapping fosters understanding

In Chapter 1 I made the point that there is often a dissociation between what teachers teach and what learners learn, and often neither party realises that there is a difference until the misconception manifests itself as a consistent error. Chi (1993) argues that often these misconception arise as a result of the learner failing to have the correct representational framework in which to correctly categorise the concept. Lack of an appropriate ontological framework is only one reason why mis-categorisations occur; it is also conceivable that a learner may possess the correct background knowledge, but for some reason fails to integrate the new knowledge in an appropriate manner. One reason why this may occur is by over-extending a initially useful analogy, such as seems to happen in the 'flowing water' model of electric current. But perhaps a even more common reason is that learners simply do not consider other potentially useful integrations. There are two reasons why this may occur: first, restrictions on working memory means that only a small number of things can be thought about at any one time, Kintsch and vanDijk (1978) estimate this may be no more than around four propositions (and often fewer); second, there is little guidance as to which, from all the set of propositions one could consider, would be useful to them. It seems that knowledge mapping might be of some use here.

- Maps provide external support for working memory, by allowing learners to visualise conceptual structure.
- The activity of mapping encourages learners to explore relationships.
- The map can be used to communicate ones understanding to others who can provide useful directed feedback

I shall now discuss each of these in turn.

3.4.2.1 Visualisation

Visualisation tools have been used to great effect in a number of discipline areas. Computer-aided design tools allow designers to visualise their work and get a better understanding of the way that the artefact would work in practice. But tools for visualisation pre-date the advent of the computer by many thousands of years. Wainer (1992) discusses the impact of different representations on reasoning and problem solving. He argues that the same information represented in different ways can have differential effects on the sorts of inferences that we draw. He cites the example of John Snow who made the link between cholera and infected water in 19th Century London. This connection was established after Snow drew the locations of choleric homes on a street map that also had the water stand-pipes marked; the outbreaks of the disease clustered around the stand-pipes indicating a correlation between water and cholera. This occurred because the use of a graphical representation effectively shouted out correlations which may otherwise be hidden in a different representation.

Larkin & Simon (1987) elaborate this point. They argue that two representations can be informationally equivalent (the same information can be represented in, for example, a table, a pie chart and a histogram) but can be computationally distinct in that one enables or encourages different types of processing, or makes different information salient. Again one of the assumptions underlying this notion is that of the limited capacity processor that is working memory. In order to solve, for example, a mathematics problem in one's head, one would have to keep in mind the numbers to be manipulated together with any partial results that may be needed in the course of solving the problem. The more numbers that needed to be kept in memory, the harder the problem would be in terms of the speed and accuracy of the solution. The fact that certain people can perform extremely complex calculations mentally relates to the fact that they have learned automatic ways of dealing with the information that enables them to devote more of their limited capacity to solving the problem in hand. People, however, rarely solve complex problems solely in the head; they use the environment to supplement working memory. At least one of the benefits of graphs over tables is that trends can be deduced without having to compare the numbers by storing them in working memory. The graph effectively does this work for the solver. A further reason why graphs may be better than other representations relates to the fact that they are in a visual modality. Perceptual representations such as size and proximity can all immediately signal certain things about information being represented such as the magnitude of an effect or relationships between entities denoted by the graphics.

Knowledge maps can make use of many of the graphical attributes described above. Links can indicate relationships in a very direct way, node-size might be used to indicate importance or magnitude, and colour (or shading) can be used to make certain parts of the map directly salient to the learner (or other people who might read the map). Many of the tools and methods described in this chapter use some of these methods. TextVision 2D uses node-size to indicate the significance of conceptual entities; Novak and Gowin's concept mapping technique uses solid and broken lines to differentiate hierarchical from non-hierarchical structure; and most can use proximity and links to designate relationships.

An equally important attribute of schematic representations is that they only represent certain types of information. A well-drawn sketch map of a route can be more effective than a detailed ordinance survey map in route finding because it only contains information that the use will need (left and right turns, traffic lights and so on) rather than burying this information amongst irrelevancies. In the same way knowledge maps require only certain types of information to be represented, the learner is invited to think only about certain aspects of the information that is presented to them in the learning material such as hierarchical or causal relationships.

3.4.2.2 Supporting relational thinking

Often people's conceptual understanding of a topic is attenuated by the fact that they may not have considered the relationships between certain conceptual entities with the result that their knowledge becomes compartmentalised; they fail to see the wood for the trees. Knowledge mapping with its focus on relational thinking encourages learners to think about how concepts that are seen as isolated entities may fit in to the overall picture. Sometimes this activity is facile, but often it forces a search deep into deep into their knowledge about the entities to come up with a possible relationship. Failing this it may even encourage the learner to read more, or discuss the problem with a teacher or with another student (see Section 3.4.2.3). One of the students participating in the study reported in Chapter 10 stated that this was one his over-riding memories of the exercise.

Often the process is described as making tacit knowledge explicit; and indeed a great deal of the knowledge engineering literature is concerned with this goal using techniques such as conceptual sorting (Kellogg & Breen, 1987) and the repertory grid (Kelly, 1955) to elicit the rules and concepts that experts use. Psychological studies also show that a lot of practical knowledge is often difficult for the individual to articulate (Berry and Broadbent, 1984; Broadbent, Fitzgerald and Broadbent, 1986; see Section 1.2); it could be that by requiring explicit statements of knowledge in map form that learners are forced to reflect on the categories and structures that they use in certain situations. Knowledge mapping can therefore be seen to aid the acquisition of structural knowledge (Jonassen, Beisser and Yacci, 1993) which is explicit declarative (and therefore verbalisable) knowledge about conceptual structure.

Whilst the above might be true, it is also true that knowledge mapping will suffer from the cognitive indolence that prevents people from considering relationships in the first place (although perhaps not quite as much). Recall that one of the arguments in favour of knowledge mapping is that learners do not often normally consider relationships because it is computationally expensive to do so. The same will undoubtedly apply here. Given the task of thinking about a relationship between two concepts, it is conceivable that the learner might give up, leaving a plain unlabelled link, or default to some woolly term ("relates_to" is a popular hedge). Simply knowledge maps might focus attention on relationships, they may even facilitate it by bolstering working memory in the ways described above, but when it comes to a difficult concept there is no way of ensuring that the learner follows it through to the end.

Finally, there is another possible criticism of knowledge mapping that would see reducing everything to a simple structure of nodes and links as potentially pernicious: learners would be encouraged to see a complex world as nothing more than a set of simple relationships. Laurillard (1993) aims a similar criticism at hypertext stating that it destroys the structure of text. Her argument is that text as it appears in books is not only richly interconnected, but that these connections are often very subtle. By making explicit these subtle links she accuses hypertext of destroying the subtle structural nuances that appear in text. Is this also the case with knowledge mapping? Possibly so: typical propositions in knowledge maps use single or few words such as "is_a", "relates_to", "causes", whilst normal text can use longer phrases and express more subtle relationships. Any text can be turned into a concept map but something will undoubtedly be lost. This is, however, less of a problem for knowledge mapping as it is for hypertext. The *purpose* of concept maps is to be simpler than the text it represents, they represent not the text but a subset of the ideas that the text conveys, they are *abstractions*; this is the source of their power. When one presents information one does not merely want to give the learner abstractions, as any abstraction will only tell part of the story. Hence if Laurillard is correct in her assertion, it is a problem for hypertext, not for knowledge mapping.

3.4.2.3 Supporting communication

The final route by which knowledge mapping can impact understanding is an indirect one; but may be of great importance for a number of reasons. Techniques such as concept mapping and tools such as SemNet, Learning Tool and TextVision are not designed to be private strategies, they are designed as a whole new method of teaching and learning that lies alongside more traditional educational practice. Central to this role is the notion of formative evaluation. Formative evaluation is an attempt to evaluate learners with the intention of using the product of the evaluation to guide further intervention; it is contrasted with summative evaluation which is used only to grade students in some manner. One of the great problems with any type of effective formative evaluation is that it is very difficult to elicit from the students the specific sort of remediation that they might need; we saw in Chapter 1 that superficial behavioural errors are often the result of deeply entrenched underlying misconceptions and that identifying these is often not easy. Whilst not a panacea, knowledge mapping can often be an effective method of understanding the way that a learner comprehends a topic. The reasons for this are the reasons that knowledge mapping may be of use to the individual: they are abstract, focusing on conceptual relationships; and they make apparent relationships in a reasonably explicit way. Communication, however, places additional demands on a knowledge map. If maps are for personal use only then, as long as they are consistent, the learner can use their own idiosyncratic representation: colours, shapes, symbols can be used to stand for a wide range of attributes and properties. When one of the goals is communication then it is vital that some form of common syntax or semantics is agreed upon in advance. In Novak and Gowin's concept mapping, the well-regulated syntax serves not only to guide the learner to focus on certain types of relationships, it also enables maps to be shared between different individuals: maps become public and anyone be they student or instructor can offer advice, constructive criticism and feedback.

In many ways this shared function of knowledge maps may be their most powerful role in aiding understanding, so long as the educational context is structured to optimise their use, and the maps are structured to optimise communication.

3.4.3 Other factors

Finally, it should be mentioned that there have been claims that hint at the relationship between the structure of information in a concept map and the structure of knowledge in the learner's memory. Whilst no-one has gone so far as to claim that this similarity has any relevance for learning—as some have claimed for hypertext (see Section 2.4.2)—there is a temptation to consider that it may have. As for hypertext any putative similarities between the structure of knowledge in memory and the structure of a knowledge map are of no real educational benefit. We may see a knowledge map as having something to do with the way that the learner understands the domain, but we should steer clear of any beliefs of isomorphism. Knowledge mapping is a skill whereby the learner translates their ideas into graphical format, just like essay writing is skill that translates knowledge into text. There may be differences between essays and knowledge maps in the degrees of freedom of the representation, but ultimately they involve similar constraints in construction.

3.4.4 When concept mapping may not be effective

So far there are a number of positive claims relating to concept mapping but there are also conditions under, which it is claimed concept mapping may not be effective. Fisher (1992) argues that concept mapping is useful primarily for certain types of declarative knowledge (or the type of declarative knowledge known as structural knowledge); it is not so useful for aiding the acquisition of procedural knowledge, or declarative knowledge that is conditional.

This is not a universally held belief in the knowledge mapping literature, Novak (1990) argues that concept mapping can be useful for the tuning of procedural knowledge. He states that concept mapping has been used successfully for increasing the performance in the game of basketball (Novak & Gowin, 1984). Indeed, contradicting Fisher, Novak states that he sees no reason for having procedural and declarative knowledge as distinct epistemological entities. Whether Novak's theoretical stance is correct (there is mounting psychological evidence to suggest that it is not—see Section 1.3.4), it seems entirely possible that knowledge mapping may be used to aid the development of procedural skills. Procedural knowledge is used when the contents of working memory contains information that matches to the heads of production rules, on a very familiar overlearned problem it is likely that environmental conditions will match directly to a particular production, causing behaviour that is automatic. However, many other problems may require some degree of interpretation before procedural knowledge can be used, which can require some form of declarative knowledge. This will be particularly evident when parts of the problems are poorly defined, or when the individual is non-expert. Expert chess players almost certainly use a lot of procedural knowledge during the course of a game, but because no two games will ever be quite the same it requires structured declarative knowledge to interpret the moves and develop an effective strategy. Il we can develop more effective declarative knowledge structures, then it is likely that we will increase our performance. Recall the research by Cooper and Sweller (1987; see Section 1.2.1) indicating that categorisation of physics problems (and knowledge mapping is in some ways a categorisation task) can aid physics problem solving—a procedural type of activity.

The real limitation on the effectiveness of knowledge mapping is the way that it is used. As I indicated above, there is no guarantee that the learner will really explore their ideas; there is the distinct possibility that knowledge mapping is no more than a direct translation of what learners already know into few ovals and lines on a sheet of paper.

Learners need to be encouraged to think and reflect, and the use of computer-based knowledge mapping tools might provide a tantalising method of attaining this.

3.4.5 Evidence for the effectiveness of knowledge mapping

There is a fair amount of evidence for the effectiveness of knowledge mapping, although little of it tries to tease apart the potential varibles listed above and other variables that may be of importance such as the feeling that knowledge mapping is some 'new' piece of learning technology and potentially motivating effects that this might have (Hawthorne effect). Some of the variables are very difficult to control for, particularly in naturalistic environments, and since some of the research is conducted by educators, why should they bother *why* it is effective so long as it *is* effective (providing it is not a manifestation of the Hawthorn effect). Jedege, Alaiyemola and Okebukola (1990) found that concept mapping had a marked increase on biology aptitude tests over standard expository lectures; Mitchell and Taylor (1991) showed that it could increase comprehension from text when compared to subjects not using the technique; and Beissner (1992) showed that concept mapping had a positive effect on problem solving exercises when compared to learners left to their own devices.

The reason that concept mapping seems to have an effect where other study techniques fail (see Section 1.5) is that it simply gets learners to focus their attention on aspects of the learning materials that they might otherwise not consider so deeply. All knowledge mapping asks of a learner is to think of a suitable way in which concept 1 relates to concept 2. Anyone with a rudimentary knowledge of what concept 1 and concept 2 are could hazard a guess, or failing that go and look up the answer in a text book or ask someone else. The important thing is that the question was asked and the learner spent some time trying to answer it. Of course, this is not the only feature of knowledge mapping (see above), nor is it a trivial act to think of relationships, indeed this is the point, but the fact that the learner knows what to do when asked such a question is why knowledge mapping has some effect when other strategies have little effect.

3.5 COMPUTER-BASED KNOWLEDGE MAPPING TOOLS

Concept mapping, in the Novak-Ausubel meaning of the term is something rather specific; having a certain grammar that learners are instructed to accord with. None of the tools that are discussed in the next section accord with Novak's grammar, and therefore there is debate as whether they should be called concept mapping tools at all. SemNet is termed a semantic networking tool, Learning tool is termed and ideas processor and Knot is termed a knowledge organisation tool. However since all of these tools aid learning by requiring the construction of node-link representations, they can, I believe, be discussed alongside each other.

3.5.1 SemNet

SemNet (Fisher, 1992) is perhaps the most well-known of the knowledge mapping tools, and incorporates a number of features and constraints that are designed to encourage the learner to engage in effective learning activities. Fisher refers to SemNet as a semantic networking tool rather then a concept mapping tool in the strict Novak sense of the phrase, and it does differ in a number of ways from the Novak-Ausubel model. For example, in SemNet learners construct networks, rather than hierarchical tree structures, there being no difference between hierarchical and cross links. Concepts are of a single type, represented by an ellipse; without the type-token distinction of concept maps[2]. Other than this SemNet contains a number of attributes that transcend the limitations of paper to support the learner in the creation of concept maps.

The default setting of SemNet displays instances which are node-link-node triples. The view of these instances is limited to the central concept and its immediate neighbours; resizing the window has no effect on the number of nodes that you see at any one point. The developers argue that this is in order to focus the learner's attention on the relationships that a single concept has with its neighbours, preventing the learner becoming overwhelmed by the mass of nodes that may occur on other types of concept mapping tool. In the default mode learners can browse the network by clicking on peripheral concepts, causing this to become the central concept with its neighbours shown. In addition to this default setting there are other views of the map that list the concepts alphabetically, by creation date, by their degree of connectivity and so on. there is therefore a plethora of different representation of the same information. See Figure 3.2 for an example.

Unlike the other tools discussed in this section, SemNet does not permit unlinked nodes to be viewed in the default setting; the only way that they can be viewed is by linking the node to another node thereby creating an instance. SemNet thus places great emphasis on the process of linking, actively encouraging the user to link node (and therefore concepts) together. When a link is created SemNet prompts the user to name the relationship between the two concepts; link can be symmetrical or asymmetrical: symmetrical links

---

[2] Interestingly the avoidance of representing type-token nodes also makes SemNet different from Quillian's original model of semantic networks on which SemNet is supposedly based.

have the same relation name in either direction, whereas asymmetrical relations must be given different names for both directions.

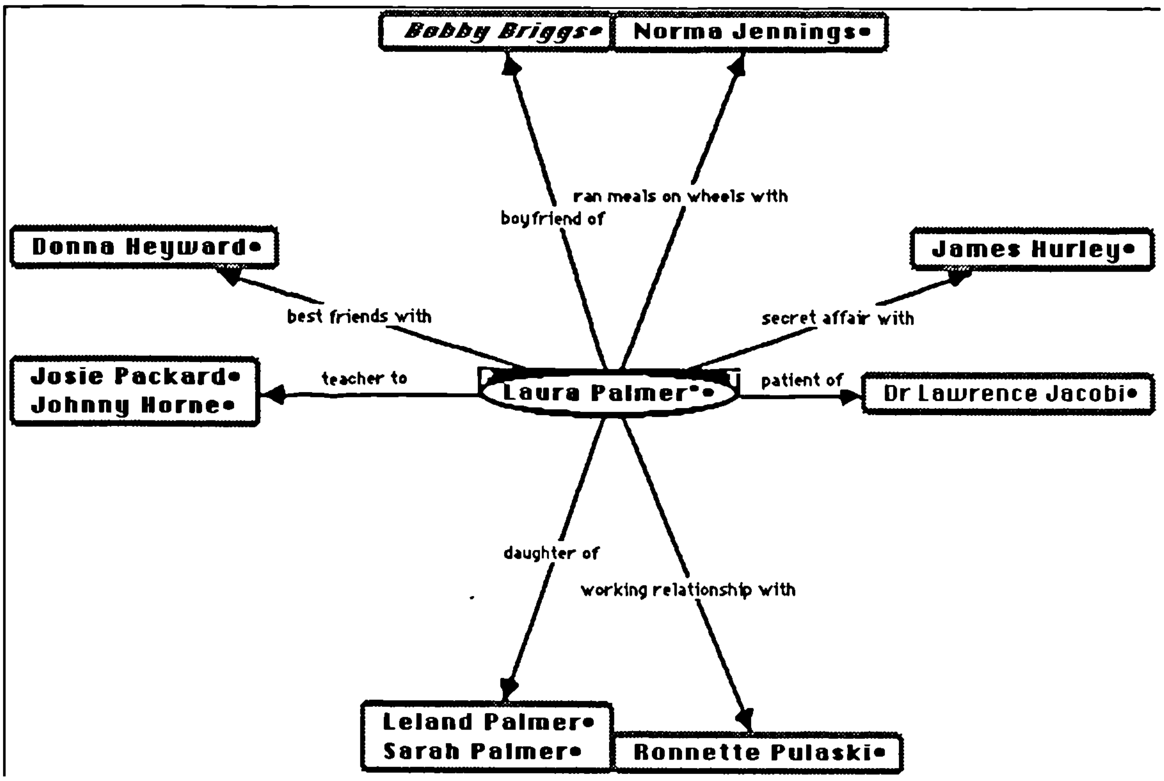


Figure 3.2 An example of a SemNet network relating to the "Twin Peaks" television series. Note the central concept: "Laura Palmer", contains both text (the 'T') and graphics (the 'P').

For example if a node "Canary" is linked to a node "Bird" with the asymmetrical link "is_a", then SemNet will not allow the instance to be created unless the user provides a name in the opposite direction, e.g. "instance_of". It is claimed that this facility forces learners to think bi-directionally and consider that asymmetrical relations must necessarily work two ways. Whether this has any real educational value or is simply a result of the way that SemNet's default browsing mode operates is uncertain. It could be argued that this facility may actually impede a learner who is trying to represent some information by continually requiring them to think about bi-directionality rather than allowing them to proceed with the task in hand.

SemNet allows text and graphics to be inserted into nodes, but the amount of text is limited to a few lines. Links can also contain text and graphics with similar limitations as for nodes. The implication here is that SemNet is not really designed to support annotations, rather it is designed as a sophisticated tool for constructing and manipulating information at the conceptual level, with text being supported only for the purpose of elaborating the concepts.

SemNet also provides facilities for the purposes of self-testing; for example the names of nodes and relationships can be hidden so that the learner has to work out what a concept or relation is by virtue of the elements that surround it.

In sum, SemNet is a very interventionist tool, it is not so much designed to *support* the process of learning, rather it cajoles and coerces the learner into producing a well specified map. This may be no bad thing. I outlined above that one of the main weaknesses of paper-based knowledge mapping is that there is no requirement that learners truly think about relationships; SemNet with its emphasis on getting the learner to link nodes and name links may actually encourage reflection on conceptual relationships. The real problem with this approach is that it is indiscriminate: sometimes forcing reflection of this sort may be of real educational benefit, at other times it might get in the way of potentially useful activities such as brainstorming a possibility that Fisher recognised in later papers (Fisher, 1992). Perhaps a way around the problem is for the system to adopt the principle of cognitive modes. There could be a 'brainstorming mode' which allows learners to dump unspecified nodes and links, and another mode—that the system may force upon the learner, which required the names of links to be specified as above.

3.5.2 Learning Tool - an "Ideas Processor"

Learning tool (Kozma and van Roekel, 1986) is a concept mapping tool that differs in a number of key ways to SemNet, which reflect its different intended purpose. Learning Tool is an 'ideas processor' which means that it is designed to support the creation of notes and the organisation and structuring of knowledge. Unlike SemNet, Learning Tool supports text to a much higher degree, also unlike learning tool the portion of the network that the learner can view is limited only by the size of his or her computer screen (see Figure 3.3 for an example of a Learning Tool map). The difference between Learning Tool and SemNet do not stop there; concept nodes can be created and viewed in the default setting irrespective of whether they have been linked together, Learning Tool also imposes no constraints as to the directionality of relation names for asymmetric links. Again unlike SemNet, links can only be created between nodes; they cannot be created independently.

One constraint built in to Learning Tool is that only three types of relation names are permitted. Links do not need to be named, but if the learner wishes to do this then they may assign different names to different thicknesses of link, and only thin, medium and thick links are given.

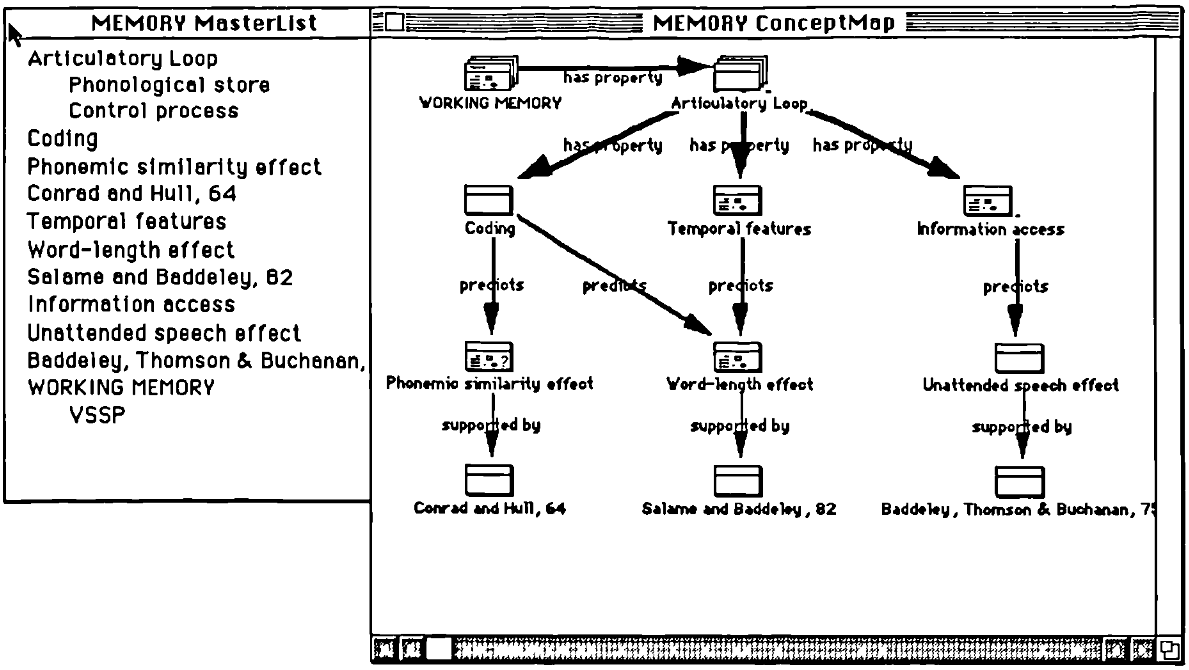


Figure 3.3 Learning tool concept map and masterlist windows

Whether this is a foible of the programming or a constraint that is perceived to have educational value is unclear. Kozma and Van Roekel do not refer to this as a feature, however given that later versions did not have this feature, it can probably be assumed that it was a kludge. The argument could be made that by restricting the number of available links the tool requires learners to be economical with the sorts of relations that they use: this may encourage them to consider the relations more closely, rather than generating a great deal of *ad hoc* relation names. However if this is the case it seems that three names is rather too few even for simple examples.

Learning Tool also permits embedding, where maps are nested within higher-level concepts. This facility is useful as it can be used to reduce clutter: enabling each map to contain only the bare essentials, with more detail available at lower levels if required. There is an obvious tension here: the more cluttered a concept map becomes, the more difficult it becomes to read; on the other hand, placing concepts elsewhere can have drawbacks since these it removes them from sight.

Learning Tool therefore places fewer demands on the learner than does SemNet, it does not jump in requesting names for links every time a node or link is created; it simply lets the learner get on with it. In some respects this could be seen as negative feature, it may allow the learner too much freedom to produce poorly specified maps; on the other hand, SemNet may be too keen to jump in and request names that the learner may not be prepared to give. Fisher recognises this point stating that: "...assigning names to relations is not a 'natural cognitive act' — that is, not a natural part of spontaneous thought processes." (1992, p.73). As I shall discuss later, there are many features of knowledge mapping tools that may be desirable under some circumstances, and less desirable, or even harmful under others.

3.5.3 KNOT

KNOT (Dearholt and Schvaneveldt, 1990) stands for KNowledge Organisation Tool, and can be used in a number of ways. Like SemNet and Learning Tool it can be used as a simple interface tool allowing the construction of graphical representations of information. Unlike traditional concept mapping tools it can also generate maps itself based on information provided by the learner. As a simple concept mapping tool KNOT is limited; representations are restricted to the node-link level as no text can be placed in the nodes. Nodes can be named by the user, but links cannot, although the directionality of the links can be specified.

What makes KNOT interesting is its ability to generate networks based on measurements of semantic relatedness provided by the user. The system is given a list of concepts by the learner or by an instructor and the system requests the learner to rate pairs of concepts as to how similar they are using a nine-point scale. The system then generates a network based on these judgements which - depending on the algorithm used, and there are several - clusters closely related concepts and links these together. Figure 3.4 below shows a sample network using concepts concerned with computer assisted learning which were rated by myself and assembled by KNOT using a pathfinder algorithm. A cursory glance at the network reveals that much of it makes sense, intelligent tutoring being clustered with formal (knowledge), tutorial dialogue and expert systems; with hypertext being placed with declarative, informal and exploration.

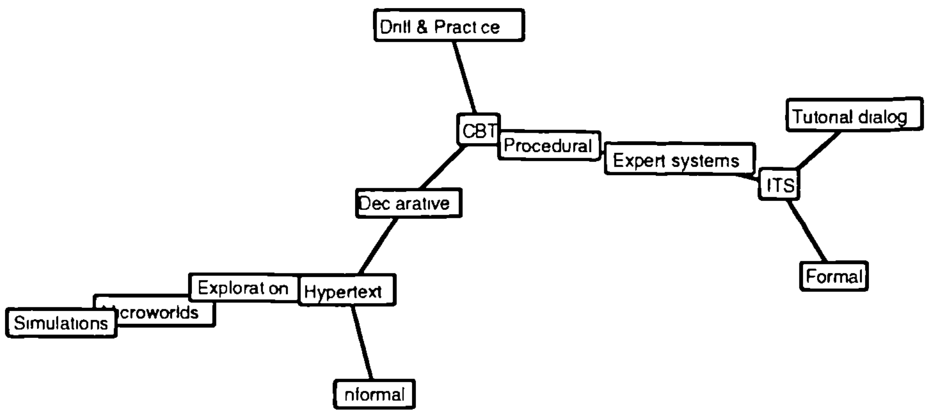


Figure 3.4 An example Knot network based on approaches to educational computing.

Since the networks produced by KNOT do not contained typed links, KNOT can only be used for organising information, providing a more explicit structure would require link labels to specify the relationships. Unlike Learning Tool and perhaps SemNet, KNOT is not designed to support learning, 'on the fly', rather it is designed to support reflective processes after some time spent learning material. In fact although it deals in concepts and conceptual relationships, KNOT really is a different species of animal to Learning Tool and SemNet. Networks that are constructed tend to act as a snapshot of the learners understanding at any one point rather than reusable, recursive structures that develop and grow.

3.5.4 TextVision 3D

TextVision 3D is a concept mapping tool developed by Piet Kommers (see Heeren and Kommers, 1991) as a method for 'visualising knowledge'. In accordance with other developers of concept mapping tools, the rationale for the development of TextVision 3D is based on constructivist premises: that learning from text is dependent upon the extent to which learners can link new information to old; and, that what the learner understands is not determined simply by the text, but by what they already know. In fulfilment of these goals TextVision allows concepts to be manipulated and linked as per standard concept mappers, it also contains some interesting features that allows relationships between concepts to be visualised, more of which later. Perhaps the most immediate difference between TextVision and the other tools discussed here is that the version tested allowed objects to be moved in a simulated three dimensional space.

Like Learning Tool, and unlike SemNet, TextVision has a direct manipulation interface: concepts, represented by circles, can be dragged around the screen by the mouse and positioned as the learner sees fit; links are made by dragging between a pair of concepts and so on. Again like Learning Tool, the nodes in TextVision can contain practically unlimited textual information, accessed by double clicking over the appropriate node. In version 1 at least, names could not be directly assigned to links. Directionality of the links is not immediately available from the display. Earlier versions of TextVision, which did not have the three dimensional representation, used the overlap of the links on the nodes to indicate this, but this was abandoned for the version discussed here, presumably due to the fact that overlap is used as a further cue to aid in the perception of three dimensional shape. This is curious since directionality is a factor in the network, as it is used in computing some of the functions discussed later.

Figure 3.5 shows the basic layout of the TextVision window. Note that the maps is suspended above a grid that represents depth by perspective. The relative position of the nodes in the virtual third dimension is shown in two ways: by the relative size of the nodes, smaller nodes are further away than the larger ones; and by 'shadows' of the nodes on the grid. Nodes are moved forward and backwards by dragging the shadows with the mouse.

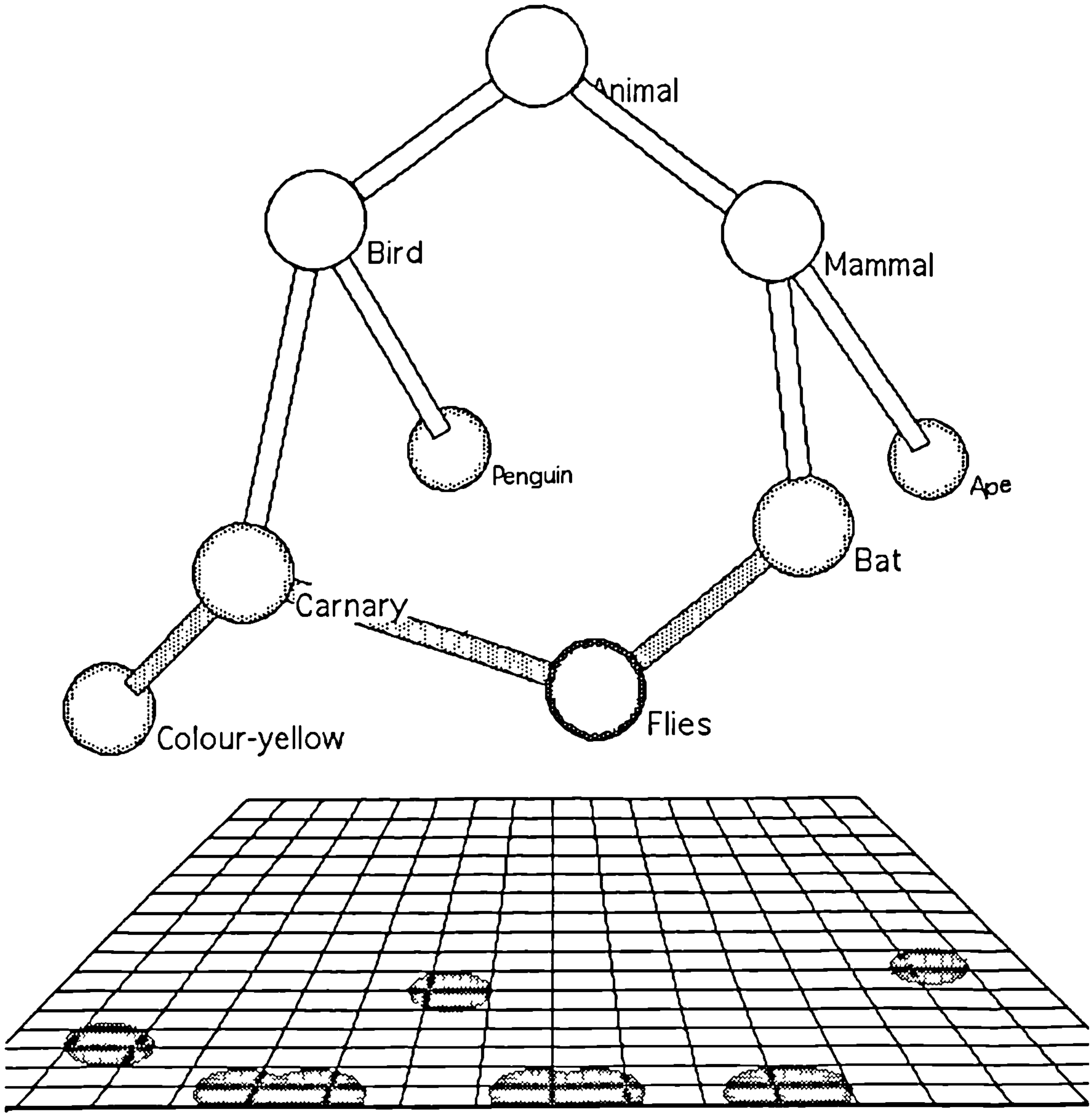


Figure 3.5 An example screen from TextVision 3D, showing indegree similarity.

Perhaps the most important feature of TextVision, and that which sets it apart from its siblings in the concept mapping family is that the system computes the degree of centrality of a concept. A concept's centrality can be calculated by two means: by virtue of the importance of the relations that go in to it, *indegree* similarity; and by virtue of the importance of the relations that go from it, *outdegree* similarity. The indegree centrality of a concept is a function of the degree to which that concept is indicated by other important concepts. The metaphor here is with the notion that the importance of a publication is a joint function both of the number of other publications which cite it, and the importance of those citing publications. Indegree Centrality is shown in Figure 3.5 note that the concept 'Flies' is the most central (indicated by the darkness of the node) because it had input from both 'Canary' and 'Bat', which themselves are quite central, having input from 'Bird' and 'Mammal' respectively. Outdegree centrality is derived from the degree to which a particular concept is used in explaining other concepts in the network. Concepts have high outdegree centrality if they are used to explain other terms within the network. In earlier versions centrality was represented by the size of the node: the larger the size the more central the node. In the version discussed here, size is used as a depth cue, so instead colour is used: central concepts are coloured red, peripheral concepts are coloured violet, and intermediate concepts use the intermediate spectral colours.

TextVision is again different from the other concept mapping tools described here. Like Learning Tool it affords direct manipulation of elements; like SemNet it offers some representation of conceptual centrality and degree of connectedness; like Knot it does not allow names or types to be assigned to links. In reference to this last point it is likely that in TextVision all links are supposed to mean the same thing, that is 'depends upon', or 'relates to'. Computations of centrality rely upon consistent link semantics. If the links could be ascribed different meanings then calculating centrality would become increasingly complex as the number of link types increased; offering the option for use definable links may well result in the process of computation becoming intractable. This is unfortunate as it will often be vital that the relationships be specified in order for centrality to indicate anything meaningful. Taking the citation metaphor a stage further, it may well be possible to establish a baseline of the importance of a document by enumerating the number of citation that it has, but importance is a rather nebulous and often meaningless construct: a paper may be cited by many other publications, but this may be in order to criticise the cited paper, thus the centrality of the paper may mean something different than what it first seems.

The representation of the network causes some problems. Whilst the extra dimension may be a useful feature, and certainly differentiates it from other mapping tools, it is a shame that so much has had to be compromised in order to represent it. The loss of an obvious way of determining link directionality is a problem since this is often an important factor when using concept maps: ideally the map should make as much information available to the user as possible. The use of colour to represent centrality is, perhaps, less of a problem, but it is certainly less immediate than size, particularly when the colours are contiguous.

3.5.5 Theories embodied in the tools

It should be clear that there are a number of similarities and differences among the above systems. All are similar in the sense that they allow ideas to be represented as nodes, and allow these to be linked together to add organisation and structure to knowledge.

Tool	Property	Potential learning outcome
SemNet	Restricts the amount of text that the learner puts in.	+ Forces the learner to express their ideas graphically rather than textually. - Some information may need more text that SemNet allows
	Bi-directional links must be names in both directions	+ Makes learners think about relationships between concepts. - This may be irrelevant or unhelpful to a learner.
	In default view nodes must be linked with relation name in order to be seen	+ Forces learners to create a net, consider all relationships and produces structural relationships. - Learner may create net too soon. Forcing linking does not necessarily guarantee that this meaningful.
	Only central concept and immediate neighbours can be seen in default view.	+ Forces learners to focus upon a single concept rather than being distracted by others. - May preclude learner getting overview of the topic.
Learning Tool	Amount of text practically unlimited.	+ Allows learners to make notes, summarise material, going from unstructured representation to more structured graphical representation. - May allow learners too much leeway in the way they represent information, learners may use text instead of concepts.
	No requirement to link or to provide names	+ Allows progressive formalisation of maps using spatial clustering etc. - Learners may get entrenched in text-based or unstructured network.
	All the map can be seem at once – screen size permitting.	+ Allows learners to get an overview of the material. - Possibility that there may be too much on the screen, may not focus the learner's attention.
	Maps can be nested within concepts	+ Removes clutter from screen, gives tidier representations. - Is likely to hide important information which may go unconsidered.
Knot	System generates map.	+ Output may allow learner to reflect upon the similarity criteria that they used. - Representation may be irrelevant, learners may generate as good or better map manually (*cf* conceptual sorting).
	Pairwise comparisons used	+ System deals with macrostructure, learners only focuses on local relationships. - May need more than one criterion / more specific criteria.
	No link names permitted	? Possibly beyond the scope of KNOT which is designed to organise rather than structure knowledge. - No ability to qualify or quantify relationships.
TextVision	No link names permitted	? Like Knot, this may be beyond the scope of the system. Links are all supposed to mean simply relates to, difficulties in computation if links have different meanings.
	System computes centrality based on in and outdegree	+ May give learners some idea of the extent to which concepts are derived from or cited by other concepts. - Little ability to indicate what centrality means, other that in mere syntactic terms.

Table 3.1 A comparison of the essential features of the tools

Additionally all the representations are content free and therefore makes as few assumptions as to the learners goals as hypertext does — in many ways working with concept maps can be seen as authoring hypertext.

The tools above differ in a number of ways: the degree that they support text, the portion of the map that the learner can see at one point, whether they allow typed relations, how many types can be permitted, the extent to which the tool can compute various functions for the learner and so on. These differences arise partly from the different theoretical orientations that are embodied in the tool, which are often related to the specific task that the tool is designed to support. Table 3.1 outlines the main attributes peculiar to each system, with possible outcomes for the learning process. This scheme follows Carroll, Singley and Rosson's (1991) assertion that all educational systems embody theories of learning and education, theories which may often be tacit and of little use. The purpose of this tentative claims analysis is to outline how some of the properties of such tools can map on to some of the psychological theories of learning referred to above.

3.5.6 Discussion

Trying to pit the knowledge mapping tools above against one another in order to come up with a winner appears to be a fruitless task; moreover, it is also worthless to try and propose some hybrid system that has the best features of them all. Quite simply, the effectiveness of a knowledge mapping tool is going to be dependent on a large number of factors such as how much domain knowledge the learner has, their experience with knowledge mapping techniques and so on. Heeren and Kommers (1991) looked at the match between the expressiveness that learners demand (assessed using paper based maps) against that offered by various knowledge mapping packages (Learning Tool, SemNet and TextVision 2D). They concluded that learners should be offered as much expressiveness as possible by being provided with libraries of node and link names and types. However, Heeren and Kommers' subjects had been taught knowledge mapping techniques according to Mirande's (1984) technique of *schematising* which emphasises that learners should adopt their own relation and node types, rather than prescribing fixed types as Novak and Gowin (1984) do. It is likely that subjects taught according to Novak and Gowin's method (see Section 3.2) would find different problems with the tools. This is by no means a criticism of Heeren and Kommers' research; the authors themselves recognise this point. Rather the purpose is to emphasise that it is impossible to specify what a knowledge mapper should offer independent of the demands of the learner, which are likely to stem from a number of factors. An expressive tool in the hands of someone unfamiliar to concept mapping may result in a proliferation of node and link types that make communication difficult, this point crops up again in Studies

2,3,4 and 5, and therefore I shall make no more of it here (see Chapter 10 for a review of these demands).

Barring certain design problems (such as Learning Tool's restriction to only three link names, but see Section 3.5.2) the tools described above are, in many ways, designed to fulfil different functions and highlight different aspects of the process of learning. Perhaps the best form of discussion, therefore, would be to outline where the strengths and weaknesses of the systems lie.

SemNet's great strength is in the way that it restricts what learners may do spontaneously, trying to direct them into performing activities that support the process of meaningful learning (requiring them to name links bi-directionally and so on). However, there is no guarantee that merely forcing learners to provide names in both directions is going to encourage them to produce meaningful names and think about the domain relationships more deeply. Manipulating objects in SemNet is not the easiest of processes, and it would be cumbersome for a learner to use whilst their knowledge about the domain was still undergoing rapid development. In these circumstances Learning Tool or TextVision would probably be more appropriate since they both support note-taking, organisation of text and concepts. Both tools may be useful in supporting brainstorming processes, where ideas are rapidly posted, arranged and gradually refined. The networks constructed in both these systems can be structured and re-structured easily with the minimum of effort. Learning Tool's a limitation it is that it may be too flexible, allowing learning to do just what they want in commendable in many ways, but in other ways it may not be the most efficient way to achieve effective meaningful learning. TextVision has a similar lack of implicit structure, additionally the inability to specify link names may be an encumbrance to learners trying to organise their ideas.

When learners have some degree of domain understanding, Knot may be of use to help learners elicit the constructs that they have about the domain of study. By comparing these to an expert model the learner may reflect upon their understanding of the conceptual relationships and under the guidance of a tutor, explore their understanding and misconceptions. Having a tutor present during these explorations is vital if the learner is to understand the difference between their network and the expert net. Consider the example shown in Figure 3.6 (below). Both networks are constructed by rating a bunch of statistical concepts using Knot; the network on the left is an expert net, rated by a lecturer in statistical methods; the network on the right was constructed by a novice who had only a working knowledge of statistical procedures.

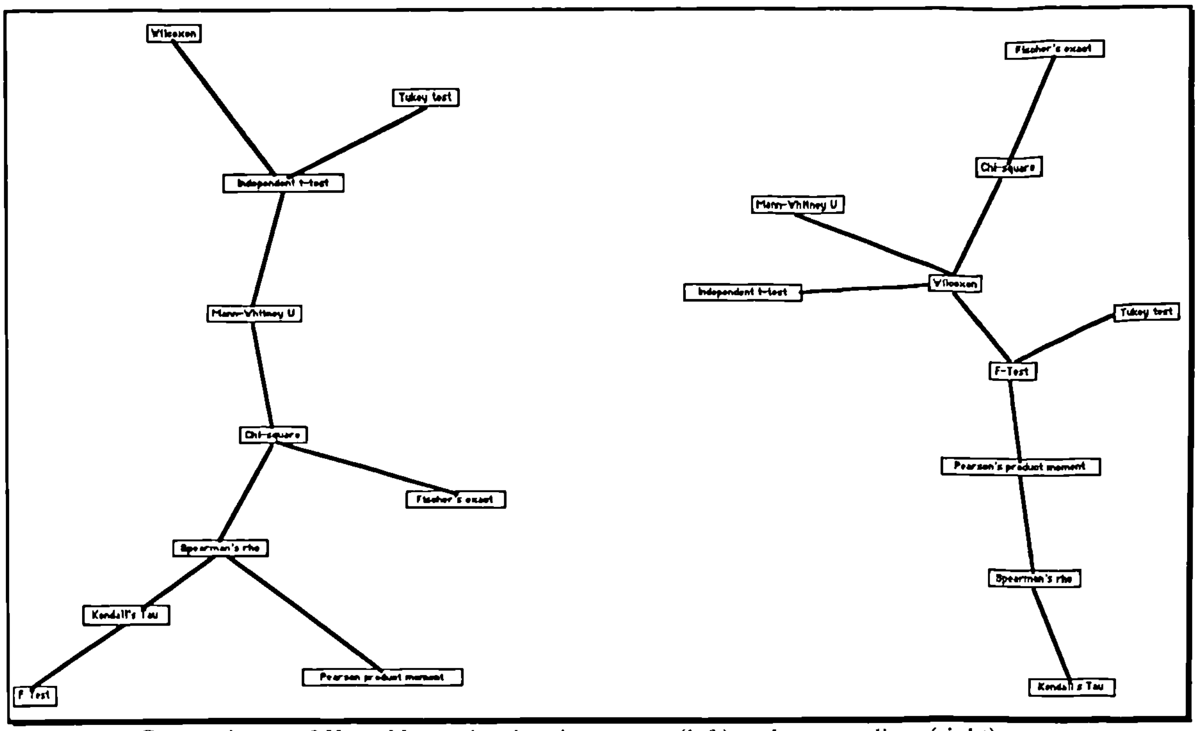


Figure 3.6 Comparisons of Knot Networks showing expert (left) and intermediate (right) understanding of statistical tests[3].

A notable difference between these two networks is that the novice rated the F-Test as being similar to a Tukey test; whereas the expert rated the F-test as being similar to Kendel's Tau. Discussions with the two participants revealed that the expert rated the F-test in this way because it was a test of variance, whereas the novice rated it as close to the Tukey Test because it is often carried out as a post-hoc. This is consistent with expertise research where experts categorize concepts based on high level categories and underlying principles, and novices tend to categorize by function (see Chi, Feltovich and Glaser, 1979).

This example indicates the role of knowledge mapping as a way of communicating the learner's understanding to others. The novice map above, could be used by an instructor as the focus for the discussion of statistical concepts, and the relationship between .hese and specific tests. In some senses there is some validity to Fisher's point that knowledge maps offer the instructor a unique insight into the workings of the student's mind.

3.6 CONCLUSIONS

Chapter 2 argued that many of the approaches computer-assisted learning that are conventionally used for non-procedural domains tend not to engage the learner in the

---

[3] Note that the maps shown in Figure 3.6 are reconstructions, the original Knot maps being lost.

process of directed reflection: that is they fail to get the learner thinking about the structure of the concepts that they are being presented with. Furthermore, hypertext as a popular computer-based medium compounds these problems by eradicating the various structural cues that learners make use of when using conventional educational media such as lecture notes and text-books.

This chapter discussed a potentially useful way of supporting directed reflection. I have argued that knowledge mapping may be of use primarily because it focuses learner's attention on specific sorts of relationships that may otherwise go unconsidered, learners can reflect upon their conception of the domain and share the maps with other who may offer useful advice and feedback. Developing useful computer-based knowledge mapping tools can be of use because to some extent the computer can be used to regulate the interaction more closely, to encourage learners to think about relation names and so forth (as SemNet does), and can also allow the learner to view the developing map in interesting and insightful ways.

The rest of this thesis explores the role that knowledge mapping techniques might play in supporting learning.

4

Learning and access strategies in hypertext

4.1 INTRODUCTION

There is a romantic view of hypertext that because it places control of the interaction in the hands of the learner: the learner is free to explore in accordance with their educational goals. There are, however, more negative views. Free to do what they want learners will either be captured by every interesting thing that they see, whether or not it is of any educational value to them; or will find the multiplicity of choices so overwhelming that they become unable to do anything meaningful. Twidale (1991) refers to these two extremes as dilettantism and cognitive agoraphobia. The purpose of this study was two fold: first to investigate the sorts of strategies that learners use when interacting with hypertext; and second, to investigate how they might use a computer-based knowledge mapping tool to help them to learn. The study is necessarily exploratory; there is precious little theory that might suggest in any detail what to expect learners to do under these conditions, although some indication of what to expect are given in Chapters 1 and 2. It was therefore decided to simply observe what happened and use the data to suggest possible improvements when problems became evident.

Of particular interest was the question of goal-directedness, since many of the experimental evaluations of hypertext systems require subjects either to access specific items of information (directed search), or to simply learn all the information contained in the system. Either way the task that the subjects have to perform is fairly clear cut. In real-world hypertext use, it is unlikely that the learner will be always be given some specific task to perform; they will often enter an interaction with some ideas as to what they are interesting in finding out about, but may not be able to find access it directly using the facilities provided. The task given in this study attempted to simulate a situation where a learner is told to find information in a system without being told exactly what to look for, a situation perhaps more like the tasks set for essays and projects.

4.2 THE HYPERTEXT SYSTEM

For the purposes of this study a simple hypertext system was created. Within this system the facilities that were provided fall fairly neatly into three categories: access facilities, navigation facilities and learning tools.

4.2.1 Access tools

Access tools, as the name implies, provide the learner with various ways of accessing information that exist within the hypertext system. There are many possible ways of accessing information, some relying on the book metaphor, others relying on more sophisticated procedures derived form database research such as word searches and the like. In this system the following access tools were implemented: contents screen, index, hypertext links, tours.

Contents facility: this consists of a list of topics structured into sub-topics so as to allow an overview of the way that the material in the system is structured. Each of the sub-topic names allows direct access to a screen or screens of relevant information by selecting the name of the topic with the mouse. The contents screen can be accessed from any other screen via a table of contents button (see Figure 4.1).

Index: the index is in some ways similar to the contents above in that it allows direct access to the information. It differs primarily in that the index consists of a list of key-words relating to the topics ordered alphabetically rather than by topic. Like the contents screen the index screen can be accessed from any other screen.

Hypertext links : these consist of links within the text designated by bold text and are cross reference links that lead to information related to the current topic on view (see Figure 4.2).

Guided tours: these allow the learner to follow material relating to a particular topic within the system in a linear fashion. Tours can be suspended if the learner wishes to browse for other information (for example using hypertext links) and returned to later, or ended part-way through. Tours can be taken either from the contents screen by selecting the 'Take Tour' button (see Figure 4.2), or they can be accessed via the information screens themselves when they are available. The tour buttons on the information screen are modal and have three modes: 'tour available' in which a bus icon is shown; no tour available, in which the tour button is greyed out; and an icon which shows that a tour is already in progress. Selecting the tour button when no tour has been selected provides the user with two options: to start the tour from the screen that they are currently viewing at and continuing to the end; or starting from the beginning of the tour. Selecting a tour button when the system is already in tour-mode allows the user to cancel the tour in order to minimise mode errors a dialog box asks them if they are sure that they wish to cancel the tour. If a user selects either the within-text, contents or index buttons whilst in a tour, then the tour is suspended until such a time as it is cancelled or re-joined. When a tour is suspended a 'Rejoin Tour' button appears in a prominent position on the screen, selecting this takes the user back to the last screen that they saw before the tour was suspended.

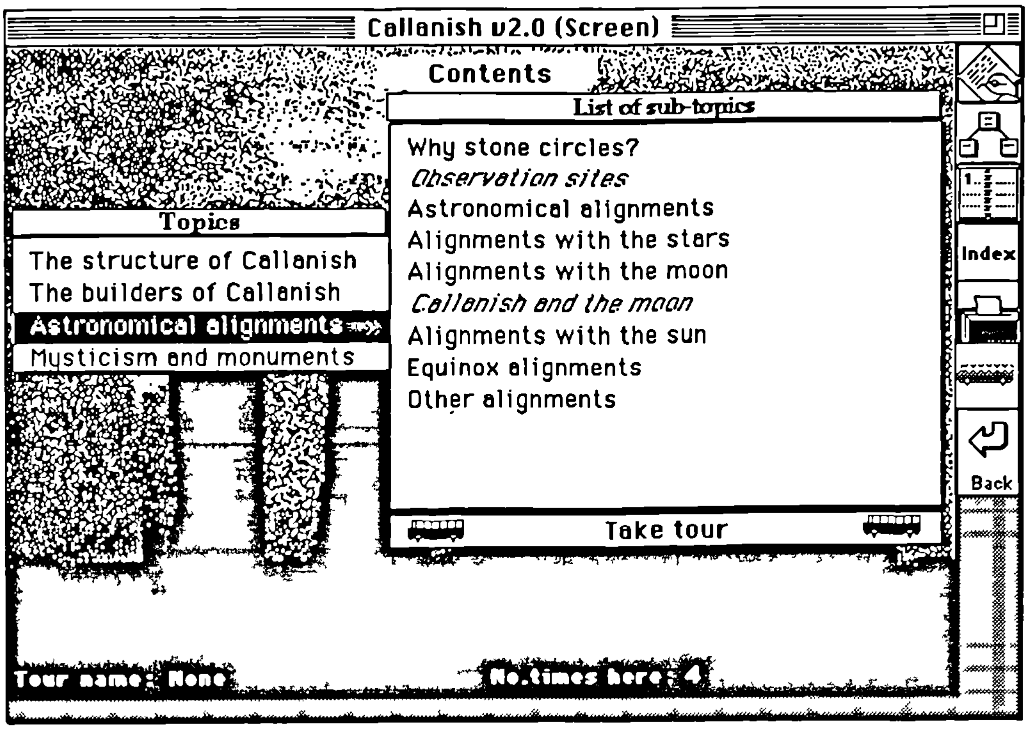


Figure 4.1 Table of contents screen from the 'Callanish' system, note the highlighted potion on the 'Topics' window indicating the topic selected, also note the italicised text indicating that the corresponding screen has been visited.

4.2.2 Navigation facilities

Although the term navigation is often used to refer to access tools, here I consider them as being facilities that are aimed primarily at aiding the learner to find their way around the document. Those implemented are listed below:

Book-marking facility: this allows the learner to mark off a screen of information in order to return to it later, this is available from all of the text screens (see Figure 4.2).

Footprinting facility: this shows the learner the parts of the system that they have seen via italicised text in the contents screen (see Figure 4.2).

Tour name indicator: this facility informs the learner when they are in a tour (and by default when they are not) and also gives the name of the current tour.

Screen record: this informs the learner whether the number of times that they have been to a screen aiding in the task of selecting appropriate information.

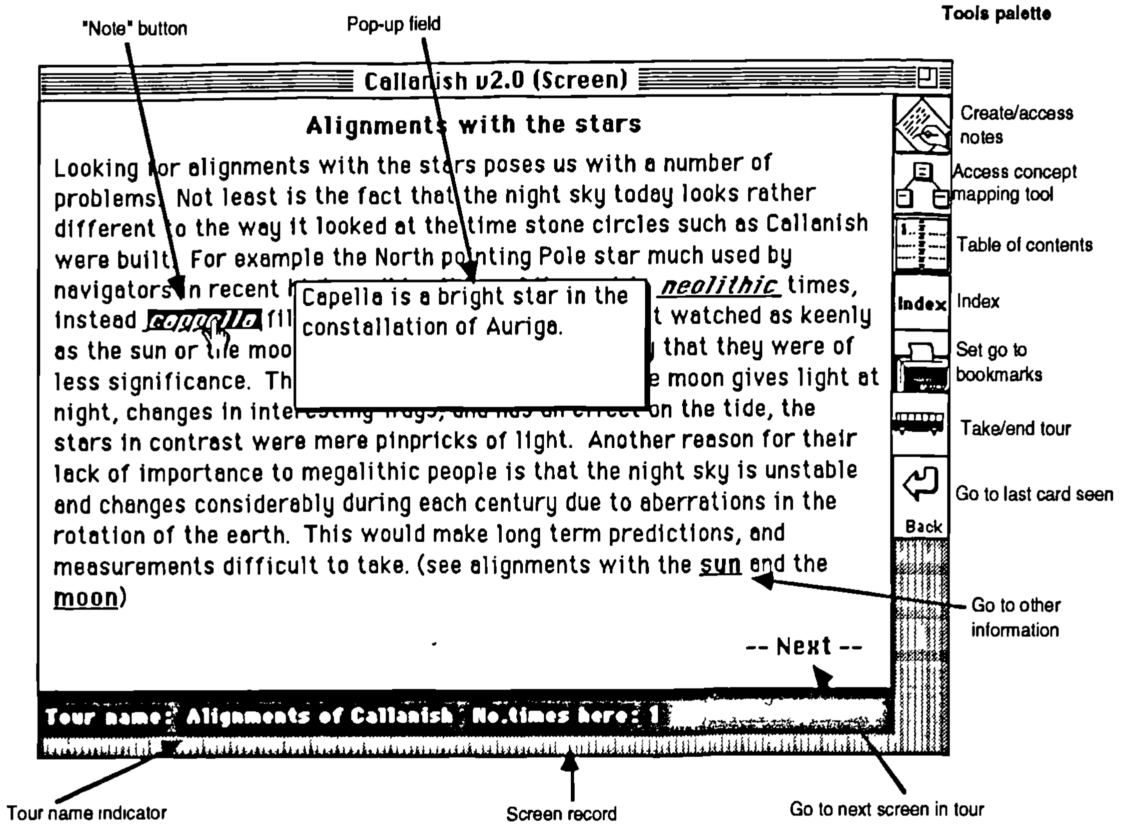


Figure 4.2 An example screen from the 'Callanish' system

4.2.3 The knowledge mapping tool

The knowledge mapping tool was developed for the purposes of the experiment using HyperCard. Like most tools of its kind (see section 3.5) it allowed the construction of a network in which nodes in the network denote for domain concepts, and links between them show the way that the concepts relate to each other in the particular domain of study. Nodes could be created in two ways: directly using the tool, by double-clicking the mouse on the knowledge map window; or by creating a note window from the hypertext system itself. Each time a note window is created a corresponding concept is created in the knowledge map window, although during this process the knowledge mapping tool remains hidden. Access to windows that have been closed is achieved by opening up the knowledge map window and double-clicking the mouse on the node with the appropriate name in the knowledge map; multiple note windows can be opened at the same time. Concept nodes can be linked together using typed or untyped links, the system prompting for a name after a link has been created. In addition to notes, any of the nodes can contain sub-maps: maps within maps, which can allow hierarchical structures to be created, thus avoiding the screen clutter which would be necessary if all the nodes were represented on the same level. Nodes containing sub-maps had a different appearance to those without (see Figure 4.3, below).

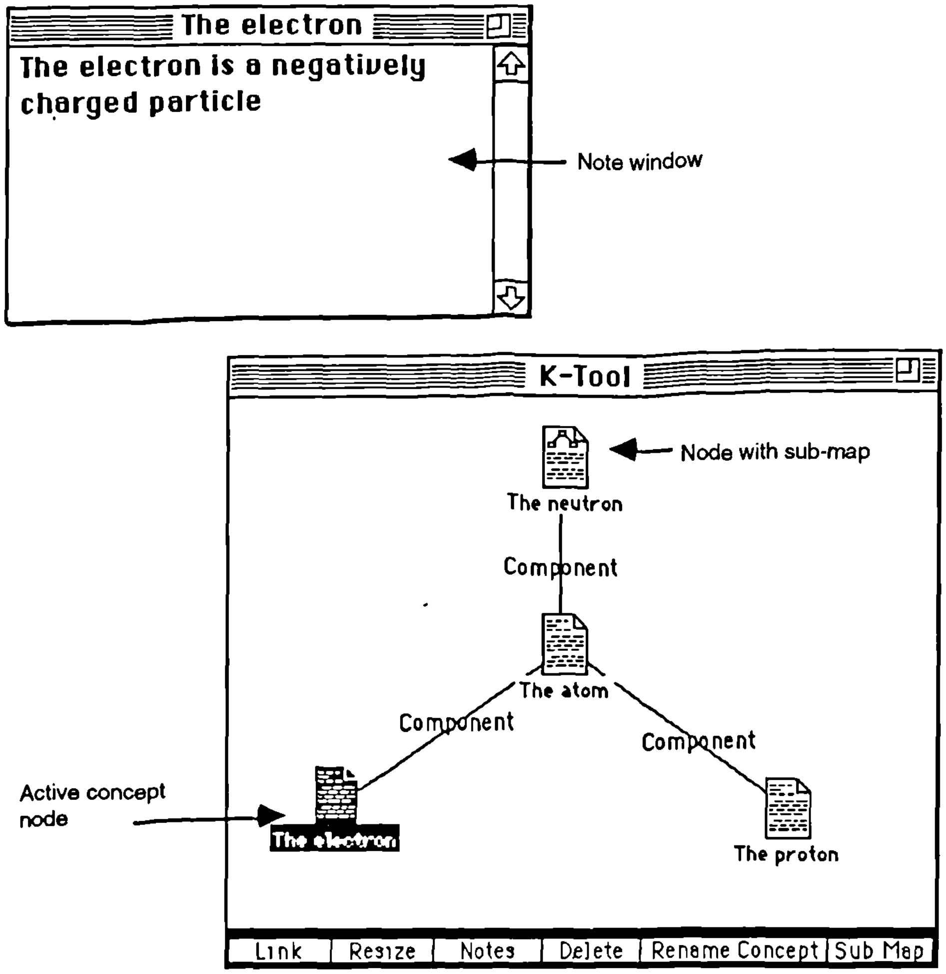


Figure 4.3 The knowledge mapping tool used in this experiment

Finally, all the nodes and links could be renamed and deleted as desired; deleting a concept node automatically deletes any notes or sub-maps contained within it.

The knowledge mapping tool and the hypertext system could be opened in different windows at the same time, providing the computer-screen was large enough to view both.

4.3 METHOD

4.3.1 Design

As has been mentioned the study was exploratory in nature and therefore only one condition was used.

4.3.2 Experimental procedure

As most subjects were unfamiliar with hypertext, knowledge mapping tools, and indeed the Macintosh interface, it was necessary to familiarise them with the various operations they would need to complete the experimental session. The experiment was therefore divided into two parts: a practice session, which introduced the subjects to the facilities and structure of the hypertext document and allowed them to practice on it; and the experimental session, which consisted of the subjects using the system to acquire information for a subsequent test. Table 4.1 summarises the two sessions.

Session	Phase	Activity
Practice session	Familiarisation	Presented with instructions and overview of system.
		Tutorial on hypertext and knowledge mapping tool.
		Questions
	Guided exploration	Practice using hypertext and knowledge mapping tool; similar to experimental session but with different material.
		Questions / problems
Experimental session	Instructions	Presented with instructions and study goal (verbal and textual).
	Learning session	Use of hypertext and knowledge mapping for learning.
		Five minute revision period (optional).
	Question session	Presentation of questions
		Write short summary of information learned
		Answer questionnaire

Table 4.1 Overview or experimental procedure.

4.3.2.1 Practice session

The practice session began with a tutorial. The tutorial consisted of written instructions on the various facilities provided in the HyperCard stack, together with tips on how to navigate around the hypertext (see Appendix 1 for the tutorial sheet). The tutorial was designed to encourage subjects to interact with the system as soon as possible, hence expository text was interspersed with relevant activities for them to engage in. The tutorial also dealt with the use of the knowledge mapping tool, and included a short introduction to knowledge mapping to give subjects an idea as to what the tool could be used for. During the tutorial, and through the experiment as a whole, an experimenter was on hand to answer any queries that they may have. Following on from the initial tutorial, subjects were given a short task similar to the one that they would perform in the experimental session. The task required them to find out some information relating to the structure of the atom, expressed both verbally and on a printed instruction sheet.

Subjects were required to try and use the knowledge mapping tool to make notes and also to create a simple knowledge map relating to the goal that they were given. It was stressed, however, that the task was only for practice and that they should not take more than 30 minutes to complete it. A short question session followed this in which the experimenter asked the subjects to describe the map that they constructed. They were then asked if they had any problems or questions before they entered the next phase of the experiment, after a short break for coffee.

4.3.2.2 Experimental session

The system used in the second session contained material relating to a historical monument, the Callanish stone circle. The subjects were required to learn about certain aspects of the stone circle using any means at their disposal. They were given a maximum of 60 minutes in which to complete this task, although they were allowed to finish whenever they felt that they had satisfied the task give to them. The task that they were given was not explicit: instead of asking the subjects to find specific pieces of information, or telling them to learn everything that the system contains, the task was defined in the form of the study goal:

> "How does the structure of Callanish relate to its hypothesised purposes, and why would these be important to its builders?"

This required the subjects to explore various high level relationships between pieces of information contained within the system, and was intended to simulate as closely as possible the sort of goals that learners may have if they were using the system to write an essay. They would need to formulate their own more specific goals in order to successfully complete the task.

As can be seen, although the study question provides some sort of goal for the interaction, it does not specify exactly what information is relevant, nor does it indicate the level of detail that the subjects need to acquire. The subjects would therefore need to regulate the interaction to find the relevant material without becoming bogged down in redundant information. The instructions for the task reminded subjects of the various facilities that were available to them, but they were told that it was up to them to use facilities they felt were useful to completing the task. If they felt that certain facilities were unhelpful they could choose not to use them.

At the end of the interaction subjects were first given a set of 10 questions varying from multiple choice to short answer questions which related to the material that was contained in the system; no notes were allowed for this part (see Appendix 1 for the questions). Following this subjects were asked to write a brief summary (no more that a page) on what they had learned about Callanish relating to the goal. Finally they were asked to complete a short questionnaire relating to the usefulness of the facilities and tools contained within the system. After this the session was complete.

4.3.3 Subjects

Five pairs of subjects took part in the experiment. All were students from the University of York, and were each paid ten pounds for their co-operation.

4.3.4 Measurements

4.3.4.1 Screen recordings

The use of screen recordings allows the possibility of an analysis of the interaction which is highly detailed. Unlike the use of logs which typically record only the screens that were visited, the length of time that they were open for and the sequence in which they were visited, screen recordings allow the interaction to be analysed at the level of the key stroke, or more appropriately the mouse click.

Another approach that has been used in the past to record interactions within the medium of HyperCard has been the method developed by MacLeod (Kornbrot & MacLeod, 1990). This approach records not only information relating to the screens that have been opened, but also information relating to the buttons that had been pressed to access the various screens of information. This was deemed inappropriate to this investigation as it would not capture many of the generative activities that the learners would perform in this task, for example: the evolution of notes, how the knowledge mapping tool was used and so on. A screen recording, although requiring more analysis to render the information meaningful, provides a much richer indication of what the subjects were doing as they used the hypertext and knowledge mapping tools.

4.3.4.2 Verbal protocols

Investigating the types of activities that learners utilised in the interaction, it was clear at the early stages of experimental design that merely recording the information at the level of the system would not be sufficiently rich to gain an insight into the types of activities that were being employed by the learner. Previous experiments have used gross measurements such as logs to infer different high-levels strategies (Allinson, 1991), but the intention of this experiment was to acquire data that allowed a synthesis between the high level strategies employed and the lower level of learning activities. To this end, verbal protocols were used in an attempt to gain data relating to the interaction a finer grain size than previously achieved.

4.3.4.3 Video recording

As well as being a means for recording the verbal protocols, video recordings were used as a means for viewing the subjects as they used the system. Because subjects were given their study goal on printed paper, video would enable many of the off-screen non-verbal activities to be assessed. For instance subjects checking the goals on the paper that they were given could be observed using video. Subsequent analyses demonstrated that finger points were used fairly often by some subjects as a way of indicating to their partner which buttons to press, or relevant pieces of text.

4.4 RESULTS

The data collected will be divided into two categories purely for ease of discussion. These are the data derived from the screen recordings and the data derived from the verbal protocols.

4.4.1 Access of material screens

The graph in Figure 4.4 (below) shows the number of screens accessed by each of the access facilities provided. There is a marked preference for accessing material screens via the guided tour facility, with hypertext links (the within-text cross-references) and the contents facility coming in second and third respectively. The bookmark facility was used by only one pair of subjects (pair 5) for whom it was as popular as the contents facility. Interestingly enough no subjects used the index as a means to access the information screens even though they all had experience using it during the training session. The reason for the failure of subjects to use the index can be partly attributed to the nature of the task: indexes best support directed search techniques, where the subject has a pretty good idea what information they are looking for. This experiment required subjects to learn a large amount of information without being given specific *a priori* goals as to what material was relevant. Research by Hammond & Allinson (1989) shows similar patterns of results, learners showing a marked preference for the index only when the task required directed search.

4.4.2 Differences among pairs

Looking at the use of the facilities across the different pairs it can be seen that there are marked differences in the use of the various facilities, see Figure 4.5. Although there does seem to be some pattern in the use of the facilities (see Figure 4.4), the variability in the results is marked, this can be at least partly explained by considering that the subjects used different strategies during the interaction.

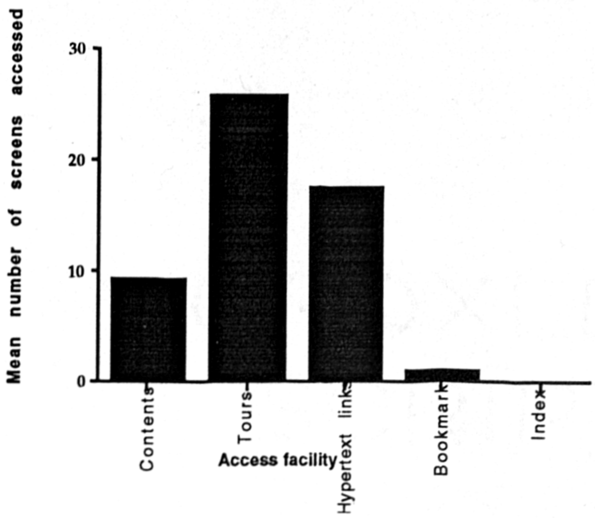


Figure 4.4 Mean number of screens accessed by each facility.

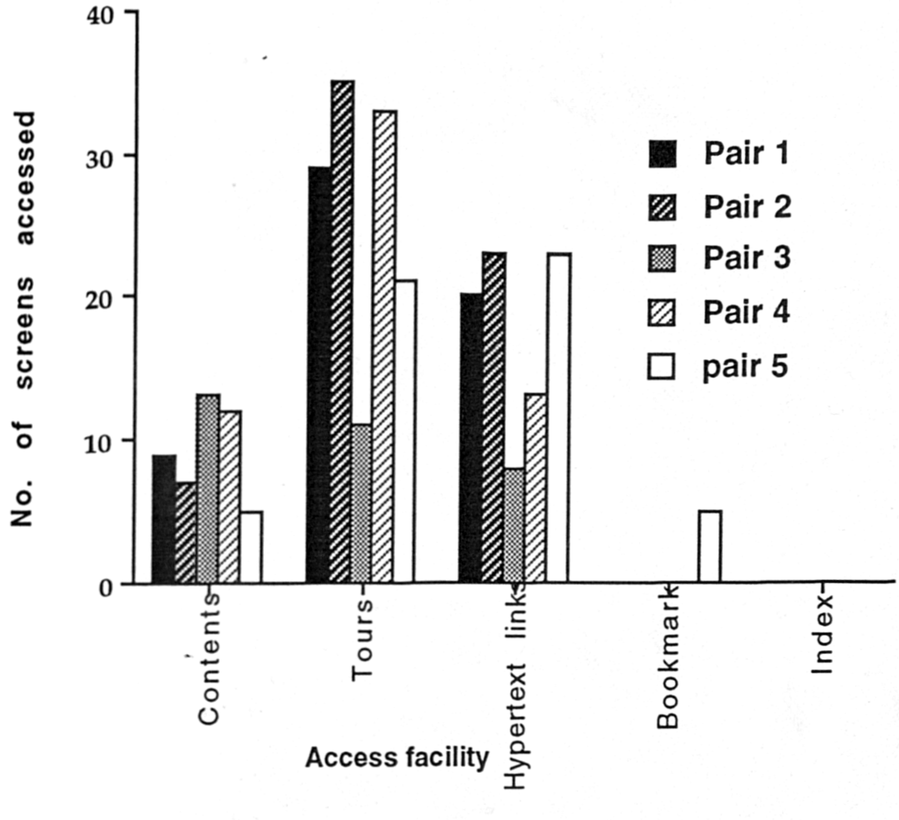


Figure 4.5 Facilities for access of material

Table 4.2 (below) shows the data for all five pairs. It can be seen from both Figure 4.5 and the table that although overall the guided tour is the most popular means of accessing text screens, this is by no means true for all subjects, both pairs 3 & 5 favour other means, pair 3 favouring the contents screen and pair 5 preferring hypertext links. It should be noted that these two pairs differ in other ways from the other three, a point which shall be discussed later in this section. Table 4.2 also shows the number of screens accessed by each group, these are divided into the number of new screens, those that the subject sees for the first time, and old screens, those that have been seen before. From this we can compute an index of efficiency (Hammond & Allinson 1989) which is an arbitrary measure of how many redundant screens the subjects saw, a high efficiency index equals low redundancy. However two of the pairs (pairs 1 and 2) saw all of the screens, whilst another (pair 4) saw nearly all of them. The remaining pairs (pairs 3 & 5) saw just less than three quarters of the total (see Table 4.2).

Calling the ratio of new screens to total screens seen efficiency may be misleading. Simply because a subject has seen a material screen before does not mean that this was either down to inefficient search, or insufficient processing first time around. Other factors may give rise to this pattern of results, and it may even constitute a useful learning strategy.

Facility used to access screen	Pair 1	Pair 2	Pair 3	Pair 4	Pair 5	Mean
Contents	9	7	13	12	5	9.2
Tours	29	35	11	33	21	25.8
Hypertext	20	23	8	13	23	17.4
Bookmarks	0	0	0	0	5	1
Index	0	0	0	0	0	0
Total number	58	65	32	58	51	53.4
New screens (total 42)	42	42	30	40	29	36.6
Old screens	16	23	2	18	22	16.4
Efficiency (New/total)	0.72	0.65	0.94	0.69	0.57	0.71
Score	72	75	80	73	40	68

Table 4.2 Access of material summarised

One of the intentions of this investigation was to see how the various activities and processes that occur during an interaction with hypertext are accommodated into an overall learning strategy, and to examine the nature of these strategies. Graphs such as those in Figures 4.4 and 4.5 can only tell part of the story; in order to understand the way that these tools and facilities are used rather than merely how much it is necessary to first of all examine at which points in the interaction when the tools are used, in order to do this the use of the tools was represented using the meeting plot formalism (Olson & Olson, 1991). The use of the various facilities was measured out along a time base giving an indication of the distribution of tool use over time, in tandem with the verbal protocols. It is hoped that this will give a clearer idea of the way that the subjects went about their task. In attempting to describe the learning strategies of the subject pairs it is probably best to describe the results for each of the five pairs in turn. But first I shall discuss the data for all the subjects.

Subject pair 1. The interaction of subject pair 1 can be divided into three phases. The first phases lies between the beginning (0 minutes) and about 27 minutes and is characterised by a fairly heavy reliance on tours interspersed by a following cross references resulting in tour suspension (the grey sections) and note taking. The second phase of the interaction occurs between 27 and 42 minutes and involves the subjects browsing the material using the hypertext links and the contents screen as means of access, as before some notes are made, the knowledge mapping tool is used for the first time. The final phase is much shorter than the others and occurs between 42 and 45 minutes and involve the knowledge mapping tool being used to access the notes that have been made previously.

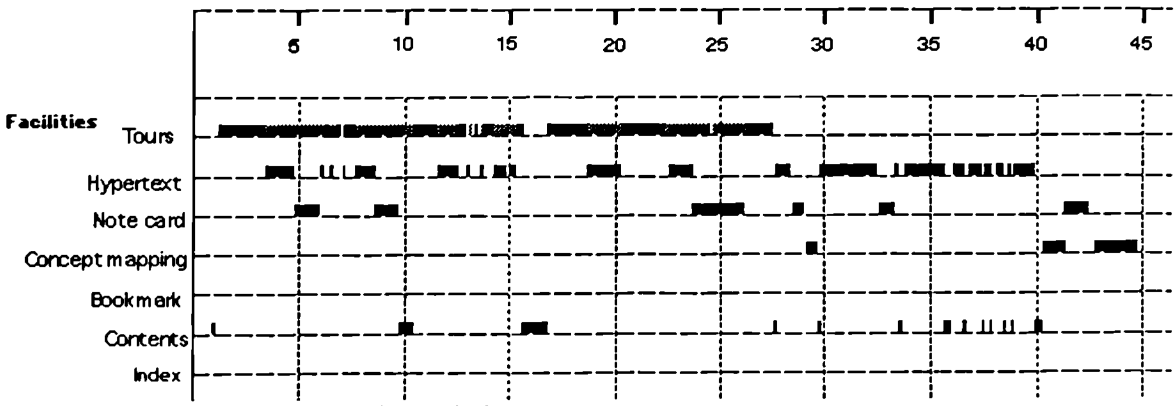


Figure 4.6 Meeting plot for subject pair 1.

Subject pair 2. The overall pattern for the interaction of subject pair 2 is in many ways similar to that of pair 1. Again there is an initial phase whereby there is a reliance on tours (between 2 & 39 minutes) during which notes are made and cross-references are followed. This is followed by a period where material is accessed via the contents screen and hypertext links (39 to 44 minutes). Finally, there is a brief period between 44 and 47 minutes where the subjects are accessing notes. It is important to note that the knowledge mapping tool was not used at any point during the interaction.

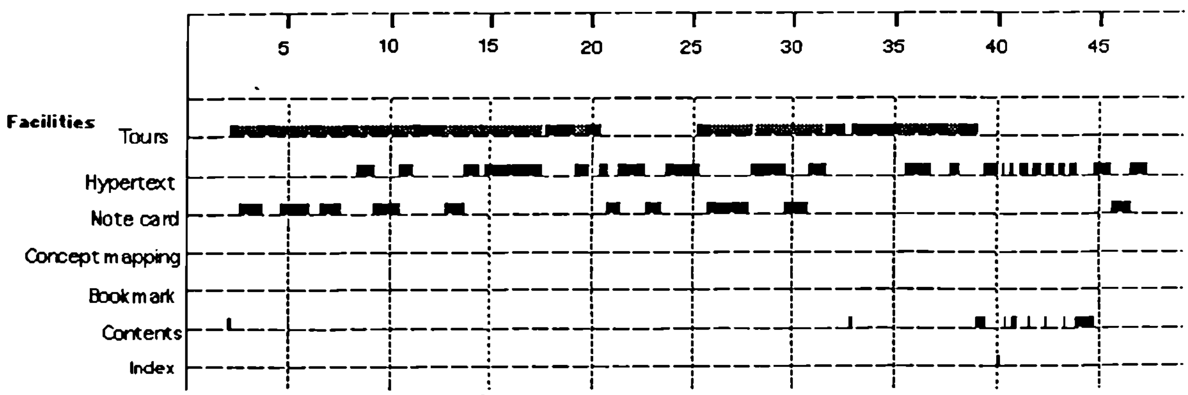


Figure 4.7 Meeting plot for subject pair 2.

Subject pair 3. The results for pair 3 look quite different than the previous two, the tours were used much less frequently, less in fact than all the other pairs. Figure 4.5 shows that the primary means of access for pair 3 was the contents facility. The interaction starts by the selection of a tour which is followed without deviation of any sort (between

2 and 7 minutes); after this tour has reached its conclusion there is a period (7 to 15 minutes) of browsing using both cross-reference links and the contents screen to access material (similar to that found in the second stages towards the end of the interactions of pairs 1 and 2). In the next phase between 16 & 30 minutes there is extensive use of the note-taking facilities with periodic dips into the hypertext, occasionally making use of the contents screen to access the material. The fourth section (30 - 37 minutes) consists of heavy use of the knowledge mapping tool, with note cards being opened up occasionally. The final section (37 - 41 minutes), involves use of the knowledge mapping tool, and some material screens accessed by the contents screen.

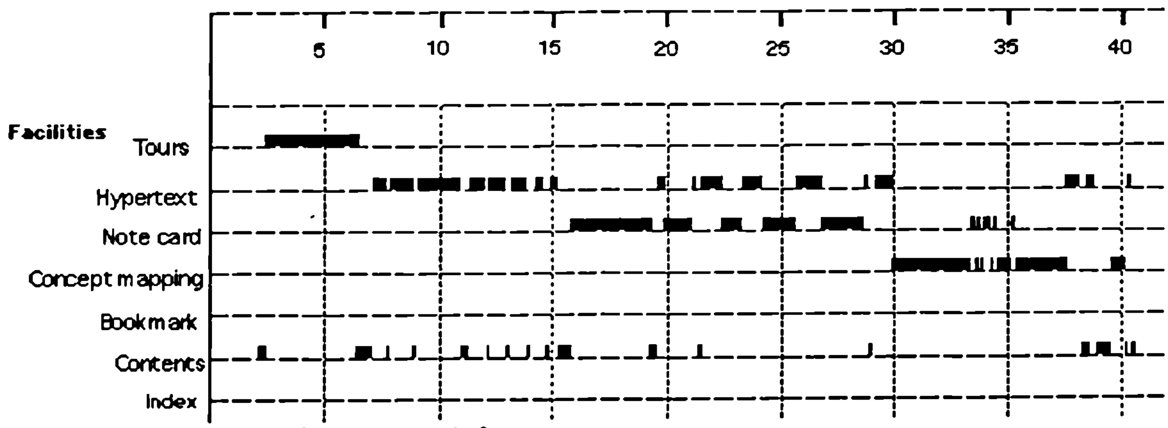


Figure 4.8 Meeting plot for subject pair 3.

Pair 3 scored the highest efficiency index (see Table 4.2). The score of 0.94 is a near perfect score indicating that they saw very few of the screens more than once. The relevance of this figure will be discussed after the verbal protocols have been considered.

Subject pair 4. The pattern of the facility use for subject pair 4 is similar in many ways to those of pairs 1 and 2 There is an initial phase between 1 minute and 29 minutes in which the subjects use most of the facilities available to them; material is accessed primarily by tours with only little use of the contents screen or cross reference links.

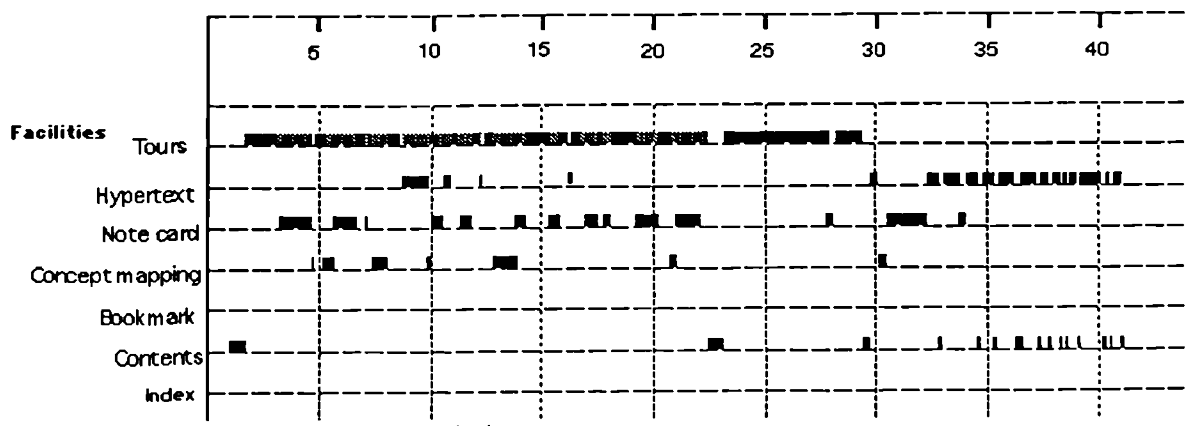


Figure 4.9 Meeting plot for subject pair 4.

Notes are made, concept nodes are linked using the knowledge mapping tool. The second phase between 29 and 41 minutes reveals that the subjects are dipping in and out of the material using the contents screen almost exclusively.

Subject pair 5[1]. In addition to this being far and away the shortest interaction (26.6 minutes whereas all previous break the 40 minute barrier) it is also notable in that pair 5 were the only ones to use the bookmarking facility as a way of accessing material screens. Like the results for pairs 1 & 2 the interaction can be seen as consisting of 3 phases of tool use. The first stage (0 - 10 minutes) involves the use of a tour, with suspensions to follow cross-references, this is followed by a period of access using the contents screen (10-16 minutes), with a final stage in which notes were made. Occasionally, in this last phase, the subjects accessed material screens that had previously been marked stored using the bookmark facility. The knowledge mapping tool was not used at all.

The low efficiency index for this pair (0.57) can be attributed to their strategy of scanning the material, bookmarking relevant screens, and returning to them later. Thus what seems like low efficiency may actually be a useful learning strategy.

4.4.3 Scores on the test

Subjects were presented with a set of 11 questions about the Callanish stones (see Appendix 1), which were marked by the experimenter. All subject pairs performed approximately equally on the post-test (between 72 and 80% correct), apart from subject pair 5, who only scored 40%. This seems to be largely to do with the relatively low number of screens that this pair visited, meaning that they did not cover much of the information relevant to the study goal, and hence the questions.

4.4.4 Strategies for the interaction: a first pass

Formulating explanations from the basically syntactic representation of the interaction that the meeting plot provides is a contentious issue, but it does seem that even from this coarse-grained analysis some tentative conclusions can be drawn regarding the particular strategies used.

System-led accretion: this involves the learner trying to acquire the key facts of the domain; searching will often tend to be driven by the structure of the system. Tours perhaps encourage this approach and are used quite a lot early on in the interaction.

---

[1] Meeting plot 5 has been lost.

Goal-directed access: interesting or potentially relevant topics are accessed by a top-level menu or contents screen. This process may be driven by a desire to fill gaps in the learners' knowledge, and can be aided by the use of footprinting showing how much the learner has covered.

Skimming: characterised by subjects visiting screens for a short while in a manner similar to skim reading. Skimming may serve two possible functions: first, to allow the learner to assess the relevance of the material to their goals, before reading further; and second, to allow subjects to obtain some idea of the information in the system by way of an overview. It is suggested that skim reading before the information is read in more depth is a useful strategy to aid learning and characterises expert performance (Bazerman, 1988). Bookmarks can be useful to this end allowing interesting or relevant material to be stored for later use.

Note-taking: this can be done either "on the fly", the notes being made whenever anything relevant crops up (as for pairs 1, 2 and 4), or they can be made in the form of summaries after the material has first been surveyed.

Revising: characterised by access of notes at the end of the interaction, or the access of key screens of the system (such as the use of an aerial diagram looked at by at least two groups in this experiment).

Organising: here subjects organise and structure the concepts that they have created using the knowledge mapping tool.

4.4.5 The processes involved in the interaction

The purpose of recording subjects' verbalisations was to obtain a clearer idea of the sorts of processes and activities that were occurring during the interaction. The aim was here to supplement any information derived from the screen-recordings to attempt to determine strategies for the interaction.

4.4.5.1 The process of categorisation

The verbal protocols were first transcribed, and then categorised into different types of process. Following this, the low-level categories were grouped into higher level categories relating to commonalities between verbalisations.

Table 4.3 shows that there are three high level categories relating to learning and comprehension, regulation of the learning process, and verbalisations directed towards the way that the system behaved. The numbers in the second column refers to the number of verbalisations counted that relate to this category. Often an utterance was deemed to relate to more than one activity which may fall into the same category, or two separate categories. For example, the utterance from the experiment:

> "So we have to look at the burial chamber don't we, because we've already seen this." (points to information screen on the 'Central Menhir').

would be categorised as both planning, where subjects negotiate some action, and evaluating redundancy, which is where subjects decide that they have covered some information screen before. Alternatively more than one utterance may be categorized into a single instance of a category type. For example, a verbal interchange where learners discussed some aspect of the system would count as one instance of the particular category.

Category	%	*Description*
Comprehension		
Superficial processing		
Reading out loud	4.1	Self explanatory
Assimilation		
Clarifying	6.7	Trying to resolve misunderstandings, or make points presented clear.
Summarizing	11.4	One subject summarises the information given to them in their own words—self explanation.
Organising	6.6	Giving the information a loose structure, discussing commonalities not explicitly stated in the text.
Regulatory		
Selecting	18.8	Relevant or interesting material is selected.
Discussing goals	1.8	The goals of the interaction are referred to in order to aid selection.
Evaluating achievements	0.4	The learner evaluates what has been achieved so far
Planning	4.8	The learners plan the next part of the interaction.
Discussing strategy	0.4	The strategy for the interaction is discussed.
Interaction		
Misc. control	11.8	A low level process involving one subject requesting some system related action of the other.
Evaluating redundancy	3.6	The subjects discuss whether they have seen a screen of information before.
Discussing tool use	0.5	Low level discussion (i.e.. not strategic) relating to the use of a tool or facility.
Discussing system operations	2.7	The various operations of the system are discussed.
General comments	26.5	Comments not directly related to the task, information or process of learning.

Table 4.3 The verbal protocols categorized.

4.4.5.2 The comprehension level

Learning from text involves the processes and activities that turn the material that it presented to the individual (be it graphical or textual) into acquired knowledge. As we saw in Chapter 1 a number of different processes have been described by different researchers which serve to render the information and transform it to a mental representation of that information. Learning, as Hammond (1991) points out, occurs as a by-product of comprehension; in all but the most artificial rote learning situation, learners attempt to make sense of the information before they attempt to retain it.

Superficial processing. Ferguson-Hessler and de Jong (1990) use the term *superficial processing* as a way of describing the initial phase of learning where the information that is presented to them is decoded. As may be expected, in this study most of the time was spent reading the information screens in silence. The manifestation of superficial processing in the protocols was subjects reading information out loud. Often this was merely to indicate that a point was of some interest to them, and appeared to be of little strategic use. For example the following was read from the system:

> "Listen to this: 'Excavations of the burial chamber found bones, some weapons and a black sticky substance that may have been the remains of human bodies...' Yuk!"

Assimilation. In this study learners could be observed explicitly and jointly attempting to comprehend the information that was presented to them by the hypertext system; these were categories as summarising, questioning, organising and clarifying.

Summarising was where Subjects made verbal summaries of the information to ensure that they had understood it; for example, material relating to the actual structure of the Callanish complex itself was summarised as:

> "So it's basically a cross with a circle in it."

Organising was where subjects would draw connections between entities within the material, not explicitly stated within the text itself, such as – referring to information on ley-lines, and druids:

> "These are all to do with mysticism aren't they?"

Clarifying is where subjects attempt to resolve misunderstanding and understanding failures by discussing the information – referring to information one of the purposes of the monument:

> "So is this all about weather prediction then?"

4.4.5.3 The regulatory level

The regulatory level contains verbalisations directed towards managing the processes by which information is accessed and learned; it contains five sub-categories of verbalisation: selecting, discussing goals, evaluating achievements, planning, and discussing strategy.

Selecting. This is simply where learners discuss whether or not a section of material is interesting of relevant, these discussions may be whether to read a particular information screen, or whether to make notes on a screen that they have read, for example:

> "I don't think that we need to bother with the first three [topic options], I think that 'builders of Callanish' would be a much better idea."

Discussing goals. This is where subjects discuss information that they are looking and evaluate it in the light of the goals that they have been given to see if it is relevant. Discussions such as these often led to the process of selection, see above. For example:

> Subject 1: "What about this?" [points to screen on 'Astronomical Alignments']
>
> Subject 2: [Looks at goal sheet] "Yeah, we need to look at stuff on the purpose so I suppose we do, yeah."

Evaluating achievements: this is where subjects discussed what information they had covered, made notes on and so on; and evaluated this in the light of the goals that they were given to see if they had covered enough information:

> "So we've covered all that stuff [information on the structure of Callanish], so we just need to do some stuff on the purpose."

Only by evaluating what they have achieved can subjects (and learners in the real world) using hypertext determine when they are going to stop learning the material. In system led interactions the stopping rule is provided by the system itself; in hypertext and other discovery systems learners need to do this themselves if they are not going to carry on *ad infinitum* or (perhaps more likely) *ad tedium.*

Planning: quite simply is where subjects tried to form some form of plan for how they would proceed with the interaction. Planning occurred very infrequently (4.8%), and those plans that were developed were short term, and low level, for example:

> "OK., that's the 'structure' [of Callanish], let's go back to the 'purpose' [of Callanish], [via] main contents."

Additionally, and importantly, no explicit planning took place at the beginning of the interaction; subjects preferring to jump into the system rather than consider what they should do beforehand.

Discussing strategy. Subjects very occasionally discussed the way that they were going about the interaction, for example:

> Subject 1: "I think we should just scan these don't you?"
>
> Subject 2 "Yeah"

> Subject 1 "I suppose in retrospect that's probably what we should have done from the beginning."

Such discussions were extremely rare in this study, subjects seemed quite happy complete the interaction with little or no explicit evidence of them discussing the best strategy to adopt.

4.4.5.4 The interaction level

Verbalisations at the interaction level relate to various discussions relating to the task that learners are performing, or to the various operations of the system. The interaction level contains four lower level categories: control, evaluating redundancy, discussing tool use and evaluating system operations.

Control, the control category contained a high number of verbalisations (11.8%), these basically took the form of instructions given from one subject to another. The experimental set up required that one subject was in control of the mouse and the other the keyboard and often one subject would need to instruct the other to click a button with the mouse, or type something in to a dialog box. Many of these instructions are the result of the experimental set-up and therefore of little interest here. For example:

> "Can you move that [a note window] up there so I can read this [an information screen]"

Evaluating redundancy, these discussion centred around the subjects discussing whether they had seem some information in the system before or not. These could either be predictive: subjects deciding whether they had seen a screen by virtue of its name in a cross reference link, or the discussions may take place when they are actually looking at a particular screen. This last occurrence is rather surprising since the system logged a screen every time it had been visited and displayed the number of times that the subjects had been to a screen (see Figure 4.1). For example:

> "Oh have we seen...[looks at number of times indicator]...we've been here before."

Discussing tool use, a number of discussion took place as to how a tool should be used. These discussions were low level in the sense that they were not strategic in nature.

> "Shall we put the note in here [a single note-window] or shall we create another one?"

Evaluating system operations, this is simply where the behaviour of the system would be discussed, or predicted by the subjects. For example:

"If I press this [button] will it cancel the tour as well?"

Activities evaluating system operations are low level, infrequent (2.7%) and not of particular interest here.

4.4.5.5 General comments

General comments is effectively a default category for all the verbalisations that could not be meaningfully categorised. The lion's share of this category is made up of various remarks that have little to do with the task, in hand. Such verbalisations may be of importance in regulating the human-human interaction, but are of little interest to this study.

4.4.5.6 Summary of categories

Assimilation. The categories described in the assimilation category roughly accord with a number of conjectures about the processes involved in learning from text. Kintsch (1987) argues that comprehension of text is largely a bottom-up process; as it is read, text is parsed into propositions which represent the various interpretations that can be placed on the individual semantic units (words or aggregates). These propositions are arranged into a network which develops as reading takes place. At some arbitrary point during the reading process, which may correspond to the end of a sentence, but not necessarily so, a proposition will become understood. Note that this process is not all or none as subjects can be probed about meaning at various points during reading and are able to give an answer. Furthermore, subjects can change their mind about an interpretation when further evidence from the text or their background knowledge either invalidates the interpretation or provides a better one, such as in the case of garden path sentences. Such a model tends to play down the top-down components of comprehension that have been put forward by other researchers such as Schank (1982) where comprehension is achieved by virtue of what the learner expects. Such an effect is well known in studies where semantic "priming" effects occur that are under conscious control as opposed to effects that appear automatic (Posner & Snyder 1975, Neely 1977). Whichever model fits the data best it seems to be the case that there are several levels involved in the comprehension of material. First, a stage of initial processing occurs where the meaning of the text is parsed into propositions, which are later mapped on to that learners background knowledge in order to be understood. Next, these propositions are incorporated into a domain model that relates items of knowledge together in a way that reflects the learners current understanding of the domain. Finally, there is an integrative process that involves input into the model of both past experience and recently acquired information that can either serve to strengthen the existing model or cause re-evaluation in background knowledge in order to be understood. Next, these propositions are incorporated into a domain model that relates items of knowledge together in a way that reflects the learners current understanding of the domain. Finally, there is an integrative process that involves input into the model of both past experience and recently acquired information that can either serve to strengthen the existing model or cause re-evaluation in the light of new evidence.

Regulation. Perhaps the most surprising observation obtained in this study is the lack of explicit regulatory behaviour that occurred: subjects formed few plans, evaluated their achievements infrequently and only rarely referred back to the goals that they were given. Recall that such activities are crucial if the subjects are to access and learn about relevant information and ignore information that is irrelevant to the goals that they were given. McAleese (1989) states that browsing should be purposeful, but these results seem to indicate that browsing was not purposeful. Of course, merely looking at verbal protocols does not provide an index for how effective learners were at obtaining relevant information; however by looking at the screens accessed it is possible to determine how many relevant and irrelevant screens then subjects visited.

The goal of the task only required learners to learn about a subset of the information in the system, designated as being relevant by the experimenter. Table 4.4 shows the number of relevant screen and irrelevant screen that subjects covered.

	Pair 1	Pair 2	Pair 3	Pair 4	Pair 5
Total different screens (%)	100	100	71	95	70
Relevant (%)	100	100	100	100	64
Irrelevant (%)	100	100	14	71	77

Table 4.4 Percentage number of relevant and irrelevant screens accessed.

Ideally subjects should score a maximum 100% for the number of relevant screens, a zero for the irrelevant screens. In reality although four of the pairs score 100% for the relevant screens, two of these score 100% for the irrelevant screens also, whilst another pair looked at 71% of the irrelevant screens. Only one pair, pair 3 showed a perfect relevant screen percentage, with a creditably low 14% of the irrelevant screens, revealing Pair 3 to be the most selective in the study. Pair 5 are the odd ones out, showing a less than perfect 64% for the relevant screens, and a high 77% for irrelevant screens. This reveals that not only did pair 5 cover lots of irrelevant material, they also missed out on a lot of relevant material. Perhaps unsurprisingly they scored the lowest on the post-test, scoring approximately half as well as the other four pairs.

Some of the variability in goal directedness may be explained by looking at the differences across subjects in the number of verbalisations in the regulatory level.

	Pair 1	Pair 2	Pair 3	Pair 4	Pair 5
Selecting	20	12	15	18	16
Discussing goals	1	2	9	2	1
Evaluating achievements	2	1	5	1	0
Planning	4	3	4	5	6
Discussing strategy	0	3	1	2	3

Table 4.5 Total number of occurrences of each category in the regulatory level for all pairs

Table 4.5 shows that although pair 3 differed very little in the number of verbalisations concerned with selecting, planning and discussing strategy, they did appear to discuss their goals and evaluate their achievements more. This observation suggests two things. First, that subjects who attend to their goals and refer to them as they proceed through the interaction may show more evidence of goal-directedness, than subjects who consider such factors less — subject pair five for example. Second, that goal-directedness does not appear to be related to the number of planning and discussing strategy verbalisations, which were similar for all the pairs. On this second point, it must be borne in mind that practically all of the planning behaviour was very low level, and also there is no measurement of how well they actually adhered to any plans that they formulated.

We should be wary of drawing too many conclusions from these results, what may appear to the developer of a system to be irrelevant to a particular goal may to a learner be useful background knowledge. However the results do show when taken together with the lack of explicit regulatory behaviour, that there may be some mileage in trying to encourage learners to be more goal-directed in the way that they access information from hypertext.

4.4.6 Use of the knowledge mapping tool

An aspect of this study which becomes increasingly important in later chapters is the extent to which subjects used the knowledge mapping tool that they were provided with. Out of the five pairs only three used the tool for anything other than note taking. Pair 2 and pair 5 both used the note tool which was part of the knowledge mapping tool, but did not use the knowledge mapping tool itself to build maps and so on. Pairs 1, 3 and 4, on the other hand, created multiple nodes and at least attempted to organise these into some form of overview map (see Figure 4.10-4.12).

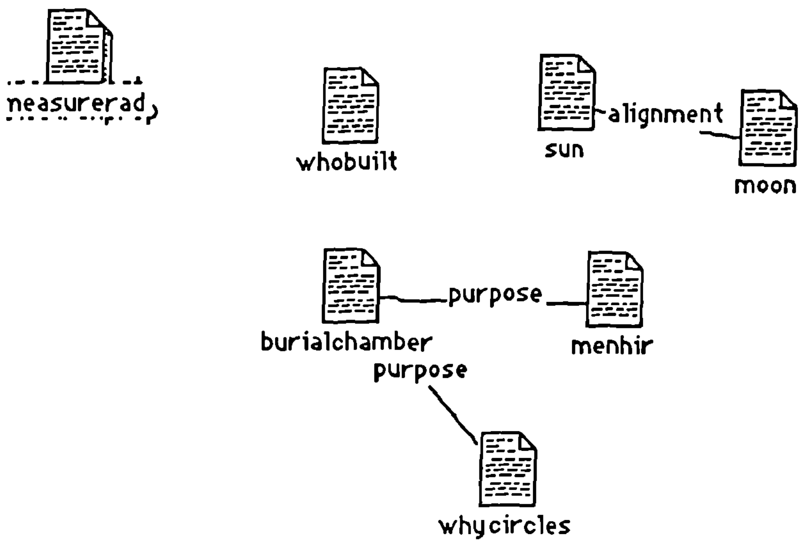


Figure 4.10 Knowledge map for pair 1

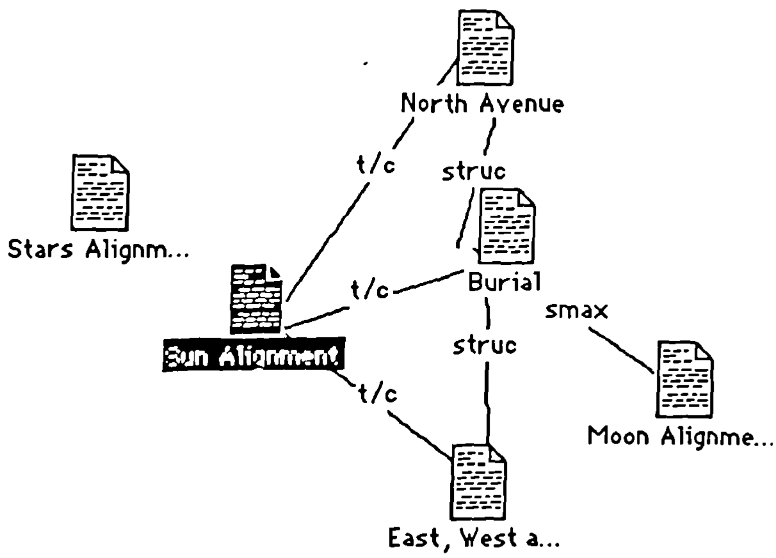


Figure 4.11 Knowledge map for pair 3

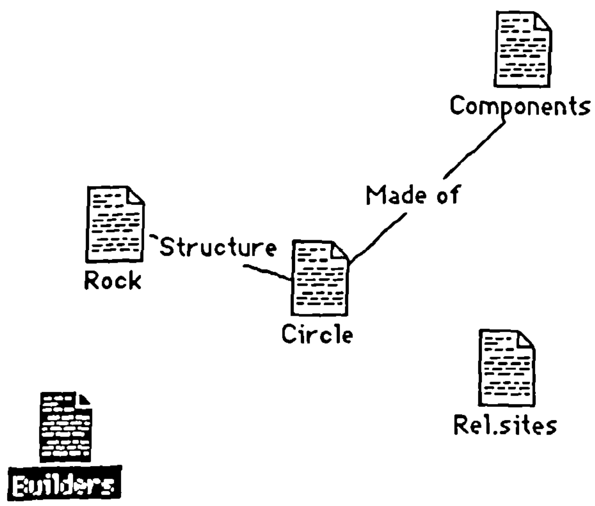


Figure 4.12 Knowledge map for pair 4

Little can be said about these maps since subjects were not instructed to use it, merely shown how to operate it and advised that it might help them; it was left very much up to the subjects as to how much they used the tool. Some used it for the purpose that it was intended, (pairs 1, 3 and 4) whilst some used it simply as a place to store notes (pairs 2 and 5). Looking forward to Chapter 5, many of the features in the maps above are also shown in this next study. For example, a number of the nodes in maps from both studies are left unlinked (see Section 5.3.4.1).

4.5 DISCUSSION AND IMPLICATIONS FOR FURTHER RESEARCH

Looking at the interactions as a whole, subjects appeared to have little problems using the hypertext system, and in a post-experiment questionnaire, all ten subjects indicated that they found the system easy and relatively pleasant to use, and managed to learn from it successfully as well with four of the five pairs scoring around 80% in the post-test. Subjects were less consistent in their use and attitude towards the knowledge mapping tool. Whilst all pairs used the tool, only three of the five used it to explicitly organise their ideas, the other two using it as a means of accessing notes, I shall return to this point shortly. First I shall briefly discuss why subjects did not appear to be very goal-directed.

4.5.1 Why was there an absence of goal-directedness?

In the main subjects in this study seemed quite happy make decisions as to where to go and what to do next on the fly, on a moment to moment basis. To some extent this is understandable: learners enter this particular domain knowing nothing about it and therefore need some kind of background before they are able to direct the interaction successfully. This background can be achieved via the simple expedient of following tours in the hope that something relevant comes up. These results are consistent with the findings of Njoo and de Jong (1991), who discovered that subjects using educational simulations often interacted with the system in a rather arbitrary way, rather that attempting to formulate and adhere to some form of plan for the course of the interaction. The lack of any explicit planning was discussed by Suchman (1987) who stated that often interactions are typified by situated action: actions triggered by the moment-to-moment changes of state of a system, rather than directed by high level plans. Of course, all the subjects in this study were novice hypertext users, and to a large extent they were thrown into a system which may initially be hugely unfamiliar. Such circumstances are likely to result in the subjects applying weak methods to achieve their goals, such as system led browsing; after all in order to form any sort of plan it is necessary for an individual too have a clear idea of what options in terms of access and navigation facilities are open to them. In this study the minimal practice that they received was unlikely to provide this.

What do these results prescribe? Marchionini (1988) argues that hypertext does not support the formation of plans or goal directed search, it supports browsing; as Charney (1994) points out, "Hypertext cannot rival the ability of print to support rational, deductive, goal-directed discourse."

It may therefore be profitable to provide explicit support for goal-directed learning; to encourage learners to consider, reflect upon and use their goals to direct action, rather than as Hammond (1989) states allowing them to "sink or swim in a sea of links and nodes".

4.5.2 Effective learning and effective knowledge mapping

In the previous chapter a number of arguments were advance in favour of the use of knowledge mapping as a learning activity. In this study subjects were merely given a knowledge mapping tool and told to use it to help them to create and organise their notes; no explicit instructions were given to encourage them to construct network representations. As a result of this only three of the pairs used the knowledge mapping tool in the way it was intended, and only one of these pairs, pair 3, constructed anything like an adequate network. It is an issue for debate whether this had any additional effects on learning: certainly the post-test showed little difference. Future research may assess the educational effects of learners being more strongly encouraged to construct overview networks, to see if, as a number of theorists argue (see Novak, 1990; Novak and Gowin, 1984; Fisher, 1990; Kozma 1992 and Chapter 3), it is useful contribution to our armoury of educational approaches.

5

Developing and evaluating tools to support learning and access

5.1 STRATEGIES FOR MORE EFFECTIVE LEARNING AND SEARCH

Study 1 revealed that although pairs of subjects could learn relatively effectively from hypertext, there was little evidence that learners were using their goals to drive the interaction. Additionally, although some of the subject pairs appeared to use the knowledge mapping tool effectively, since there was no control condition, it made it difficult to tell if this was having any effect on learning. The first objective of this study is to ascertain the effect that knowledge map has on learning; the second objective is to investigate further the way that knowledge maps are constructed; and the third objective is to investigate the possibility of supporting goal-directed access of information.

5.1.1 The problem of goal-directedness

As has been discussed in Section 2.4.5 there are a number of approaches to hypertext-based CAL that attempt to support goal directed access of information, the use of knowledge-based systems have proved popular. The HAN system (Scott, 1993) generates hypermedia tutorials as a result of a student query. Information is represented as a semantic network in which the relationships between chunks of information, for example prerequisite knowledge, are explicitly represented. By tagging relations in this way the system can generate tutorials that are tailored towards different user types. Such approaches, which in many ways can be seen as the on-line generation of guided tours, can alleviate many of the problems related to the access of information from a massive hypertext system.

Such approaches are still self-directed: the learner needs to specify appropriate questions that accord with their goals; they have to assess whether the information that the system delivers is appropriate to their goals; and they have to decide whether the top level goal has been adequately addressed by the information that they have covered. Study 1 showed that learners will often be captured by information that they think is interesting, rather then making a decision as to its relevance. Given that goal-directed behaviour is desirable if aimless wandering is to be avoided, can it be enhanced? The next section outlines a possible way that learners may be encouraged to be more goal-directed.

5.1.2 Supporting goal-directed access

A strategy encouraging activities that go some way to fulfilling these requirements was used in one condition of the study reported below. This strategy was used alongside an augmented knowledge mapping tool. An example is shown in Figure 5.1.

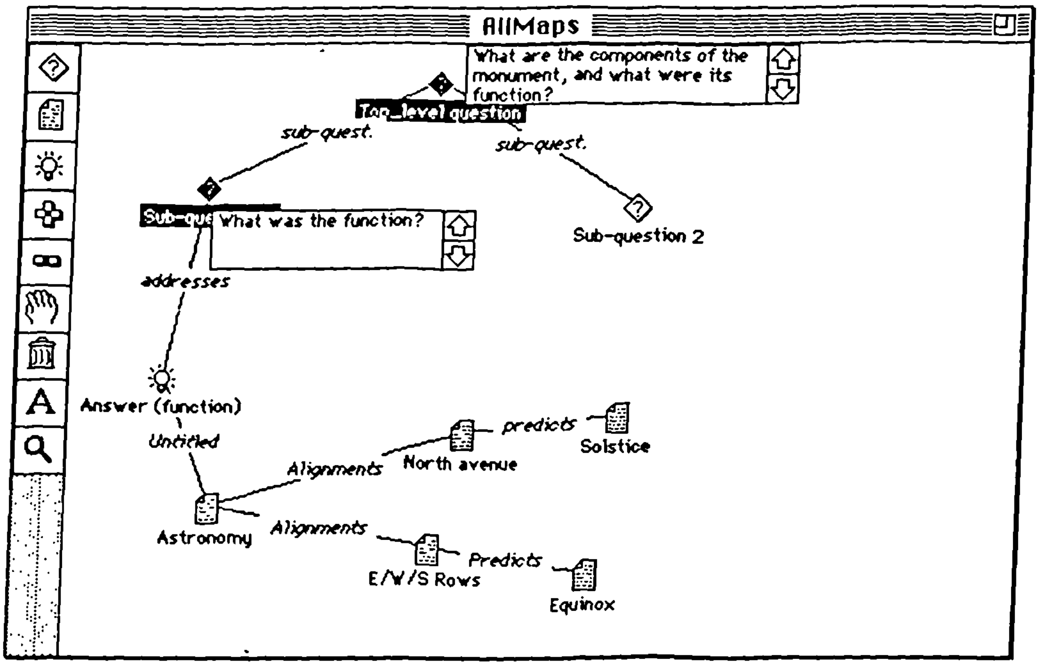


Figure 5.1 An example of the augmented knowledge mapping tool showing questions, subquestions, concept nodes and answer nodes.

The strategy adopted was similar to PQ4R (Thomas and Robinson, 1972) in that it used a simple question and answer model in which learners are required to express their goals in terms of a question which is set as the top-level study question.

The top-level question is represented as a question mark icon. Learners then try to break this question down into sub-questions; this is supported by browsing the titles in the table of contents of the hypertext system. Once learners have specified their goals in the form of questions, they can use the knowledge mapping tool to record notes and construct graphical representations of the domain information, in an attempt to address these questions. Thus, learners are encouraged to reflect upon their goals. Explicit answers to the questions can be given by the use of special answer nodes that form a bridge between the questions and notes made by the learner.

Figure 5.2 shows a flow diagram which summarises the main aspects of this strategy.

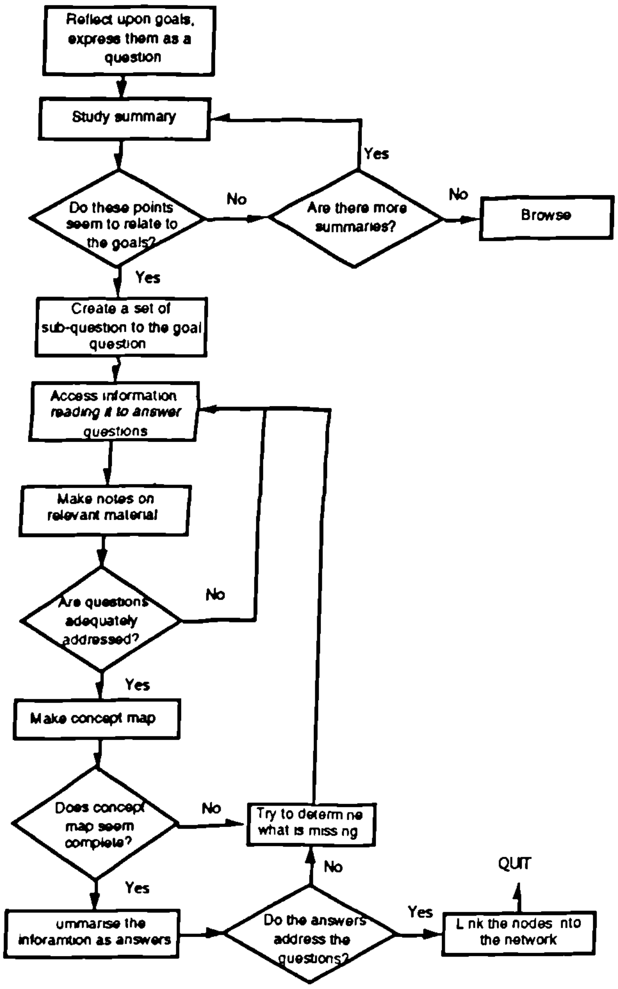


Figure 5.2: A flow chart of the ideal strategy.

5.2 EVALUATING THE EFFECTIVENESS OF CONCEPT MAPPING AND QUESTIONING STRATEGY

A study was designed to explore the use of three forms of tools: to support note-taking, to support knowledge map generation and to support goal formulation using the question and answer tool. The study addressed two questions: did use of the knowledge mapping tool result in more effective learning when compared to notes only; and did the use of the question and answer tool result in more goal-directed access of material.

Learning was measured by use of a post-test that consisted of a battery of questions relating to the domain of study. It is hypothesised that because knowledge mapping encourages learners to actively construct networks relating to the material in the hypertext system, use of the knowledge mapping tool should enhance scores on the post-test. It could be argued that using a note tool for comparison may be artificial in that it may prohibit learners from performing activities that they may normally use, such as drawing diagrams. However, since a number of hypertext systems allow users to make notes, this was the most appropriate baseline condition.

5.2.1 Method

5.2.1.1 Design

The experiment had three conditions based on the tool and instructions that subjects were given. There were two principal dependent variables: score on the post test, and the time spent on goal-relevant versus goal-irrelevant screens.

5.2.1.2 Procedure

The experiment was divided into two sessions: a practice session where subjects had practice using both the tool appropriate to their condition and a hypertext system, structurally similar but containing different material to the experimental system, and the experimental session in which they were required to learn some material from a hypertext system in order to answer questions later. In the practice session subjects were first given a tutorial explaining how to use the various facilities, and were then given a task similar to the one that they would receive in the experimental session in order to familiarise themselves with the way that the systems could be used.

In the experimental session subjects were presented with the Callanish stone circle hypertext system used in study 1 and a sheet of paper that outlined their study goal. They were told that they would be required to learn about a certain aspect of the information, set down in their study goals, in order to answer a few questions at the end of the session, and that these would have to be answered without reference to their notes. The study goal we the same for all subjects and is shown below:

> Learn information relating to the structure of the Callanish monument, and the theories for why it was built.

In addition to their study goals subjects were given separate instructions that outlined the strategy that they were to use depending on their experimental condition.

The instructions for all the conditions are shown in Tables 5.1 - 5.3.

Step 1: Question formulation Try and turn the study question into a question that you might answer, use Q-Tool to create a question icon, type you question into the question box. Go to the table of contents screen, browse the topics headings try to think up questions that relate both to your study question and to the names of the topics headings, use Q-Tool to create further question icons, type you question into the question boxes. **Step 2: Reading and note taking** Access material that you think will help to answer you questions, read the material trying to answer the questions that you typed in to Q-Tool (keep referring to these). When you find information that you think may help you answer these questions make notes on them by creating note icons and typing notes into the text boxes, create a new notes icon for each piece of information that you find. **Step 3: Structuring and organising** When you think that you have enough material to answer the questions, try to link some of the icons together to show how the concepts that you have made notes on relate to one another. **Step 4: Question answering.** Use the material that you have made notes on to help answer the questions that you formulated in Step 1. Create answer nodes, type your answers into these. If you feel that you do not have enough information to answer the questions, go back to the system and try to find further information.

Table 5.1 Instructions for augmented knowledge mapping tool condition.

Step 1: Note taking As you read the material in the system make notes on relevant material by creating Q-Tool 'Note' icons, and typing notes into the text box. **Step 2: Structuring** When you feel that you have covered enough information try to link the icons that you have created together to show how the concepts that you have made notes on relate to one another as you did in the first session.

Table 5.2 Instructions for knowledge mapping condition.

Instructions Read the information contained in the hypertext system in order to learn it. Use the note tool in order to create notes to help you to learn the information and write a short essay. Try and organise your notes as if you were going to give them to someone else to read.

Table 5.3 Instructions for notes condition.

The session ended when subjects considered that they had covered enough to answer questions on the study goal. Subjects were then asked to write a brief (no more than a page) summary of the material relating to the study goal. Following this they were given a set of 16 questions to answer relating to the material that they had covered (see Appendix 2 for questions and full instructions). Typically the session lasted between 1 and 1.5 hours.

5.2.1.3 Materials

The educational material was presented using the same HyperCard stack that was used for study 1. Again as for study one, two systems were used: one for practice, the other for the experiment proper. Subjects were also provided with one of three tools to use depending on experimental condition. Subjects in the control condition used a note tool that allowed them to type notes into an on-screen scrolling window. A second group used a simple knowledge mapping tool that allowed them to create concept nodes, which could contain notes; these nodes could be linked together to denote domain relationships. In the third condition subjects used the question and answer strategy together with the augmented knowledge mapping tool which allowed the creation of question and answer nodes to instantiate this strategy (see Figure 5.1 for an example).

5.2.1.4 Subjects

Subjects were 24 students from the University of York, between the ages of 19 and 35 and were paid five pounds to take part in the experiment.

5.2.2 Results

5.2.2.1 Testing for increased learning

The experimental hypothesis predicts that subjects using knowledge mapping as a learning activity should learn more effectively than those simply making notes, thus subjects using both the simple knowledge mapping tools and the augmented knowledge mapping tool should score higher on the post-test than did those using the note tool.

Table 5.4 shows mean percentage scores on the post-test for all conditions; a one factor analysis of variance shows that the difference between these three conditions is significant: (F [2, 21] = 4.1, $p < 0.05$).

Condition	N	Mean % correct	Std. Dev.
Augmented tool	8	44.5	20.8
Knowledge mapping	8	47.9	17.8
Note tool	8	24.3	14.4

Table 5.4 Mean percentage scores on the post-test for each of the conditions.

Since it was hypothesised that subjects in both of the knowledge mapping conditions should perform better than those in the notes only condition it was appropriate to use a planned contrast to test, first whether the two knowledge mapping conditions differed from each other, second, whether these two conditions taken together differed from the notes condition. A means comparisons contrast test revealed that the two knowledge mapping conditions were not significantly different (F [2, 21] = 0.143, $p = 0.7$), and therefore the two conditions were compared against the notes only condition. This test yielded a significant difference (F [2, 21] = 8.04, $p < 0.01$).

There was a high degree of within condition variability in scores reflected in the standard deviations shown in table 5.4; this is not surprising when the nature of the study is considered. Such tasks are open to effects from a wide variety of subject variables such as motivation and general ability, in addition to the variables being manipulated.

One possible explanation for these difference is that subjects using the knowledge mapping tool spent longer reading the material screens than did subjects using the note tool. Table 5.5 shows that whilst there was a large difference between conditions for the total time of the interaction ($F[2,21] = 17.8$, $p < 0.01$), this was accounted for almost totally by the time spent using the tool ($F[2,21] = 21.64$, $p < 0.01$), with no significant difference in the time spent using the hypertext access facilities ($F[2,21] = 0.53$, $p > 0.5$), or the time spent looking at the material screens ($F[2,21] = 0.8$, $p = 0.46$). It therefore seems that the difference is due specifically to the learning activities that learners performed as a result of using the tools that they were provided with.

Condition	Total time	Material screens	Access facilities	Tool
Augmented tool	76.3	18.3	3.7	54.3
Knowledge mapping	50.1	14.2	4.0	32.0
Note tool	34.7	17.3	3.1	14.3

Table 5.5 Percentage of time spent on each of the facilities

We can further ask whether the knowledge mapping tool had any qualitative effect on the sort of knowledge that subjects learned. It could be argued that since knowledge mapping places an emphasis on the relational aspects of the domain, then it may help in the learning of this type of information over an above any general effects on learning. In order to test this, one of the questions (with a maximum score of 18) in the post test required learners to draw an aerial diagram of the layout of the stone circle main site. There was no aerial diagram in the material contained within the system, and it seemed that knowledge mapping may focus learners on the relationships between the components of the circle that made up the main site, helping them to produce a better diagram than the note tool subjects. The results reveal that although subjects in both of the knowledge mapping tool condition scored higher on average on the overview type questions than did the subjects in the node tool, there was no significant interaction among these conditions.

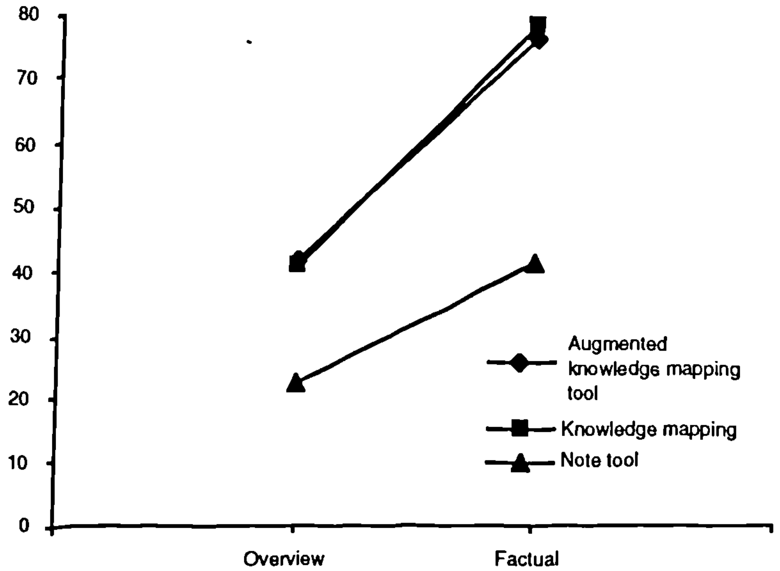


Figure 5.3 Interaction between question type and condition.

Figure 5.3 shows a plot for the mean score for each type of question per condition expressed as a percentage of the total possible for these type of question. The graph shows that if there is any disproportionate effect of knowledge mapping then it appears to bias on the factual questions rather than the overview.

5.2.2.2 Discussion

The results appear to show that knowledge mapping tools have a positive effect on learning when measured by scores on a post test. However this result tended to be distributed across all the questions rather than being confined to questions that require the subject to abstract and form links between domain concepts as shown in Table 5.3 (above). This is contrary to the predictions (see Section 3.4.2.2) which would state that the task of linking domain concepts together should aid the acquisition of this form of relational knowledge, over and above any increase in basic factual knowledge.

This observation should not be seen as damning for knowledge mapping tools because it is likely that any such effect is likely to occur over a longer time span than was possible in an experiment of this kind, and may also require more training or experience than subjects received in this study. There is also an alternative explanation for this result which is that the relations that subjects focused on when creating the knowledge map were not the relations that would enable them to draw a better overview map. However, if we look at the maps that subjects produced (see Appendix 2) it does appear that most of them included at least a few of the principal components (North Avenue, Central Menhir and so forth) as concept nodes. Perhaps the most likely explanation for the absence of any proportionate difference in factual versus overview questions is due to a combination of subjects not focusing on all of the relevant components, plus the lack of sensitivity of the so-called factual and overview questions to measure what they are intending to measure.

5.3.2.3 Testing for more goal-directed access

The second hypothesis tested was that the question and answer strategy should make subjects more goal directed in the way that they accessed material. This was investigated by measuring the time that subjects spent on material screens that were judged by the experimenter as being relevant to the goals that they were given, and the time spent on screens judged irrelevant to the goals. An index of goal-directedness was calculated by dividing the time spent on goal relevant screens by the time spent on goal irrelevant screens. Table 5.6 summarises the results of this for condition 1 and condition 2. There is very little difference in the mean for both conditions, and unsurprisingly this result is non-significant using a one way ANOVA ($F [2, 21] = 0.3$ $p = 0.74$), there is also a great deal of individual variation, particularly for condition 1, indicating that the strategy and tool are having little effect on goal directedness.

Condition	N	Relevant / irrelevant	Std. Dev.
Augmented tool	8	0.67	0.16
Knowledge mapping tool	8	0.72	0.15
Note tool	8	0.66	0.16

Table 5.6 Times spent of irrelevant/relevant screens

Table 5.7 (below) shows the mean number of screens accessed for each condition, included also is the efficiency index used in the previous chapter. Note that unlike the table shown

above, this one shows the number of times a certain type of screen was used, not the length of time that the subject stayed there. Note that subjects using the two knowledge mapping tools see slightly fewer new screens than do those using the note tool. They also see more old screens than do those using the note tool; both of which are reflected in the higher efficiency index for note tool subjects, when compared to knowledge mapping subjects.

Condition	Contents	Index	New	Old	Total	New / Total
Augmented tool	15.37	0.13	25.88	15.25	41.00	0.67
Knowledge mapping	13.75	0.25	24.13	16.25	40.37	0.61
Note tool	10.50	0.00	29.25	12.00	41.25	0.72

Table 5.7 Mean numbers of screens accessed per condition.

Finally, on this line of investigation, we investigated the across condition difference in the extent to which subjects accessed information screens that were central to the goals that they were given. Here the notion of central information differs from relevant in degree. Relevant screens contain information that is useful background as well as information that is specifically referred to in the questions; information that is *central* to the task consists only of those screens that are necessary to answer the questions. There were nine such screens in the hypertext system, and it is suggested that access of these screens is essential for completing the task effectively. Naturally there is more to the task than this: in addition to accessing them the subjects must understand and be able to recall the information; however information must be found before it can be learned. Subjects in the augmented knowledge mapping condition accessed on average 13.50 of these central questions; subjects in the knowledge mapping condition accessed 14.12; and note tool subjects accessed an average of 14.75. These results again indicate that the question and answer strategy is having little effect on subjects search behaviour.

5.3.2.4 Discussion

The question and answer strategy appeared to have little additional effect on either learning outcome or the goal directedness of the access strategy. No additional effect on learning, over and above that gained from knowledge mapping, was predicted, and the non-significant effect of the augmented knowledge mapping tool on the post-test scores is of little concern. Of much greater importance is the observation that there appeared to be no difference in the goal-directedness of the learners, at least as measured here. The results are not even in the predicted direction with note-tool subjects accessing slightly more of the central screens than did those using the augmented tool; and appearing to do this more efficiently (see table 5.7 above).

A major problem in encouraging planning is not just getting them to formulate plans, but getting them to adhere to them once they have been formulated. We envisaged that learners would be encouraged to address the goals that they formulated as questions by being required to create a knowledge map to link in to the questions using answer nodes; addressing their goals would be part of the creation of the knowledge map. However many subjects complained that the knowledge map could not be linked to the question nodes in any meaningful way. The knowledge maps in this study tended to be created in a bottom-up, opportunistic fashion and thus the material relevant to the questions tended to be distributed across a number of nodes, mixed up with less relevant information. This made it difficult for learners to link any of this information into the questions. Figure 5.4 (below) shows a typical map from the augmented tool condition. Notice that there are three question nodes, and two answer nodes. The subject followed the instructions insofar as the questions were created at the beginning of the interaction, and the answers towards the end, but there was a failure to link these in to the map in the way required by the strategy. A possible reason for this is that the map is hierarchical, starting with a top node 'types of monument', with all the examples of the component types stemming from this. The uses of the monument (the second lower order question) are linked into this hierarchy by way of the 'use' relationships. It is therefore pointless to link answers in to the map as no one point can be linked to an answer in a meaningful way.

A further reason could be that of the material labelled irrelevant may have been seen by the subjects are useful background information irrespective as to whether it was directly relevant to the study goal. This would have meant that even subjects using the augmented tool as it was intended to be used would spend time on so-called irrelevant screens. Finally there may have been problems with the study itself relating to the size of the hypertext system used. The system contained around 60 screens of information, and it could be that this may not have been large enough to elicit an effect as it was within subjects means to access and skim read all of the screens within half and hour—which is what many of the subjects did irrespective of condition.

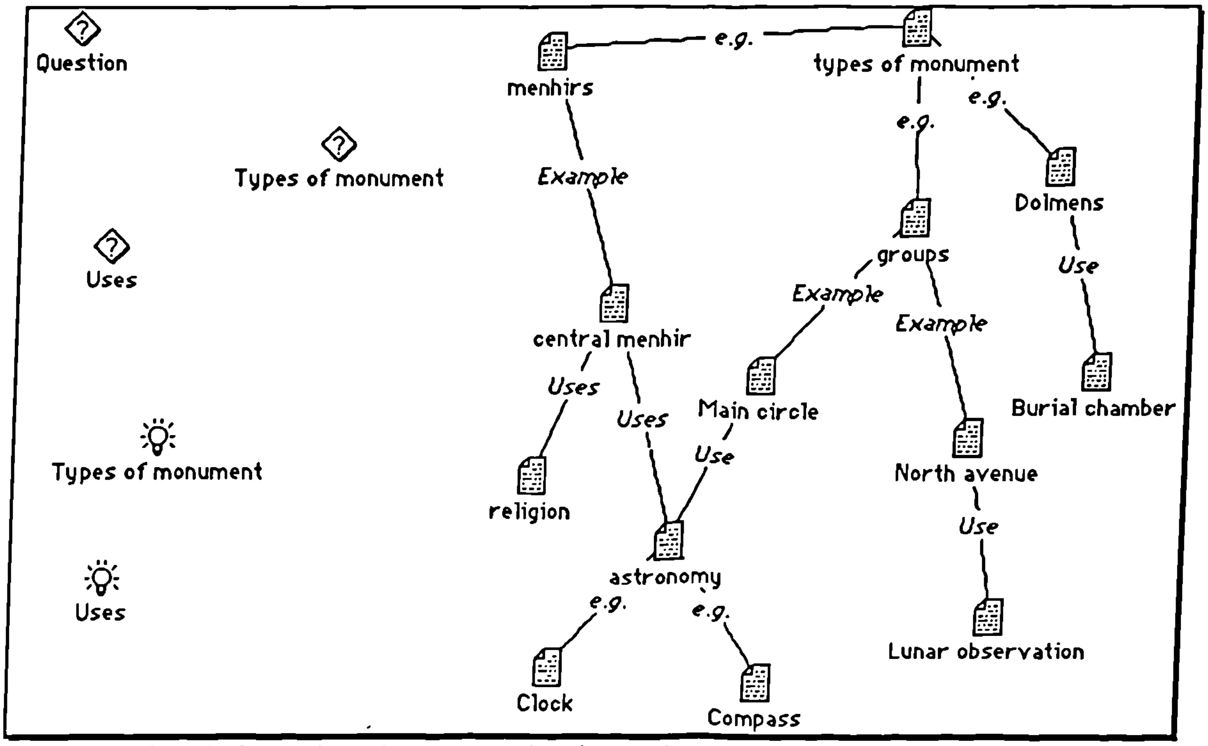


Figure 5.4 A typical map from the augmented tool condition.

5.3.2.5 What is the source of the effect on learning?

So far we have discussed learning and search as if they are separate processes, which can be supported in different way. Whilst this is in many ways true, it is also the case that both processes, or sets of process, are interdependent. For example, the successfulness at which an individual can find something in a hypertext system of book (supposing that the hypertext is logically structured) will be easier if that person knows something about the domain: if one wants to find X and one knows that X is related to Y, and one knows how to find Y, then one can do worse that going to Y and starting the search there. On the other hand, learning is dependent on the ability of the learner to find information that they are interested in: if learners do not find the correct information, or they find the wrong information then they are not going to fulfil their goals no matter how much of the material they can recall.

Given that we obtained a significant increase in the post-test scores for both groups of knowledge mapping subjects, it seems interesting to discuss what the source of this effect may be. There are a number of possibilities, which are not necessarily mutually exclusive.

The first factor that needs consideration is that learners were somehow spending more time reading the information screens in the knowledge mapping conditions when compared to the note taking condition. Table 5.5 shows that contrary to this prediction: it is note-tool subjects who spent the most time reading. However, lower efficiency indices for both groups of knowledge mapping subjects may indicate that although subjects were spending roughly similar amounts of time reading the information as a whole, this time was distributed differently. Subjects using the knowledge mapping tools tending to spend more time on a smaller set of screens, and note-tool subjects tending to spend less time on more screens. These difference were not statistically significant, but it could be that the using the knowledge mapping tools were forcing learners to go into more depth than if they were simply making notes.

A more plausible factor is the possible confounding effects of time on task. Table 5.5 indicates that although there was no significant difference between the time spent reading information across the conditions, there was a highly significant difference among the times for the interaction as a whole, which was basically a function of the time spent using the tool, since no other factor was significant. Table 5.8 shows a correlation matrix of some of the main variables.

	Scores	Total time	Time using tool
Scores	1.000		
Total times	0.405 *	1.000	
Time using tool	0.426 *	0.938 **	1.000
Time on screens	0.143	0.341	0.030

Table 5.8 Correlation matrix of principal variables for all three conditions

* significant to $p < 0.05$. ** significant to $p < 0.01$

To test the possibility that time on task was the main cause of the effect we performed and analysis of co-variance (ANCOVA) using time using the tool as a covariant. This revealed that when time was taken into consideration there was no significant main effect of condition on score ($F[1,18] = 3.137$, $P = 0.09$). This obviously causes some problems interpreting the results: could it be that the effect was merely due to subjects spending more time processing the information? Possibly, but it must be stressed that simply spending more time processing information does not necessarily increase learning (Craik and Watkins, 1972); what is important is the amount of time that the learner is meaningfully engaged in activities that aid retention and comprehension, such as elaborating, organising and so on. This last stated point could indicate a possible source of the effect; it is known that forcing subjects to organise words increases the degree to which they can recall the words at a later date (Mandler, 1967). Something similar seems to be happening here: when total time is decomposed into its subcomponents of time using tool and time reading screens as above, the largest single predictor of the score on the post test is the time that subjects spent using the tool, whatever that tool was (note tool, knowledge mapping tool, augmented knowledge mapping tool). Thus it seems that is not how long subjects spent reading the materials (so long as they read long enough to access sufficient information), it is how long they spent summarising and knowledge mapping.

Table 5.8 is rather limited since it groups together subjects from all the conditions, Tables 5.9 - 5.11 show the results for each of the conditions, the purpose being to ascertain whether the above finding is true for all conditions, or just an artefact of collapsing the conditions into a single correlation matrix (there is also an additional variable, map score, that I shall discuss in due course).

	Score	Total time	Time on screens
Score	1.000		
Total time	0.049	1.000	
Time on screens	0.500	-0.115	1.000
Time using note tool	0.049	0.318	0.016

Table 5.9 Correlations for note tool condition

	Score	Total time	Time on screens	Time using tool
Score	1.000			
Total time	0.517	1.000		
Time on screens	-0.135	0.383	1.000	
Time using tool	0.654*	0.381	-0.166	1.000
Map score	0.622*	0.082	-0.636	0.538

Table 5.10 Correlations for knowledge mapping tool condition

	Score	Total time	Time on screens	Time using tool
Score	1.000			
Total time	0.147	1.000		
Time on screens	0.379	0.387	1.000	
Time using tool	-0.039	0.863*	-0.166	1.000
Map score	0 598*	0.693*	0.753*	0.334

Table 5.11 Correlations for augmented knowledge mapping tool condition

* Significant to $p<0.01$

It can be seen from the tables that total time only correlates highly with scores for the knowledge mapping tool condition. For the note tool condition the only reasonably high correlate with score is the time spent on the information screens, with the time spent taking notes having little relationship with score. For the knowledge mapping condition total time, time using tool and map score all correlate quite highly with score. For the augmented knowledge mapping condition, only map score has a reasonably high correlation. What are we to deduce from these data? First of all due to the small sample size these data should be treated with some degree of caution, it is probable that they occurred by chance. Setting this aside for the moment, and treating the effect as real leaves us with the question as to why the use of the knowledge mapping tool correlated highly with the final score whilst time using the note tool and augmented knowledge mapping tool did not.

A possible explanation is that the amount of time spent taking notes did not correlate with final score because learners tended to use it to copy down bits of the text (either verbatim or in summary form) without attempting to organise it in the form of an overview. This is one of the functions of notes in the real world, they are made so that we do not have to remember information. Subjects using the knowledge mapping tool on the other hand are encouraged to organise notes into an overview; the extent to which they did this (we can get a rough guide by time using the tool) would correlate with the score on the questions. The low correlations for the augmented knowledge mapping tool are likely to be due to the fact that many of the activities that they were instructed to use the tool for were not directed towards learning; a fair proportion of the time was spent formulating questions and creating question and answer nodes. It is likely that these activities had little effect on the degree of learning; thus subjects who spent a large amount of time creating questions did not necessarily score any higher on the post-test than those who spent less time doing this.

A further reason which may account for the noted effect is that because the knowledge mapping tool was novel it made learners more motivated to learn the material than if they merely made notes. This is a potentially damning criticism; it implies that when learners become familiar with knowledge mapping tools the effects noted in this study may reduce, perhaps to zero. This is a criticism that is very hard to escape; only long-term studies with learners familiar with knowledge mapping tools could provide evidence to the contrary. It is, however, worth examining how salient the novelty of the knowledge mapping tool would be in this context. All subjects for this experiment used tools that were novel to them. None of the subjects had ever used a hypertext system before; a surprisingly large number (about 20%) had never used a word-processor before, and 90% had never used a Macintosh before. Thus the overwhelming majority of subjects were encountering a wide array of novel features, and it seems stretching the point to argue that an additional novel facility, the knowledge mapping tool, would have much additional effect on motivation when placed in an array of unfamiliar artefacts.

Novelty could conceivably count against the learner. Subjects in this study had only limited experience using the knowledge mapping tool, familiarity with the tool *could* lead to a reduction of the motivating effects of novelty, assuming that they exist, but this may be offset by positive effects of learning to used the knowledge mapping tool more effectively.

Perhaps the most compelling single reason is that learners in the two knowledge mapping condition are being encouraged to organise the notes that they made. Some weakly supportive evidence for this position comes from correlations between objective scores for the knowledge maps, and the final score on the post-test. It is assumed that a well-formed knowledge map should contain the following attributes: a large number rather than a small number of nodes, as many concepts should be identified as possible, and superordinate concepts should be differentiated; concepts should be linked to show relationships; relations should be given meaningful names; names should be explicit rather than general. Therefore, a relatively objective index could be obtained simply by marking the maps using these criteria. Each of the maps were marked and a point was given for each node, a point for each link and so on until a final score was elicited. When these scores were correlated with the final score for each subject, it was found to be 0.62 for the knowledge mapping condition (the second highest correlate behind time using tool), and 0.6 for the augmented knowledge mapping condition (the highest correlate in this condition)—see Tables 5.10 and 5.11. Both of these correlations are significant to $p<0.01$. the greatest correlate obtained for any of the variables, including total time. This result suggests that subjects producing well organised maps are tending to score higher on the post-test than those producing less well organised maps. This result could be interpreted causally: that subjects who score better than average do so because they are devoting more of their time to organising and structuring the information that they are working on; or, alternatively, both the degree of organisation and the scores on the post-test may be due to some underlying factor such as motivation or meta-cognitive strategy, which is accounting for them both. Again, there is no way of knowing this from the results of this study, and it is something that needs to be tested empirically.

5.2.3 Summary of quantitative results

Knowledge mapping, therefore, seems to have some beneficial effect on learning, and that this effect is one of generally enhancing performance on both relational and factual information, rather than overview type questions. This does not necessarily mean that knowledge mapping is not having a differential effect on the acquisition of the overview, it could be argued that by constructing a graphical overview in the form of a map, one is requiring learners to organise their ideas at a high level, which in turn is having a knock on effect: factual information being more easily retained because there is more structure to the learners ideas. This is something that has been observed widely (Mandler, 1967; Meyer, 1984; Meyer, Young and Bartlett 1989,).

Use of the augmented tool appeared to have no effect on the goal directedness of the strategy; that is, subjects using the augmented tool spent roughly the same amount of time on irrelevant screens as those using the note tool and knowledge mapping tool; and they actually saw fewer, on average, of the screens that were central to answering the questions.

5.2.4 Qualitative results

In addition to being interested in the effects of knowledge mapping on learning, we were also concerned with the way that the actual tool was used. In order to evaluate this, screen recordings were made which could allow us to observe the process of map construction.

5.2.4.1 Investigating the process of knowledge map construction

Knowledge mapping tools, it is argued, can support the organisation and assimilation of knowledge and ideas. The maps in this study showed different degrees of organisation, based on how specific subjects were in specifying relationships between pairs of concepts. Four types of organising behaviour was elicited during the observation process: spatial clustering, nameless linking, the use of superordinate link names and the use of structural links.

Spatial clustering. This is where learners use the spatial features of concepts such as proximity to and distance from other concept to denote relationships. Figure 5.5 shows evidence of spatial clustering, with three clusters denoting information relating to the structure of the stone circle (the five nodes in the middle left), its function (four nodes at the top right) and its builders (two nodes, bottom right). Although at first blush these clusters may appear to be a post-hoc reconstruction of events, by observing the screen-recordings the subject could observed dragging the nodes into the parts of the screen that they occupy on the diagram. Ignore the links for the moment; these were added later and indicate another type of organising behaviour.

Nameless linking. A more specific from of organising is by using nameless links to declare an, as yet, unqualified relationship between concepts; relationships are posited between concepts, but the specific relationship is not specified. Figure 5.6 shows an example of this. In this example the links are not strictly speaking nameless, but all apart from one are numbered with respect to the order in which they were created, the names therefore bear no relation to the concepts that they link.

Superordinate link names. The final and most precise from of organising observed was executed by linking concepts together and providing a label for what the objects have in common. Note this learners are not structuring, these links because there is apparently no attempt by the subject to try to integrate the concepts by specifying an explicit relationship. Instead the name specifies commonalities and differences among concepts. In Figure 5.6 the three link names relate to commonalities between the linked concepts.

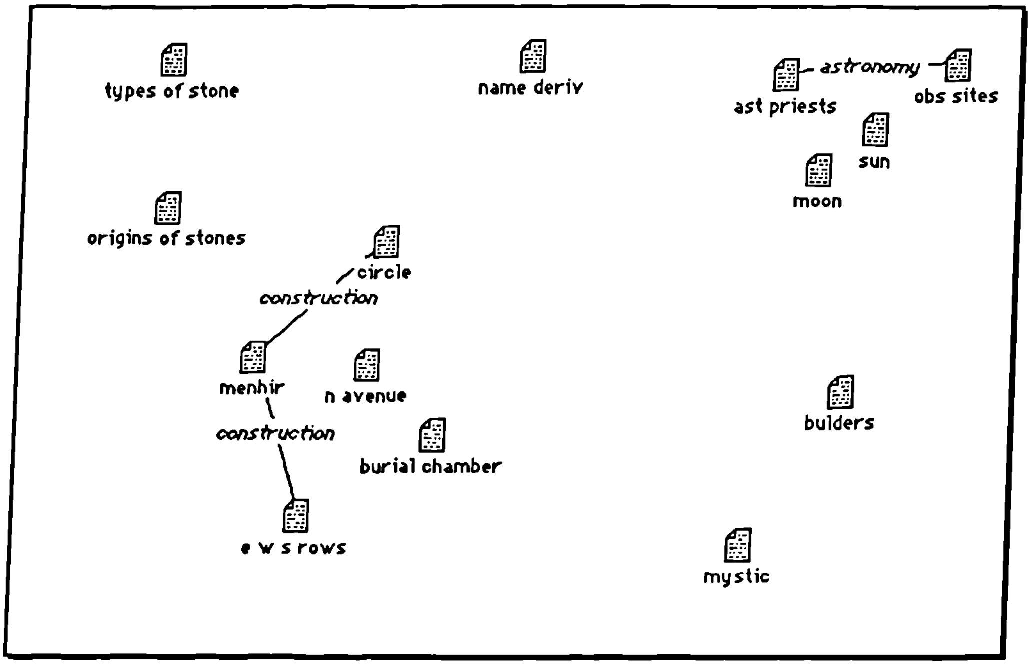


Figure 5.5 Map showing failure to link, spatial clustering and superordinate link organisation.

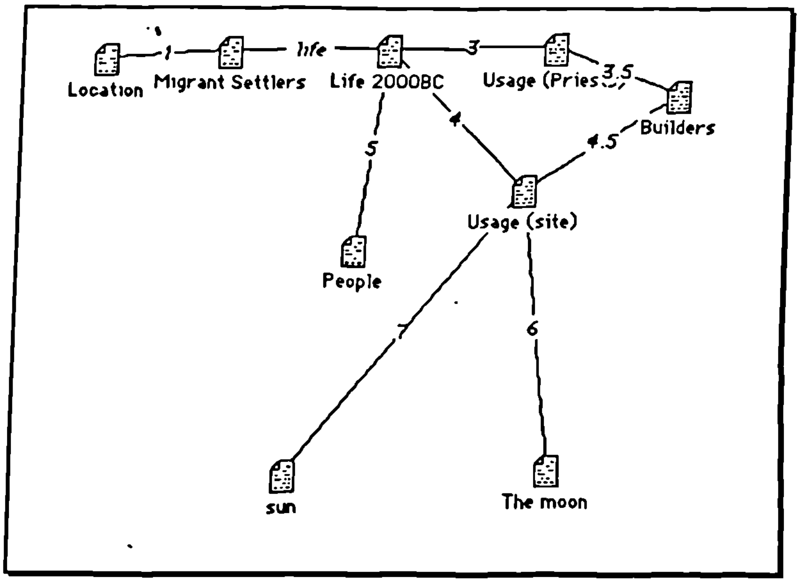


Figure 5.6 Map showing arbitrary link names being used to organise information

In contrast to superordinate link names, the use of *structural links* show an attempt on the part of the learner to indicate the specific relationships between pairs of linked nodes. In general structural links tended to be hierarchical, part of type relationships although other link types were used. Figure 5.7 shows a map from the study that contains a large number of structural links, for example the relation names *a component of, part of* and *built by*. All state in precise terms the relationships between concepts.

On average there were slightly fewer structural links than organisational links created (4.1 compared to 4.9).

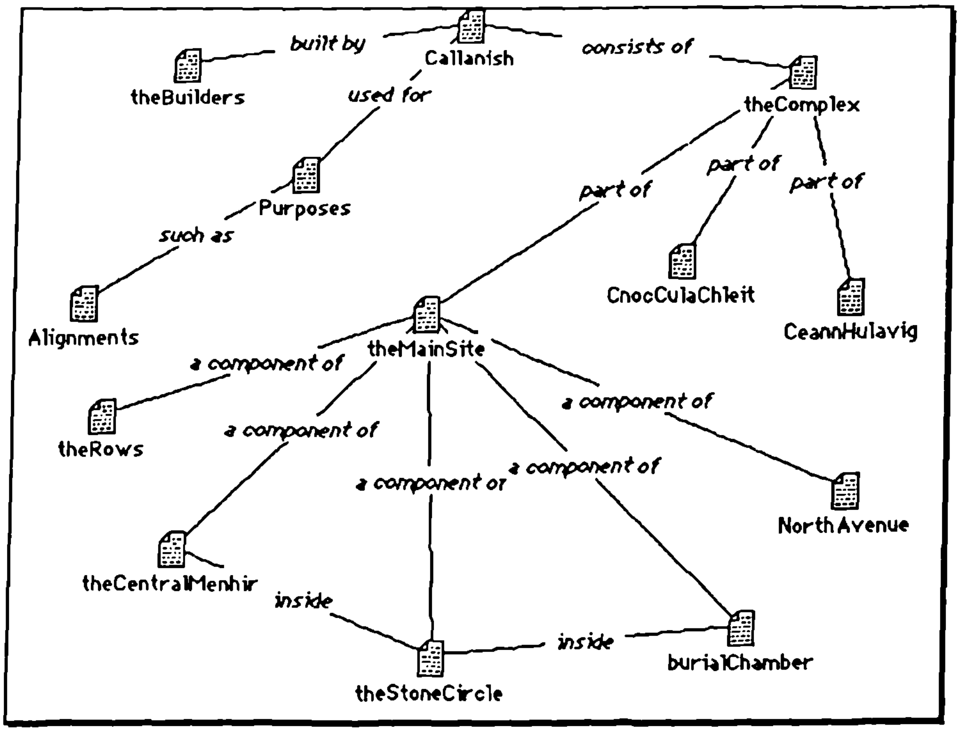


Figure 5.7 Map showing a large number of structural relationships

5.2.4.2 *The relationships between organising and structuring*

Ferguson-Hessler and de Jong (1990) looked at the sorts of learning activities students display when using physics texts, they found five subcategories of activity that they termed *integration*, these are:

(1) Recognition and emphasis of salient integrations within the text.

(2) Integrating knowledge by writing summaries, outlines, etc.

(3) Imposing structure on ideas within the text.

(4) Clarifying assumptions and checking relationships.

(5) Visualising the relations by drawing graphs, networks and so on.

These activities, it is claimed, are engaged in a roughly sequential manner, although no activity is mandatory, or a necessary prerequisite of others. Note also that activity (5) will not apply in this case since knowledge mapping requires learners to perform this activity as a matter of course. What Ferguson-Hessler and de Jong's scheme does imply is that each of the activities provides a certain output that can be used by other activities; for example: recognising and integration can give rise to summarising activities which explicate the integrations further; structuring the information can give rise to clarification or visualisation activities. Ideally knowledge mapping should not only encourage the engagement in the aforementioned individual activities, they should also allow the smooth progression between different categories of activities, with the output of one activity or process feeding into another. As we have seen this may not necessarily occur. Learners using links to organise their ideas may not be able to use them to impose structure; often concepts, some of which had been spatially organised, remained unlinked (see Figure 5.5 for an example), and concepts that had been linked using organisational links often remained so, with little attempt by subjects to specify them as structural relationships. This last point may be explained by subjects' apparent reticence to revise their maps: an average of only 1.6 revisions were made per subject during the course of the interaction; links that had been used for organising would have to be deleted, or at the very least renamed if they are to be replaced by structural links. As a result the ability of the tool to encourage knowledge structuring as opposed to knowledge organising will be severely restricted.

The lack of revision does not only have implications for the formation of structural relationships; it is known that during the process of learning a learner's understanding of the domain will change, often resulting in some degree of restructuring (see Chapter 1). If knowledge maps are supposed to be representations of the learner's understanding, and their role in communication suggests that they should be, then they should also be restructured accordingly.

5.2.4.3 Accounting for these results

These problems may in some ways be artefacts of the study itself. First the session may have been too short, if subjects were given more time, or more demanding tasks then they may structure and revise their networks more than they did here. Second, because the task had no importance to the subjects outside of the experiment, it may mean that they were prepared to make do with inadequate maps more than they might do if the task was considered important, for example if it was a course requirement. Third, since the material itself was novel, and in many ways not 'real' material, this may also have implications for the way that networks were constructed. Fourth, subjects only had limited experience with knowledge mapping tools. None of the subjects had ever used such a tool before, and it may not be too surprising that they produced maps that were perhaps not as well structured as they might have been. Novak and Gowin (1984) argue that in order for knowledge mapping to be a truly effective learning activity, learners must put in many hours of practice constructing networks. Given the limited experience subjects had using the tool the results were surprisingly good (see Figure 5.7 for a very good example of a map). In truth, any attempt to evaluate computer-based tools is always going to encounter problems as to how well the results can be generalised to other tools, tasks, materials and subjects. This study should therefore be seen as contributing information to a growing corpus of data which can inform our understanding of issues. On this point there is some evidence that problems analogous to those encountered in this study occur in real-world situations (Fischer, 1988; Shipman and Marshall, 1993) and it is likely that they are not simply artefacts of this particular study. The issues mentioned above have implications for the effectiveness of knowledge mapping tools in general. One of the assumptions behind tools such as SemNet is that forcing learners to link concepts encourages them to think about structural relationships. The results of this study indicate that simply requiring learners to link is not enough as links can be used for purposes other than structuring such as organising. Additionally all knowledge mapping tools seem likely to suffer from the problems caused by the reticence of learners to impose structure on knowledge and restructure extant networks that they have created, simply because they require learners to use semi-formal representations. Shipman and Marshall discuss a number of cases where learners apparently fail to organise and structure effectively in areas as disparate as design and office filing. It seems that the desire of individuals not to commit themselves to a structured representation prematurely may be a major stumbling block for knowledge mapping. On the topic of restructuring Fischer (1988) states that: "Despite the fact that in many ways users could think of better structures, they stick to inadequate structures, because the effort to change existing structures is too large."

5.3 CONCLUSIONS

This study showed only two significant differences between the three conditions: that on average knowledge mapping subjects performed better than note tool subjects; and that subjects using the knowledge mapping tools spent more time using this tool that did those subjects using the note tool. All other differences were slight and non-significant. Perhaps of more interest than these quantitative results are the great variations in the maps that were produced.

In sum when one tries to unpick the tangle of data that this study produced there are five tentative observations:

- Knowledge mapping seems to be useful for learning; and, although it is not immediately clear why, it may just be that it forces learners to spend more time engaging in meaningful learning activities.

- Proposing questions does not necessarily have an effect on goal directedness of search.

- The augmented knowledge mapping tools, as used here, sit at the confluence of bottom-up and top-down note taking processes, and as such can make integration difficult.

- Subjects revised maps very little, and revisions tended to be trivial rather than significant.
- Subjects, in the main, tended to avoid the use of specific relation names.

Chapter 6 looks at some of these issues and tries to devise a way to encourage learners to be more methodical in the maps that they produce. The next chapter looks at knowledge maps that were constructed as part of a psychology course to ascertain whether the qualitative differences noted in this experiment are peculiar to the particular demand characteristics of this study.

6

Evaluation of paper-based knowledge maps

6.1 INTRODUCTION AND MOTIVATION FOR STUDY 3

One of the problems with Study 2 is that many of the qualitative issues of knowledge map construction could be interpreted as being due to the fact that the task was somewhat artificial, and because subjects were simply told to construct maps to help them learn, knowledge mapping was a secondary task. In order to obtain a clearer picture of the issues involved in knowledge mapping it seems useful to look at knowledge mapping in a variety of situations, Study 3 was an attempt to obtain data of a different sort.

Study 3 investigated knowledge maps on the topic of human memory constructed as part of a cognitive psychology course. It was anticipated that the maps produced would throw up some interesting issues in knowledge mapping for two reasons: first, because the maps were to be assessed as part of the course they make the students more motivated to produce well-formed maps; and second, because the domain was more complex and open ended than the Callanish materials. Of course an obvious difference is that in Study 2 the material was presented using hypertext, whilst in this it was not. Such considerations are largely irrelevant to the process of knowledge mapping: in both studies the task was to assemble information together, making explicit links that are tacit in the text.

The maps were discussed during tutorial sessions so it were possible to get some idea as to how useful students found the maps in an educationally valid situation. Unlike study 2 the conditions were not controlled: no variables were manipulated, neither was the process of map construction observed. It was felt, however, that valuable insights could be gained into the issues of knowledge map construction, and their use in communicating ideas to others.

6.1.1 Subjects

In total 35 undergraduate students were required to construct the maps as an assignment as part of their cognitive psychology course. Only 29 of the 35 assignments handed in contained meaningful maps (some students preferring to ignore the instructions and produce textual summaries); so only 29 were analysed.

6.1.2 Instructions

The instructions were give to students on a printed sheet of paper (see Table 6.1). In addition verbal instructions were given to the students at a lecture preceding their tutorial, together with examples of knowledge maps.

The purpose of this tutorial is to gain a clear overview of key issues in work on normal human memory. Rather than write an essay or 'short note' answers on this topic, I would like you to generate (if possible on a single sheet of paper) a diagram summarizing your understanding of:

- The structure of human memory
- The processes operating within that structure
- Key theories and evidence (if appropriate)

I will give some examples on the sort of thing I have in mind in the lecture. Obviously the diagram will be rather high level: it could show what you consider to be the key points, and key relationships and influences. It may look like a number of boxes or headings joined by lines and arrows – but its up to you to choose a notation that you feel most effective.

You may well like to supplement you summary overview with some notes. Much of the relevant information can be found in Chapter 5 of Eysenck and Keane.

Come to the tutorial prepared to discuss and justify you overview. A possible exercise at the tutorial will be to work jointly to combine the overviews which people bring along into a single 'best solution'.

Your diagram and notes should be handed in at the end of the tutorial: your tutor will add comments and return the work to you later in the term.

Table 6.1 Printed instructions given to students.

6.1.3 The task

For this exercise, as can be seen from the instruction in Table 6.1, students were required to produce an overview summary of normal human memory. Prior to this task students had been to several lectures on human memory but this was the first time that most of them had attempted to integrate the information. The task was novel in that there is no such map available in any of the text books available to students, and no such overview was given by the lecturer. In fact, whilst text-books often contain diagrammatic representations of process and structure (such as the famed modal model), there is frequently little attempt to abstract across particular theories, nor to integrate evidence into this structure; and integrations that do occur tend to be tied specifically to subcomponents of memory, such as working memory, or to specific models of memory.

It was anticipated that as well as being an interesting exercise from the point of view of exploring knowledge mapping, students would find the task of educational benefit. Students encounter a bewildering array of different 'types' of memory over the lecture course and from background reading; a cursory glance at a cognitive psychology text book revealed the following types of memory: short-term, long-term, working, autobiographical, flashbulb, procedural, declarative, episodic, semantic, prospective, retrospective, echoic, iconic and haptic. Many of these memory systems overlap with or are modifications of other memory systems, some terms are used interchangeably, whilst others are distinct systems in there own right. The task of attempting to draw together these systems would, it is hoped, aid students in gaining some form of overview of the topic.

The fragmentary nature of memory is not something that is confined to student textbooks, indeed Barnard (1987) reflects that:

> "...theories in cognitive psychology tend to be un-integrated both with respect to the computer metaphor and in relation to the different components of mental life. The fragmentary and paradigm-bound nature of cognitive theory has been widely discussed......as has the apparent inability of experimental research to deliver cumulative theoretical developments......of unifying principles for information processing..."

Although referring to cognition in general, and not just memory research, this statement indicates a major problem in learning about memory in general, and the task outlined here in particular. Forming coherent integrations about the structure of memory is difficult, not just because it is complex, but also because many integrations do not exist. How, therefore, can students integrate the structure, process and evidence relating to memory if psychological researchers have consistently failed to do so? However often the journey is better than the arrival and the same is true for knowledge mapping; it is the process of floundering in the conceptual quagmire that leads to enlightenment, not simply the end result.

Some of the factors of interest were:

(1) The overall macro-structure of the maps produced,

(2) The degree to which information relating to the three subgoals of process, structure and argument were included,

(3) Integrations between any of these bits of information,

(4) Any misconceptions or areas of poorly defined knowledge.

The following sections investigate these issues.

6.2 ANALYSES OF KNOWLEDGE MAPS

Analyses of the maps took place at several levels: a broad analysis of the overall structure of the maps, a more detailed analysis of the successfulness by which students achieved the goals of the task, and an analysis of various deficiencies in the maps.

6.2.1 Analysis of macro-structure

Any text or discourse will tend to have some structure that has been selected by the speaker or author to serve some rhetorical goal. The structure, however, is rarely pure because the author has to work on a number of levels. Thus, argument may be mixed with exposition; chronological sequencing may at times be tempered with a need to explain outcomes before premises. Nevertheless one structure, the macrostructure, will tend to dominate as an organising framework for the discourse. Similarly, maps such as those produced here will contain their own macrostructure, on which the lower level other conceptual relations are hung. Hence the purpose of this section is to try and establish the macrostructures used by students, and to see what differences, if any, there are across different students.

Four macrostructures seemed apparent: those which used information flow, those that were based on some form of structural hierarchy, those that dichotomised process and structure, and those that were based upon a network. Table 6.2 (below) shows the proportions of students adopting each of these macrostructures.

Type	Number.	%
Hierarchy	3	10
Information flow	20	70
Structure versus process	5	17
Network	1	3

Table 6.2 Number of students showing each type of macrostructure

The next sections discusses these in more detail.

6.2.1.1 Structural hierarchies

Maps based on the structure of memory take the form of dividing memory up into the postulated components and further sub-dividing these hierarchically into finer distinctions. Three of the 29 maps were of this sort; Figure 6.1 shows an example. Here the first order concept of 'modal model' is divided up into three second order components: 'sensory store', 'short-term store' and 'long-term store', which are then subdivided into their various subcomponents. To a large extent the material covered by these maps is similar to that covered by the information flow models, indeed the information flow models often have a hierarchical feel to them. The differences, therefore between these two types of structure are subtle, but seem clear enough to preserve the distinction.

6.2.1.2 Representations based on information flow

These maps took as their macrostructure the familiar (to psychology students anyway) three-store model, based upon the serial processing of information. Figure 6.2 shows this structure quite clearly. Information from the outside world enters the cognitive system by way of the perceptual pathways into a sensory buffer (iconic or echoic memory), then passed to short-term or working memory and finally to long-term memory. The majority of maps were of this type accounting for 18 out of the total of 29 maps analysed.

6.2.1.3 Process versus structure distinction

Five of the 29 maps were of this type. This type of map takes as its basis the distinction between the structure of memory and the processes that operate in it. This distinction is largely historical, in the 1970s there was a shift in research from that based around trying to determine the structure of memory to studies attempting to specify the processes which operate in memory. This distinction was used as a dichotomy in the lecture courses, and occurs in many text books (see, for example, Baddeley, 1990). Figure 6.3 shows this type of map. The central concept of memory is divided into two sections relating to its hypothesised structure, and the processes that are postulated. Note that in the structure there is a three store process model consisting of sensory memory, short-term memory (STM) and long-term memory (LTM); which forms the central organisational core of the process-based maps, although in this case it is subordinated by a different global structure. These maps are quite different to the hierarchical and information flow models, and often contain information not included by these other two types. Figure 6.3 contains information relating to 'Levels of processing theory' and 'Two process theory' which is seldom included in the hierarchical and information flow maps.

6.2.1.4 Network maps

The final category of map that was noted was one that appeared to have little global structure at all, although only one of the maps was of this type. Maps of this type had local structure, that emerges from the relationships between linked concepts, there is no immediately obvious macrostructure, making it hard to read the map.

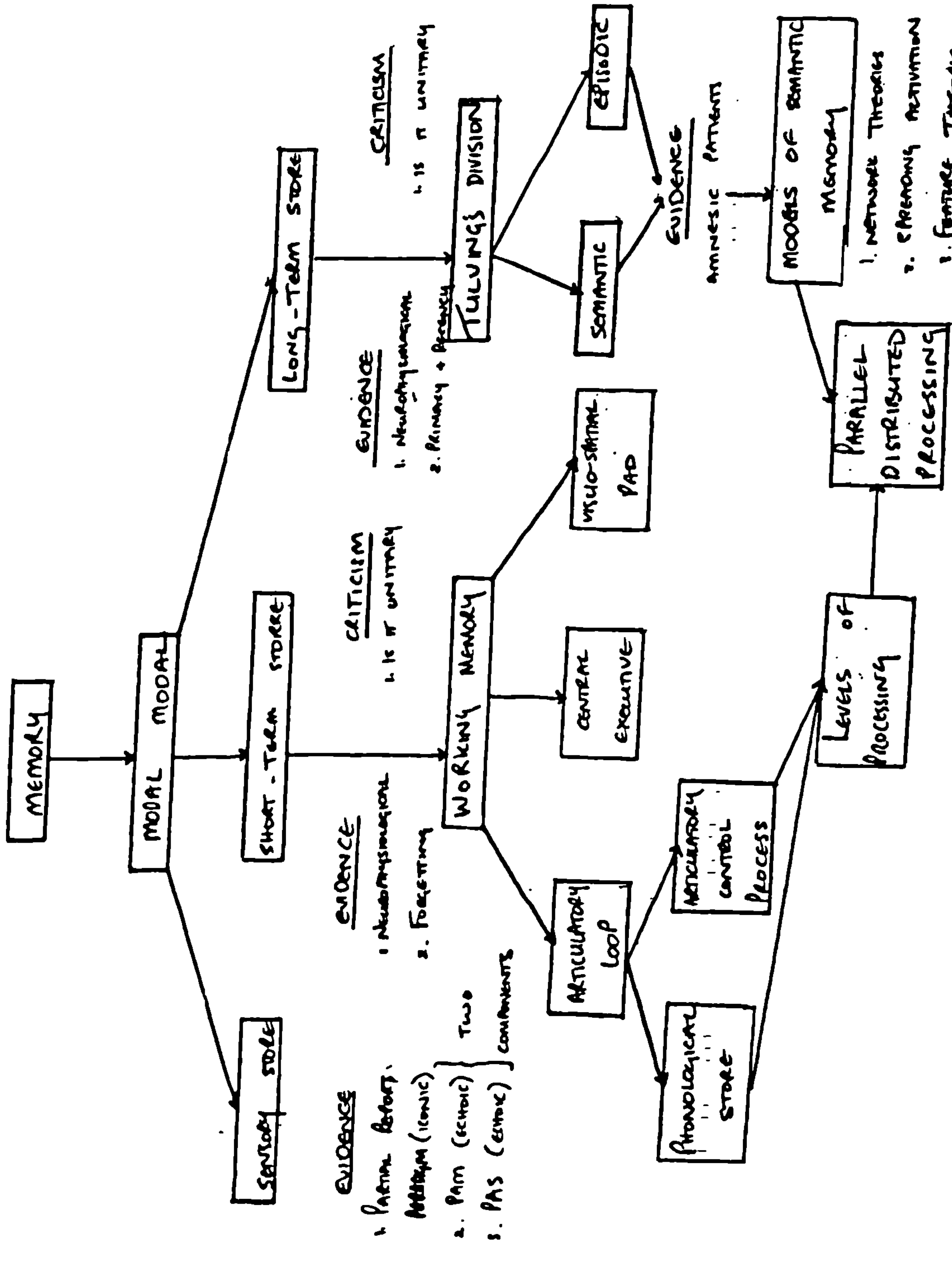


Figure 6.1 A hierarchical map.

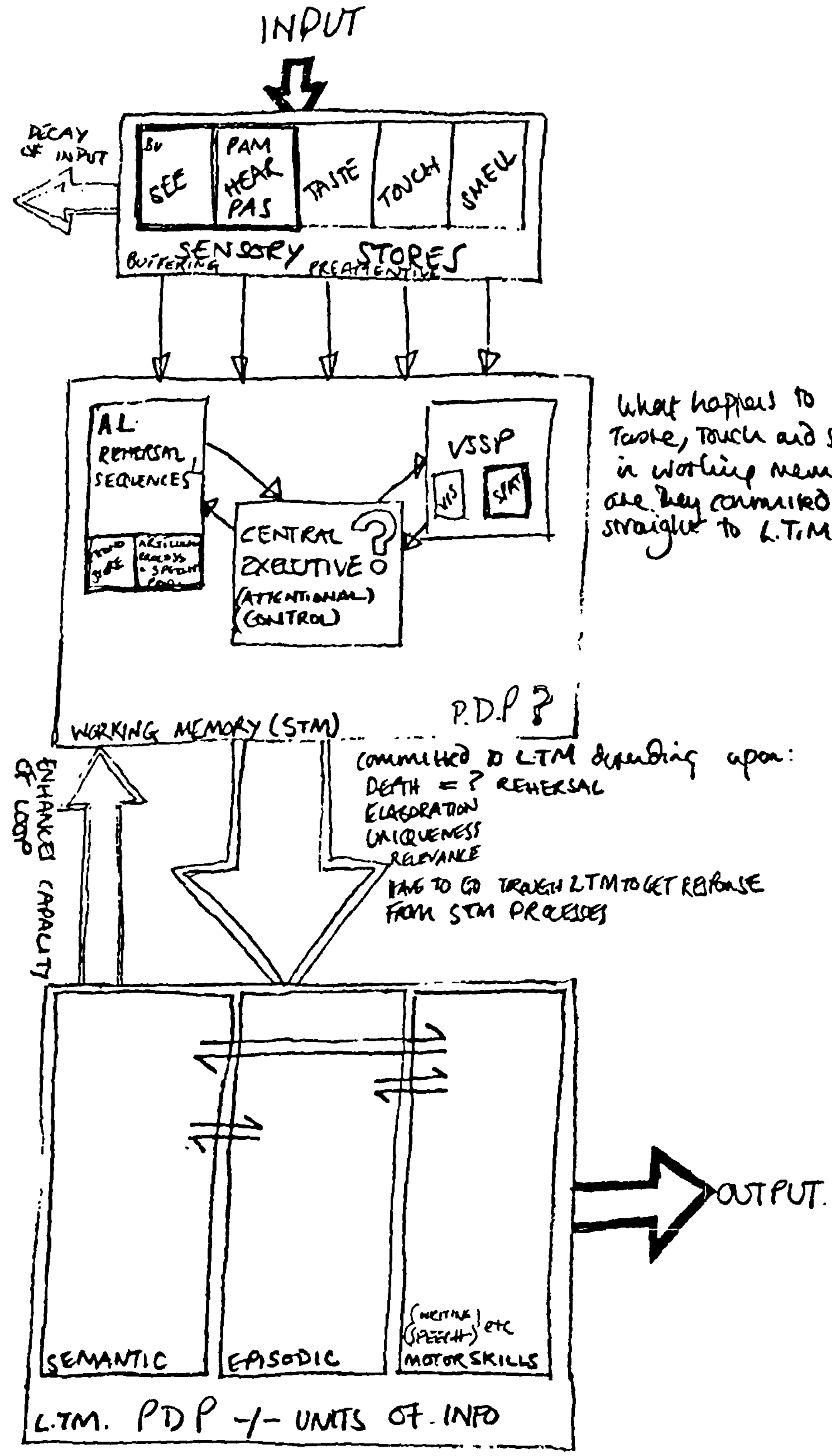


Figure 6.2 map based on information flow

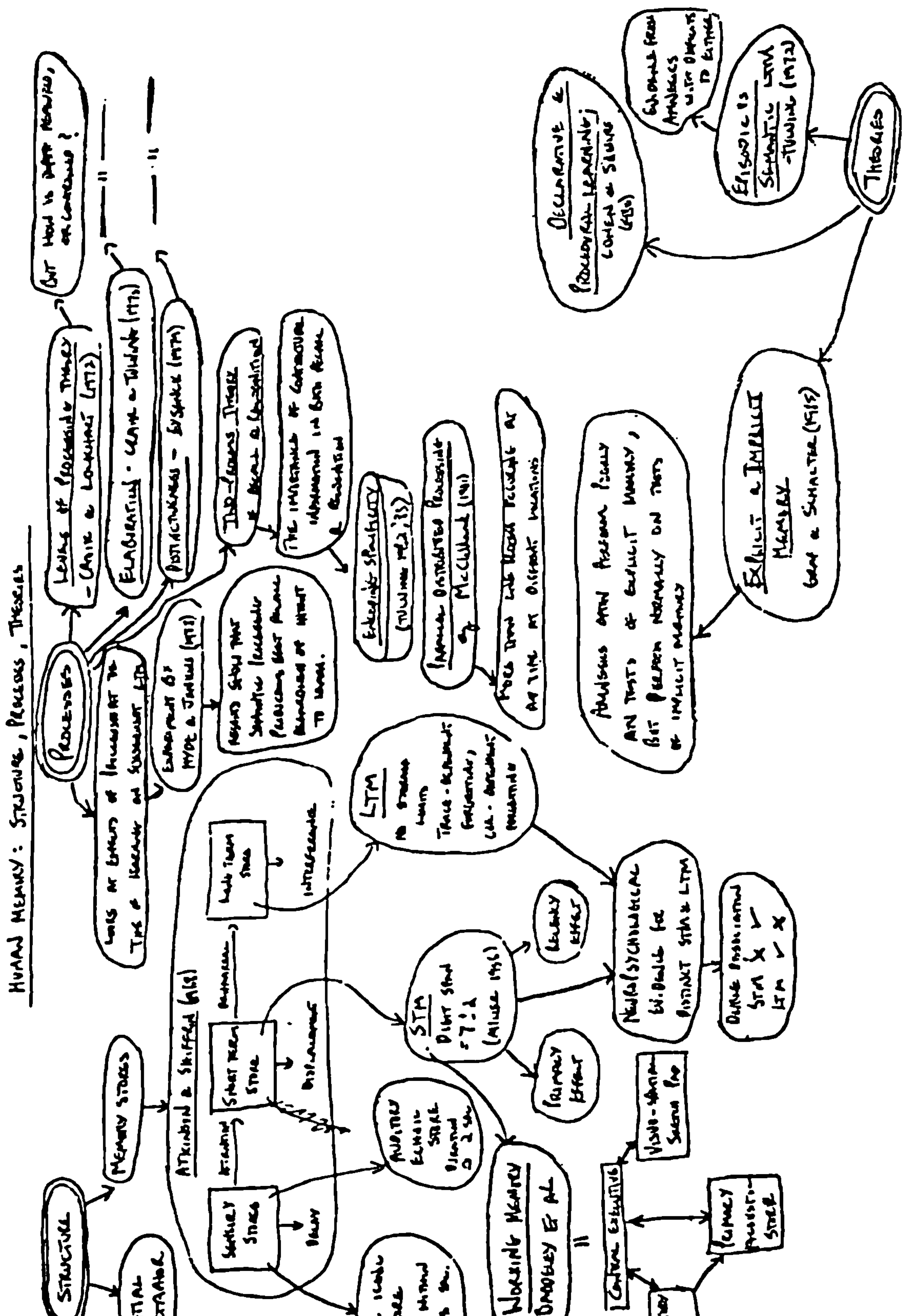


Figure 6.3 a map dichotomising process and structure

6.2.2 Summary of macrostructure

It is relatively easy to see where the students obtained inspiration for some the macrostructures above. In constructing a map, clues as to which approach to take can be drawn from the way that the material is divided up in the lecture course and in text books. The lecture course split the topic of memory up in to its three components and use the modal model as a map to indicate which bit of memory the lecture was on. To a lesser extent the lecture course and the text-books make distinctions between process and structure of memory. It seems that subjects using these macro-structures were simply using frameworks available to them. The network models, on the other hand, seem to be maps that are created without the use of any global orienting framework, it seems that the student who created this considered the relations between concepts without trying to fit them into any macrostructure.

6.2.3 Achievement of task goals

In order to gain some insight into how well students were able to represent the information in network form the maps were scored by the experimenter. Maps were marked as objectively as possible, a list of essential concepts and relation names was drawn up and the maps were checked to see in they contained these essentials. No marks were deducted for incorrect or inappropriate maps, although these were noted (see Section 6.2.6. Relationships were given an extra mark if the name of the relationship was given. For example a relationship between short-term memory and long-term memory would be given one point if it was unlabelled, and two points if it was given a meaningful link, for example 'storage' or 'rehearsal'.

The average mark for the maps was 29.5%, ranging from 6.5% to 56.5%; these results appear quite low, but it should be borne in mind that they were marked much more stringently than tutorial essays would have been. Additionally the maps revealed a number of misconceptions about the domain which I describe in section *; before this I shall briefly describe the ability of the students to information relating to the structure, process and evidence relating to human memory.

6.2.3.1 Representing structure

The structure of memory was marked according to the number of vital components that the maps contained, and the existence of important relationships between these components. All of the maps should contain the concepts of sensory memory, working memory and long-term memory; the sub-components of these specified and the relationships between these should be explicated. In general all students produced good maps relating to the structure of memory, scoring an average of 34.5 percent for this part of the task. Structural relationships that were often omitted were the relationships between declarative memory, procedural memory and working memory; and the relationships between sensory memory and working memory (here distinguished from short-term memory).

6.2.3.2 Representing processes

Students performed less well representing the processes that have been postulated to occur in memory, interestingly students who dichotomised between structure and process performed no better then those who took a more holistic approach to representing their ideas. Processes that were commonly included were those relating to attention, rehearsal, retrieval and storage of information; those that were commonly omitted were the processes of spreading activation, a method of search proposed for memory; knowledge compilation, where skills become automated; and the processes of encoding specificity and the levels of processing model of learning and recall.

6.2.3.3 Representing argument

Providing evidence for the process and structures described in the networks seemed to pose the biggest problem to students; indeed 10 of the students included no evidence whatsoever in the networks. Most of the other evidence included by other students took the form of citations, for example the existence of the three component model described in Section 6.2.4 is often substantiated with the citation: "Atkinson and Shiffrin, 1968". This is at least partly because stating evidence can involve a l t of text; revealed by the observation that a lot of students used text for this part of the task; with some incorp rating pointers to this text in the maps itself, such as reference names or numbers. One of the more serious problems with representing evidence in maps of this kind is that it reflects the historical process or argument; the devel pment f theories in psychology is cumulative, with ideas building upon, modifying and, perhaps, refuting other ideas. Showing this dynamic process is difficult in maps of this nature, in many ways knowledge maps represent a single story, n t multiple c mpeting arguments. For example many students included both working-mem ry and sh rt-term memory; whilst in many ways these are often used to describe the same the retical entity, more technical definitions, such as those of Atkinson and Shiffrin 1968 and Baddeley and Hitch 1974) refer t systems that are subtly different, the Baddely and Hitch m del being proposed to acc unt for certain explanatory sh rtc mings f the riginal idea. Students tended to side-step these complex arguments by stating simply that the working memory superseded short-term memory m del, or w rse they simply linked working memory to sh rt-term memory, providing no explanati n of the relati nship.

6.2.4 Synthesis

6.2.4.1 Misconceptions and mis-misconceptions

One of the claimed benefits of knowledge mapping is that they can act as sensitive barometers of conceptual change (Novak, 1990); Fisher (1990) argues that they offer the teacher: 'a window on the students mind'. The ability to reveal misconceptions in student understanding is therefore and important attribute of knowledge networks. A number of misconceptions were identified by one of the tutors on the cognition course, which were addressed during the tutorial session. An example of one of these is show in figure 6.2. This clearly shows that the retrieval of information is seen by this student as coming out of long-term memory and into space, instead of back into short-term memory as is generally supposed. Staying with this map in Figure 6.2 for a moment, the text to the right hand side of the central box asks: "What happens to taste, touch and smell in working memory? Are they committed straight into long-term memory?". It could be argued that this student asked herself this question prior to the creation of this map, on the other hand the question may have arose as a consequence of having to be explicit about the relationships between the components of memory and different sensory inputs. There is no way of telling which of these answers is correct (the text was only noticed some time after the papers had been handed in), but it does seem that since the map mentions taste, touch and smell in the 'sensory memory' box, and this box is linked directly to the working memory box, that the question arose during map creation: the task forced the student to be explicit about things that she did not know.

One must, however be wary to read too much into apparent misconceptions. For example a number of students appeared to be using the concepts of short-term memory and working memory interchangeably which would be a serious misconception. A naive person reading the map in Figure 6.1, for example, might assume that information flows into short-term memory, then into working memory, and then into long-term memory, which might indicate that the student who drew the map had some misconception about the relationship between short-term and working memory. Reading the copious notes that this student attached to the knowledge map indicated that this was not the case: it was merely a failure to indicate that the arrows mean different things. Some mean hierarchical relationships, some mean information flow, and so mean that a particular idea was replaced by another idea, as is the case in this example. The reason for this lack of explicitness could be because, as noted above, students may wish to tell a coherent story, or perhaps because they found it cumbersome or difficult to express certain ideas in the network. The amount of supplementary text that students used may indicate that this is close to the truth.

6.2.5 The students' perspective

Although no formal attempt was made to assess students opinions of the knowledge mapping exercise, by the use of questionnaires and so on, discussions with the students as part of the tutorial sessions revealed that opinions were generally positive. Most students found the task difficult, which is unsurprising considering the breadth of knowledge – a good size text book's worth at least – that they had to distil into a page summary. It was the opinion of many of the students that the task forced them to think about the relationship between, for example, semantic memory and declarative memory, or procedural memory and episodic memory in ways that may had not done previously. Other students were less positive about the notion of knowledge mapping, some felt that they could have spent their time more profitably composing an essay; others felt that knowledge mapping merely required them to restate old ideas in a different form, without the discipline that essays forced on them.

6.2.6 Relationships to the maps produced in Study 2

Looking at the maps constructed for this exercise there are both differences and c mmonalities between these and the maps reported in Study 2; in this section I shall look first at the differences and then the similarities.

6.2.6.1 Differences

One of the main differences between maps produced in this study and the Callanish maps was the general coherence of the maps: the memory maps, in the main, being more integrated than the Callanish maps. Perhaps the main reason for this was in the way that the maps were constructed; which is probably a combined function of the task and the level of understanding of the students. The task in the Callanish study was for subjects to learn information that they had little *a priori* knowledge about from a text-based source; the task in this study was to represent knowledge that learners should already be in possession of using a network notation. Both tasks are concerned with learning; although superficially the memory mapping task does not seems to be a learning exercise, it is in the sense that the task requires students to integrate ideas that are not normally brought together during the lecture course in which they take part.

As discussed in section 5.5.2.4 the Callanish maps were constructed bottom-up: that is the various elements of the network: nodes, links and so on were created during as the learners understanding of the domain was still developing, additionally The result of this is that much of the network was constructed before the learners had any sort of a schema for the topic area. This meant that towards the end of the study when subjects were trying to link the concepts together, many of their ideas would have changed, leading to them either altering the names of the existing nodes, or making do with what they had. The low number of revisions indicated that most subjects made do, or *saticefised* (Simon, 1955) with what they had, rather than investing effort reconstructing the network. In the maps created here, most of the students had some form of domain schema before the constructed the network allowing them to work more in a top-down form, working forwards from their goals, rather than backwards from the learning materials.

A second difference is that the memory maps were more consistent across individuals than were the Callanish maps. The Callanish maps showed wide variation in content, structure and the degree to which the concepts were linked, the links that were present named, and whether the names were superordinate categories or relationships. In contrast the memory maps were more homogeneous, with the only real variations being in global structure and content—whether items were included or not. This homogeneity is again probably to do with the differences in task and background knowledge of the students: the Callanish maps were constructed to be disposable, mere tools to support the learning process; the memory maps were for public appraisal and therefore students were probably more conscientious in producing the maps. It is impossible to know, for example, how many trial runs students constructing the memory maps had before producing a map that they were satisfied with: some of them certainly appear to be at least second drafts.

6.2.6.2 Similarities

There were a number of similarities between the Callanish maps and the memory maps. Perhaps the most important was the general tendency to avoid providing link names for many of the relationships. As mentioned in the preceding section links that were named tended to be ones that were familiar to them from text book diagrams: the 'attention' and 'rehearsal' links between sensory and short-term memory, and short-term and long-term memory respectively. Other commonly occurring links, for example between the three components of working memory, were often left. Of course not all links need names, in cognitive psychology most links are unlabelled: standing for information flow or subsystems interacting with one another. Many of the links used by students in the maps were of this sort, particularly where cognitive models were copied. However, not all links were intended to denote information flow or interactions, some denoted generalisations, integrations and so on and it was often difficult to identify what a link meant in many cases. Some of these omissions may have been the result of oversights on the part of the students, others may have been due to the student simply being unable to come up with a suitable link-type.

6.3 DISCUSSION

The maps were generally of a reasonable quality containing most of the things that were required by the task goals. However there are some issues that come out of this study that cast a degree of doubt on the usefulness of knowledge mapping as a learning exercise, depending on what role they are supposed to fulfil. As a means for a tutor to extract the learners understanding, which is as they were used here, they can elicit lively discussion, and even occasionally allow the tutor to identify misconceptions that the student may have (see Figure 6.2 for an example of this). Alternatively, as I have indicated, there is always the problem that what may appear to be misconceptions at first blush, are in fact merely the result of clumsy execution. Whatever reason, problems such as this where students appear to have misconception may indicate that they are not reflecting upon the product of their activities quite as much as we might want them to.

The lack of precision would also cause problems for those who advocate knowledge mapping as being a route to collaborative learning. It has been suggested that learners may share knowledge maps that they have created, using them as a form of tertiary learning material (Mayes, 1992). Many of the maps here, particularly the better ones, would communicate most of the central ideas concerning memory. However, the failure to indicate what many of the links mean, for example, whether they indicate the flow of information, subset / superset relations or integrative relationships may cause confusion to others.

If one sees the process of constructing maps as being of educational benefit then there are still a number of issues that need sorting out. Many of the students reported that they found the process of trying to explicate their ideas in the form of a network to be challenging and, often, thought provoking. Indeed some claimed that they were forced to consider the topic in ways that they had not done before, some even claiming that they were forced to reflect on the information more than they would have done if they had merely used text to convey their ideas. Such anecdotal evidence can be taken too seriously: how would one know what ones actions would have been under different conditions?

As a final caveat, this study suffers like Study 2 from the students being untrained and unpractised in knowledge mapping; after all what would be the quality of an essay if one had never written one before? Essays, however, are the primary means of assessment in psychology and many other course; essay writing is a skill that needs to be learned in order to pass examinations, knowledge mapping is not. Here I echo the conclusion of the previous chapter when I stated that knowledge mapping tools must

- Encourage as far as possible uniform structures to aid communication.
- Encourage the naming of links to encourage learners to be explicit.
- Encourage reflective learning.

If knowledge mapping tools do not fulfil these criteria then they place too much emphasis on the learners' own metacognitive skills, reducing their effectiveness in learning.

A possible way to aid the above three goals is to provide students with support for constructing explicit, communicable maps, this is the subject of the next chapter.

7

Knowledge structuring tools

7.1 INTRODUCTION

Studies 2 and 3 indicate that when few restrictions are placed on the maps that learners construct, the maps that are produced can often be *idiosyncratic; and there is doubt* as to the extent that such maps encourage learners *to examine their* understanding and communicate ideas. I suggested in the last chapter that more structured representations may help learners in this respect. In order to do this we need to investigate the demands placed on the student by the *particular goals of the learning situation.* In the social sciences the chapters of student text books tend to be structured according to some argumentative theme, and one of the requirements of these courses is that the students remember, understand and can critically evaluate arguments on their own. The centrality of argument to disciplines such as psychology led to this being adopted as the supportive structure for knowledge mapping tools.

7.2 REPRESENTING ARGUMENT

Languages for representing argument are not new, indeed work on propositional calculus and syllogisms dates back to the Ancient Greeks. However recent attemp s have been directed towards representing human thought in the real world, rather than in the highly constrained micro-worlds of logic and mathematics. Motivation for this research comes from two fronts: from AI research that attempts to develop machines that can behave in human-like ways; and from research into the development of computer-based tools to support the process of human reasoning.

There is a common link in that both of these areas are dealing with human knowledge and behaviour which typically appears irrational, arbitrary, heuristically based and non-deterministic; computer programs are deterministic systems and require that information be formally represented and procedures well specified. Resolving this apparent contradiction has led to AI practitioners developing formal theories that can cope with messy information and incomplete knowledge such as modal logics, fuzzy logics (Zadeh, 1983) and qualitative reasoning techniques (Hayes, 1985). This problem has also been taken up by researchers developing computer-based tools to support human reasoning, who have been exploring the development of semi-formal representations, both to aid communication among users, and to allow their information to be manipulated by a computer. Semi-formal representations therefore contain elements of both formal notations, such as mathematics of logic, and informal notations such as natural language.

The goal, therefore, is to develop a notation which is tractable both by computer and human. Natural language is tractable for humans, but is too poorly defined to be read by a machine; similarly propositional calculus is too formal and constrained to support many of the tasks that humans wish to perform. Finding this middle ground is not easy, as we shall see in the next section when attempts to develop notations and tools are discussed.

7.3 NOTATIONS AND TOOLS FOR REPRESENTING ARGUMENT

Before some of the approaches to the development of notations and tools is discussed, it is important to discuss the differences between the characteristics of a grammar, a representation and a tool. A grammar related to some abstract specification the various primitive elements and linking rules relating to the notation which is free from the particular way that it is represented. In this sense a grammar can be described using a number of formalisms, using node-links, propositional calculus or even natural language. For example, conceptual graphs (Sowa, 1984) can be instantiated either as expression of predicate logic or in graphical form, without changing the meaning of the expression, a concept known as *informational equivalence* (Larkin and Simon, 1987). However, merely because two representations contain the same information does not mean that they have the same implications for the end user, there is a further factor, *computational efficiency*, which relates to the degree to which the representation facilitates use, irrespective of the grammar. Some of these issues were discussed in Chapter 3.

Of perhaps more direct importance are the effects on the user caused between the notation (= grammar + representation) and the tool which implements it. A notation that is perfectly tractable may be wholly unusable if it is incorporated into a tool that makes manipulating it difficult. An example may be with a programming language: the extent to which the language is usable is going to be determined not just by the formalism itself, but by the quality of the interface, the editors that are provided, the debugging facilities and so on. In the same way the successfulness of any tool is going to depend upon match between the operations permitted, and the various cognitive and task demands that the user brings to bear on the tool.

It is extremely difficult to separate out the differential effects of the grammar, the representation and the tool and test them independently; even using paper-based exercises brings their own particular demand characteristics. However, to some extent we can prescribe features the system as a whole must have in order to facilitate ease of use, such a set of specifications are outlined by Green.

7.3.1 Green's cognitive dimensions

Green (1989, 1990) outlines what he calls cognitive dimensions of artefacts. Here the goal is to reduce the wide range of domain, task and system dependent issues into a small number of abstract factors that he invites us to consider as being general to the use of designed artefacts in general and computer systems in particular. Green states that his task is after that of the physicist who reduces all phenomena in the material world down to three orthogonal dimensions of time, length and mass; he makes no claims that the dimensions are orthogonal, just that they may be treated as such for the purposes of design and evaluation. The dimensions are: hidden dependencies, viscosity, premature commitment, role-expressiveness and hard mental operations.

Hidden dependencies can be described as the degree to which a change in one aspect of a system that effects a change in another may be hidden by the computer interface. Such a facility is well known to anyone who has ever tried scheduling rooms: a minor change in the status quo can cause huge changes down the line, sometimes making it necessary to change the whole schedule. In tools such as those described in this chapter, adding or deleting a node can necessitate changes which resound throughout the whole network. The degree to which the system changes as a result of this, and if it makes changes how it reveals these to the user are important consideration. Of course not all systems are 'intelligent' enough to make such changes themselves; none of the concept mapping tools do so, neither do some of the tools mentioned below.

Viscosity is Green's second dimension, it gets its name by analogy to hydrodynamics: a viscous substance is resistant to local changes in shape, a fluid one permits such changes more easily. Tools that are resistant to change may result in the user shying away from making necessary alterations to the network, simply because it involves the user exerting too much effort. The implications of this are that users may be tempted to make do with old, inefficient structures that are unrepresentative of their current thinking; something that was pointed out in the quotation by Fischer (1988; see section 5.3.4.3) and was observed in Study 2.

Premature commitment to structure occurs when a system demands that a user formalises their ideas, or commits themselves to an action before they are ready to do so.

Occasionally this is possible, especially when the task is very familiar; however we are often not able to specify what we are going to do in advance, even in tasks that we may consider, at first blush, to be trivial. In their well-known study, Hayes-Roth and Hayes-Roth (1979) showed that human planning behaviour is often opportunistic: plans are constructed in abstract, and fleshed out later on during the actual task. Additionally, their behaviour showed deviations and modification to plans that were constructed. The increasingly popular view that actions are situated, performed as responses to moment-to-moment changes in the demands of the task, also seems to prescribe that expecting individuals to think ahead in this way is unrealistic. The implication is that systems should not demand too much of the learner in terms of up-front specifications for action.

Premature commitment can also be problematic due to the reconstructive nature of human understanding. In Chapter 1 I outlined that the process of learning often involves some degree of conceptual change, such that not only in information added to concepts to make them richer, but the conceptual framework that holds them together can itself undergo various forms of restructuring. Ausubel's theory of conceptual development (Section 3.2) outlines some specific examples of these types of change. There is no guarantee that a network created at time T as a reasonable representation of a person's knowledge, is likely to be perceived in the same way at a later time T'. Moreover the actual process of creating a map can result in some form of conceptual change, which compounds this problem. Experiences with knowledge structuring and authoring tools shows that this is very much the case, and has led to a number of researchers stressing that the tool should avoid requiring the user to commit themselves too early (Monty, 1990; Marshall & Rogers, 1992; Shipman & Marshall, 1993; Shum, 1991).

Role-expressiveness is the clarity to which a notation, or sub-set of a notation communicates the essential features of the task to the user. We have already seen problems with role-expressiveness in the maps analysed in Studies 2 and 3. If nodes and links are left unnamed, or the network is tangled, then it makes the task of parsing the network for meaning difficult. Graphical tools should encourage the construction of networks that are meaningful and clear to other users; and any pre-existing node types (for example as is the case for all of the notations below) should be as transparent as possible, and suitably different from other types to be distinguishable avoiding confusion.

Hard mental operations. Green's recommendations for computer system design states that one should avoid the necessity for the user to perform difficult cognitive tasks as much as possible. Tasks that involve overloading working memory by requiring learners to remember strings of unrelated digits, or requiring information to be retrieved from long-term memory, should be avoided. Whilst this principle is fine when designing an operating system, spread-sheet or word processor, it becomes less clear cut when the aim is to promote effective learning. Learning naturally requires learners to perform difficult cognitive operations, that is what learning is; "no pain, no gain" is appropriate in this context. However, it is the case that not all cognitive tasks that the learner may perform need necessarily be conducive to effective learning: it is known that if working memory is overloaded by task-irrelevant verbal information then verbal learning of target material is severely impaired. This is why the Lisp tutor Anderson and Reiser, 1985) tries to avoid working memory overload by providing a goal stack that displays the various sub-goals that the learner is executing to help them keep track of where they are in the problem space, obviating the need for them to retain the information, and helping them to perform the task in hand. Similarly knowledge mapping is an attempt to focus learners efforts on thinking about relations that are of educational value by directed reflection.

7.3.2 Toulmin argument structures

In the 1950s Stephen Toulmin (1958) proposed a system of logical reasoning that attempted to define a science of logic. This was both descriptive, in that it could be used both to study the way that people reasoned; and also prescriptive, suggesting better methods of argumentation. Toulmin's basic model consists of six elements and a number of different relationships, the primitives are: claim, datum, warrant, backing, qualifier and rebuttal.

A *claim* is some assertion that is made about the area of argument such as 'Love of money is the root of all evil' or 'Schizophrenia is caused by dysfunctional families'. The purpose of argument is often to ascertain the plausibility of a claim, this is done by using the other elements in the Toulmin model.

A *datum* is some fact or set of facts about the world which is pertinent to the claim. It is usually some generally accepted fact normally derived from direct observa on. Often a datum can be interpreted as a claim: in the example shown in Figure 7.1 below) he datum that 'Harry was born in Bermuda', may, in some arguments, be evaluated as a claim: was he really born in Bermuda, or was his birth certificate forged? Thus the elements in Toulmin structures are not fixed within the categories that they are ass gned, they shift according to the goals of the argument.

A *warrant* is the part of the argument that allows us to make the inference that the datum implies the claim. Often the information contained in the warrant will be tri ial, at other times the warrant may indicate non-sequitur, where a datum is erroneously supporting a claim that it should not do.

The *backing* can help here as it requires the explication of the bases of the particular principles expressed in the warrant; the backing may often be left out as it is often meaningless to include. In an example where the claim 'schizophrenia is caused by dysfunctional families', is supported by the datum 'High correlations between dysfunctional family behaviour and schizophrenia'; the warrant may be 'Correlations can sometimes be seen to imply causation', and the backing will be something quite nebulous such as 'standard scientific practice'. Occasionally articulating the backing may be profitable as it may be attacked later on, but often it may be otiose, as in the schizophrenia example.

The *qualifier* is another item that is often left out of Toulmin structures. This allows the person making the argument to indicate the strength by which they can make the claim given the datum, warrant, backing and likelihood that the rebuttal is true. In the trivial example below it is relatively easy to assign a weight to the link given that some probability estimate is likely to be available. On the other hand, real-world arguments may be more difficult to qualify in this and some form of subjective measure may be required. This has the problem that even if different people agree on the fundamentals of the argument (claims, data and so on) there may be contention as to how strongly the claim can be made.

Finally, one of the most important parts of the Toulmin model is the *rebuttal*. This articulates information that, if true, would refute the claim even if the other information were true. In Figure 7.1 irrespective the truth value of the datum, warrant and backing, if the rebuttal is true then the claim is false: Harry would not be a British subject. This makes the rebuttal very powerful, perhaps too powerful in many cases. In reality a rebuttal represents a counter position and is therefore an argument in its own right.

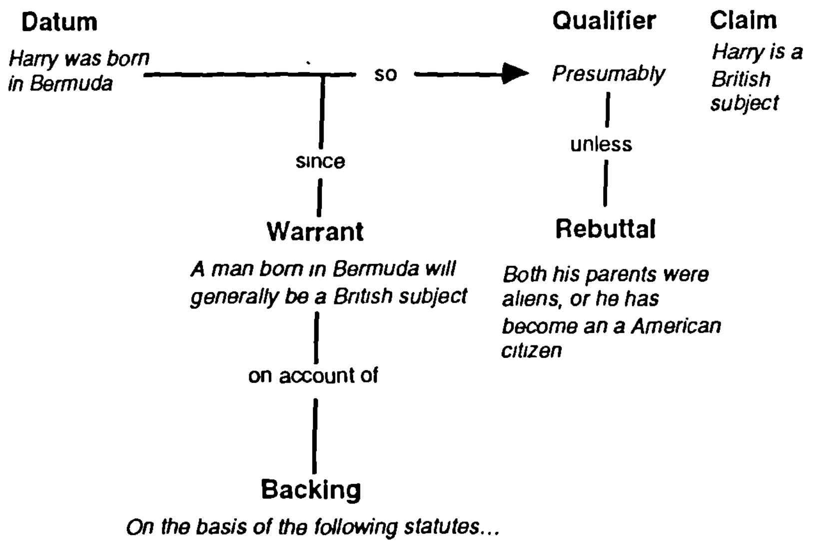


Figure 7.1 An example of Toulmin's argument structure.

Toulmin structures have been widely cited in the articles about computer-based support for argumentation, however they have been criticised particularly after attempts have been made to use Toulmin representations for design rationale.

One of the problems is that Toulmin arguments are designed primarily to represent how single claims were arrived at, and what conditions are necessary for us to accept or reject a single claim. Often in the real world we are more interested in articulating and evaluating *competing* claims. For example in the above example (Figure 7.1) suppose the rebuttal is found to be true, then what? The notation provides little support or encouragement for the formulation of alternative claims if the original claim is found to be incorrect. In real world arguments there is often at least one alternative claim, and Toulmin makes it hard to represent this. Additionally, often we may wish to represent claims that are negated by the current information: a conjecture that schizophrenia is a developmental disorder may be attacked by the datum that people tend to develop it after adolescence. Toulmin structures, because they work on supportive relationships would necessitate expressing the claim in the negative: 'schizophrenia is *not* a developmental disorder' which may then be supported by the above datum. Clearly this is a cumbersome way of operating and has led some researchers to modify the model by allowing *attacks* relationships as well (Birnbaum *et al*, 1980).

There are also issues concerned with the context dependency of the elements in Toulmin structures: as I mentioned above, a warrant in one situation may be a backing in another; one person's claim may be another person's datum and vice versa. Notwithstanding this, given some knowledge of the context and goals of the argument it is often relatively straightforward to get identify what a claim is; identifying the difference between a datum and a warrant may often be less simple, partly due to the exact meaning of the terms being unclear. This may result in rather baroque constructions to satisfy the notation. In the schizophrenia example noted above it is difficult to see whether 'High correlations between dysfunctional families and schizophrenics' is a datum or a warrant; and if it is a datum what is the warrant, and what is the backing (Lee and Lai, 1991) To refer back to Green's cognitive dimensions, the role expressiveness of the terms used in Toulmin may not be as they should be. Given a piece of information it is often difficult to decide what role it is playing in the argument.

The upshot of this may be that structures are idiosyncratic, and users may spend time worrying about problems that are not directly related to the goals of their task. Making knowledge explicit by using a notation is only useful to the extent that it forces meaningful reflection on the information being represented, and communicates this information to others effectively. If the effort is being diverted by working with a representation that is cumbersome then it may have negative, rather than positive effects;

particularly if the task is learning, where the individual is likely to have scant understanding of the information to be represented.

Perhaps the most serious restriction of Toulmin's model is that it represents argument at a fine granularity. Whilst this may be useful for some tasks, such as coding sentence by sentence transcriptions, representing information for the purposes of learning may typically require learners to incorporate a substantial body of information, containing a number of different claims. Toulmin structures are likely to be too low level for this purpose. Although many researchers have criticised Toulmin's model as being impractical, for the above (and other) reasons, it has been implemented in a number of tools that attempt to support the process of writing and learning (see Section 7.5). Although there is little evaluation of such systems reported using real users and real tasks.

7.3.3 IBIS, gIBIS and PHI

IBIS (Issue-Based Information System; Kunz and Rittel, 1970) was developed to represent the design process, and is based on the principle that the design of complex artefacts is a process of negotiation between different interest groups. During the process of development these groups (designers, programmers, customers and so on) pool their respective demands and perspectives to reach a design decision. IBIS has three basic entities: *issues* which relate to questions about the decision making process; *positions* which represent the stances of the various collaborators as they attempt to address the issue; and *arguments* which are justifications or objections to particular issues. Figure 7.2 shows an abstract representation of IBIS; it can be seen that in addition to being liked to other nodes, all three types of entity can be linked to members of their own type by relations such as generalise, specialise, and so on.

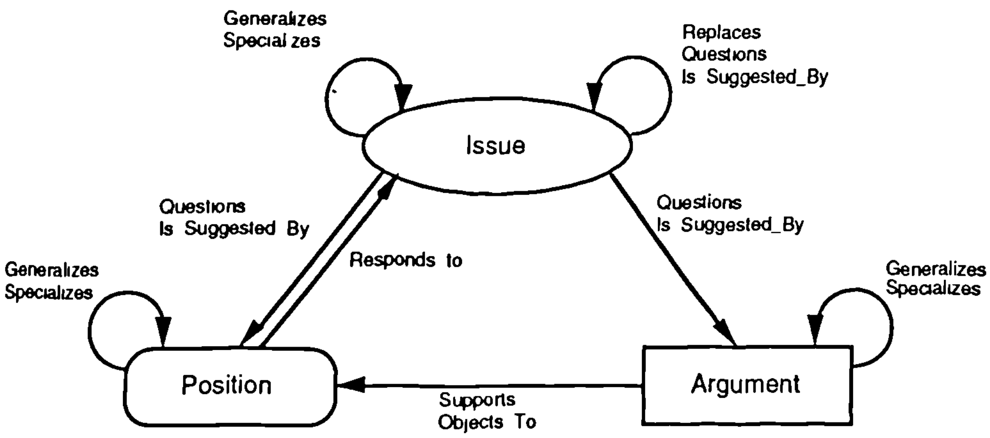


Figure 7.2 Basic syntax of IBIS (adapted from Lee & Lai 1991)

gIBIS (graphical Issue-Based Information System; Conklin and Begeman, 1988) is an instantiation of IBIS which was developed to support the design process. gIBIS offers two ways of viewing the developing representation: as a text-based outline, showing the node hierarchy; and as a network or browser. Superficially, at least, gIBIS shares features with Learning Tool (see section 3.5.2) which also has outline and network modes; although gIBIS has greater functionality. In addition to the three IBIS nodes, gIBIS also contains an "other" node that allows users to create their own specific instance and relationships, when the ones provided do not suffice.

A further development of IBIS is PHI (Procedural Hierarchy of Issues; McCall, 1987) which was developed to overcome some of the limitations of the original model. It allows quasi-hierarchical structures among the three main types of node. The semantics of these relationships depends on the types of nodes that are connected; for example, an issue is a child of another issue if addressing the lower level issue helps in addressing the higher level issue: in this sense the child issue acts as a sub-goal to its parent.

Both IBIS and PHI deal with information at a high level of granularity and the node types are specific to the range of tasks that they are designed to support. As such IBIS has been used successfully by a number of companies in its new format, CM/1 (Corporate Memory; Conklin, 1993). With regard to supporting learning, the IBIS notation may be of some use: the macrostructure of text often consists of some delimited topic of discussion (Issue), a set of assertions relating to this topic (Positions) and a set of arguments for and against the position (Arguments). However it is likely that more nodes types will be needed to encompass the granularity that arguments will need.

7.3.4 ARL and Euclid

ARL (Smolensky, Fox, King and Lewis; 1988) stands for Argument Representation Language, and is an argument notation developed for Euclid, a computer-based tool which supports collaborative argument. Smolensky et al draw a distinction between two components of reasoned discourse: content and structure. *Content* relates to particular principles, facts, laws and truths specific to the world of discourse; *structure* is more abstract relating to the types of assertions and relationships that make up a reasoned argument. Smolensky et al's claim is that whilst the content information is relatively specific to the domain of study, the structure tends to hold for many, often superficially disparate, domains. ARL ties together the content with the structure information, representing the structure in a formal manner, and the content information informally using natural language; ARL is thus referred to as a semi-formal language.

ARL is more complex than the IBIS and PHI notations discussed above, having more node and relation primitives. This is partly due to the fact it is designed as a general argumentation language, with specific emphasis on supporting academic argument requiring it to capture more subtle nuances of argument than do the others. In spirit, ARL is perhaps closest to Toulmin's model: both are general purpose, both have low granularity of representation and both are based around the analysis of claims. Unlike Toulmin, ARL has operators for assessing competing claims, rather than a single claim; it is a less prescriptive model providing informal primitives to be used; and it is more flexible, allowing the user to define his or her own argument primitives. The second mentioned point derives from the authors' desires to support less formal, more conversationally-based argument; rather than allowing only academic style arguments. Indeed, in developing ARL, the authors of the system analysed transcripts of different types of argument to identify the sorts of things that individuals typically use while arguing.

Since ARL contains a large number of primitives a full description would be rather superfluous but one which is worth mentioning in passing is known as *domains of assertion*. These are central to ARL, and are designed to capture an entire set of claims advanced by an participant in the argument. The participant may be real in that they are actually representing their own ideas, or this may be done by proxy. A person may, for example, appeal to some particular set of assumptions such as Skinner's behaviourist arguments in order to make some point; this may be represented as a domain of assertion. Domains of assertion can therefore be seen as a particular perspective or mind set based on a set of assumptions; it is therefore an argument in its own right, although the extent to which this argument is fleshed out depends on the goals and context of the particular task.

Euclid makes use of the ARL grammar to encourage the user to represent their arguments in a coherent fashion; it also supports the construction of writing by the progressive structuring of ideas, which accords with the Hayes and Flower's (1980) observations on the writing process. The premise here is that in the process of writing, initial ideas are likely to be produced by something akin to brainstorming. The products of this process will be unstructured notes, tentative suggestions, queries and so on. Later, as the user becomes more sure of their communication, they may start to impose structure upon their developing ideas.

Euclid supports brainstorming by allowing users to create general 'notes' nodes, in addition to any specific categories of node (claims, definitions, and so forth). When users have a clearer idea of the implicit structure of the argument that they are formulating then they can impose structure on the initially unstructured set of notes, this can be done both by linking up the nodes using typed links, or by changing the category of node to a more specific type that more adequately represents its role in the argument. Euclid makes it easy for users to change the structure once it has been created by allowing the cutting and pasting of both objects, relations, groups of objects and text. Thus Euclid attempts to overcome the problem of premature commitment, in two ways: by allowing progressive, rather than immediate structuring of ideas; and by providing tools that make it relatively easy to edit objects and relations that have already been structured.

Each element in Euclid's database keeps a record of all the things that it is linked to; moreover it stores these in such a way as to keep track on all the dependencies between elements. For example a claim, or a set of claims, may be asserted with a particular strength; this strength may be contingent on certain assumptions. If these assumptions are brought into questions Euclid could conceivably let the author know of this potential change, allowing the user to change the strength of the assertion accordingly. Euclid therefore makes the representation cognitively transparent, revealing the dependencies between objects and actions.

Euclid therefore builds upon the expressiveness and flexibility of ARL. However, the flexibility may be too great for learners uncertain about what terms to use; with the likely result being sub-optimal structures. In many ways Euclid can be seen as being somewhere between unconstrained concept mapping tools and the structured representations such as IBIS.

7.3.5 QOC

QOC (Questions, Options and Criteria; MacLean, Young, Bellotti and Moran, 1991) is a notation for constructing design rationale. Unlike gIBIS, QOC is not supposed to be a *record* of the process of design, but rather is an *artefact* itself, constructed alongside the thing that is being designed. The purpose of QOC-based design rationale is to assist designers in being reflective during the design process, by making them more aware of the various alternatives and reasons for selecting them, and to communicate these ideas to other people. Although couched in design terms, it can be seen that the goals of QOC are very similar to the goals of a concept map, which also emphasise the role of explicating knowledge and communication. Central to QOC is the notion of design space, which MacLean et al divide into two sub-components: decision space and evaluation space. *Decision space* consists of the design question (the goals of the exercise) together with all the possible alternatives for a particular artefact, expressed in the notation as options. For example, the decision space for a scroll-bar may include various options such as having the scroll-bar appear when the mouse passes over it, or having it permanently visible. Options can invoke other questions, which may be set as subgoals. In *evaluation space* the various arguments for and against the various options are advanced using criteria, which can either support a particular option, or object to it. A criterion may be some generally accepted principle of design such as: 'screen clutter should be kept to a minimum', or it could be some other constraint such as 'computational expense'. When there are no such criteria, the designers may have to construct a *mini-theory* which is an *ad hoc* principle relating to the particular options being evaluated. In the scroll-bar example, a criterion 'reduce screen clutter' may support the option of having a pop-up scroll-bar, and object to the permanent one. Thus are the various options evaluated, arriving, in the simplest case, with an option that predominates when all criteria, and there are likely to be many, have been considered; this should be the successful candidate.

QOC has been evaluated in a number of work situations (Shum, 1991) and has proved to be relatively successful. However, the representation is too rooted in design to be of much use as a tool for supporting learning. Unlike gIBIS which has general argument node types, QOC's nodes are heavily process based.

7.4 SUMMARY

The systems of argument and tool discussed above differ from each other in number of ways. Perhaps the most way of comparing them is on two dimensions: granularity and scope. Here scope is intended to mean something similar to expressiveness of the notation: all the possible things that it can express.

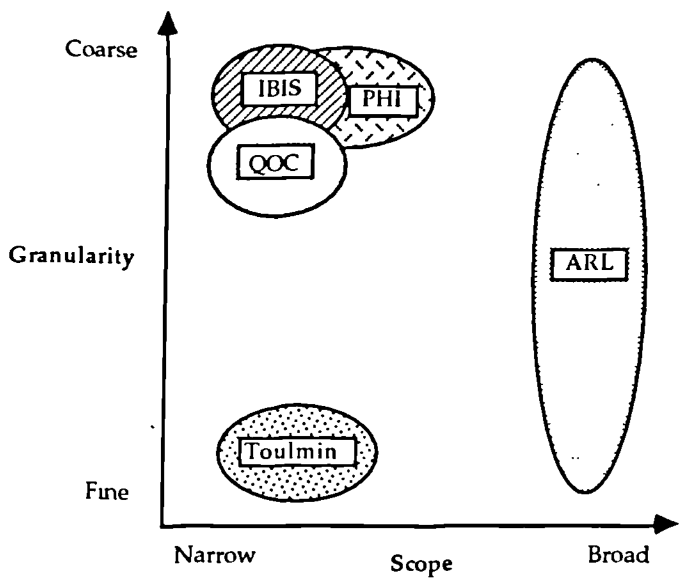


Figure 7.3 Comparison of the five notations discussed.

Toulmin's representation has perhaps the finest granularity: representing the internal working of a single claim; the scope of Toulmin structures is also quite low as it has quite specific node types and relations. ARL has a large spread of granularity, able to represent both low and high level components of argument. ARL also has a high degree of scope, its many primitives can express much more than the other notations discussed. IBIS, QOC and PHI operate at a high granularity and low degree of scope, reflecting their task-dependent nature. Figure 7.3 also gives some indication as to how flexible the notations are, here indicated by the area of the ellipses.

7.5 HYBRID SYSTEMS

The systems above are based on a single cohesive model of argument; other systems, however, use more than one representation, some of these are discussed below.

7.5.1 Writing Environment (WE)

Writing environment is related to AAA (discussed in the next section), differing in some of its representational formalisms. WE is designed to aid the process of writing by explicitly supporting the activities and operations involved. These activities are grouped into what are called *cognitive modes* that relate to the goals that writers have whilst producing documents. Engagement in a mode produces output that is worked on in the next mode; in this way each mode provides the input for the next. There are seven modes in all each of which has its own specific processes and output. *Exploration* involves the writer recalling relevant facts and clustering them in order to externalise their ideas. *Situational analysis* is where the writer starts to gather the ideas produces in the exploration phase and prioritises them in accordance with the goals of the task. In the *organisation* mode the individual structures their ideas. *Writing* involves coding the output of the structured notes into coherent linguistic forms. *Editing global organisation* involves the manipulation of large scale structural components of the text to produce a more organised product. In *editing coherence relations* the writer refines the relationships between sentences and paragraphs. The final stage *editing expression* involves the polishing of the final document into a coherent whole.

Some of these cognitive modes are supported by system modes. Exploration is supported by a system mode that permits the loose structuring of information typically required when ideas are organised initially. Organisation is supported by a more constrained network tool that forces the user to organise their ideas hierarchically, generally regarded to be the clearest discourse structure for reader understanding. Writing is supported by the editor mode that allows the concepts and relations structured in the organisation phase to be encoded into written text by using a conventional text editor. Coherence editing is supported by the text mode which is a text-based representation of the document structure formed by the system itself by stepping through the nodes in the tree mode in a left to right, top to bottom fashion, and pasting the text associated with nodes and relations into a separate window in the form of a document. Users can then edit this representation for coherence.

Hence four of the seven of the cognitive modes are supported by four system modes. Of the remaining three nodes, structure editing is supported by the user restructuring the graph in the tree node, which in turn restructures the text and expression editing is supported by the user editing text in either the editor or text modes.

Only the situational analysis mode has no explicit support from the system, this is because situational analysis is an activity performed on the products of exploration, where goal relevant ideas are selected for further processing, its outputs are therefore transient and thus no tool has been provided to support it.

7.5.2 Author's Argumentation Assistant (AAA)

AAA is both part of a larger system called SEPIA (Structured Elicitation and Processing of Ideas for Authoring) which is designed to support the construction of hypertext documents; and is also related to WE. The most important distinction between AAA and WE is that AAA contains an argumentation mode in order to support the argumentative and rhetorical components of hypertext construction.

Like WE, AAA is based on the principle of cognitive modes, and supports them by having various system modes. The system modes are: the argumentation mode, the rhetorical mode, the tree mode and the text mode, and the system reifies these modes by providing a separate window for each one. Central to AAA is the argumentation mode this has two levels of structure: a *microstructure* which uses Toulmin-like representations, and *macrostructures* [1] which use based on the PHI argumentation model. The PHI-based macro structure allows users to represent the various competing issues and sub-issues in the domain, and the arguments that relate to them. Toulmin structures are used to represent analyses of the individual arguments at a lower level. Thus an issue—which may be subordinate to other issues in the hierarchy—may be answered by a position supported by some argument. These positions and arguments may in turn be evaluated using the Toulmin concepts of warrant, rebuttal and backing. The purpose of this is to provide a finer granularity of analysis for the arguments proposed than PHI alone allows. In addition to the argumentation mode described above, there are other modes designed to support the different tasks involved in writing argumentative texts. The rhetorical mode allows the selection of elements from the argumentation network that the author wishes to

[1]Note that the terms microstructure and macrostructure whilst similar in spirit to those used by Van Dijk and Kintsch (1983) are, in fact, referring to slightly different things.

reorganise for rhetorical purposes. Other modes include the tree mode; which is basically a planning space that allows the goals of the task to be represented and referred to, and the text mode, which allows the editing of text stored within the various nodes.

AAA allows nodes, sub-graphs and text to be copied between windows, where appropriate, however the authors say little about AAA's capabilities for redefining node categories, link types, etc. and the various constraints that exist during this process (see Euclid, Section 7.3.4).

AAA is a good example of a suite of tools designed for a specific purpose. The various modes allow information to be structured, whilst still preserving the information in its unstructured state; this means that any action can always be reversed to some extent, overcoming some of the problems of premature commitment by allowing backtracking. Because AAA has separate windows for each of the modes, the user can operate at several different levels at the same time: some information may be in textual form, other information may be partly structured in the form of Toulmin or PHI based representations. For the purposes of learning this may be advantageous, understanding of complex information tends to develop in a piecemeal way; often we need to understand certain parts quite well, whilst having less understanding of other parts. On the other hand, having separate windows for each mode may result in problems combining certain aspects of the information into a structured whole; it is difficult to see, for example, how PHI type representations can be broken down in a meaningful way into Toulmin structures. Unfortunately I know of no evaluations of AAA, so its benefits and drawbacks remain pure conjecture.

7.5.3 Summary

WE, AAA and Sepia are systems designed to support tasks that involve a number of distinct activities such as writing and authoring hypermedia documents. AAA has been advocated as a system that may support the process of learning by encouraging the structuring of ideas and concepts. Since they also allow several representations of information to exist at one time they avoid some of the problems of premature commitment to structure. A user for example could use one of the workspaces for brainstorming initial ideas and then impose structure upon these more using one of the formal notations—both representations would co-exist. This is one of the ideas investigated in the two case studies in Chapter 10. A possible problem with the notion of activity spaces is that there is little support for transitions between them. An experienced writer would know intuitively when to get on with formalising their ideas, a inexperienced learner might need quite a lot of training to move between the spaces seamlessly and productively.

7.6 RELATIONSHIPS WITH KNOWLEDGE MAPPING

In general the tools and notations discussed above differ from knowledge mapping tools in that the representations that they use are more constrained; the idea being to support the task by encouraging users to structure their thoughts more clearly. It must be remembered, however, that Novak's (1990) conception of concept mapping with its specification of hierarchical organisation was also constrained. At least in principle, knowledge mapping tools and the tools discussed in this chapter, are not necessarily as far apart as they seem.

Nevertheless most of the things that are called knowledge mapping tools (SemNet, Learning Tool, TextVision) make few prescriptions as to the structure that the learner creates, they are genuinely domain general. On the other hand QOC, gIBIS, AAA and the like have all been created in *response to the specific demands* of particular tasks (collaborative design, writing and so forth). Once we have a task in mind we can go some way towards understanding where problems might lie and what action might be taken to improve upon the traditional methods. Learning however, is not a task. Rather learning is an essential by product of some action, it is not the action itself. Therefore we cannot specify what needs to be done to support learning without having a tight specification of the educational goals, the expertise level of the learner, the nature of the domain and so on and so forth. In their search to provide a generic package it is possible that the developers of knowledge mapping tools have settled on a sub-optimal solution. This is, of course, conjecture but it does seem that given the results of the two previous studies there is scope for developing more structured tools, as I indicated in the introduction to this chapter. The rest of this thesis explores the issues of trying to develop tools that support specific tasks, tasks which as identified by looking at specific domains, specific user profiles, and specific educational goals. Given these specifications we can attempt to mobilise some of the learning issued mentioned in the first chapter to develop methods of supporting effective learning.

Study 4 represents a first attempt to do this. A specific goal in psychology might be to get subjects to think about the relationships of evidence to theories. A simple framework was chosen to encourage students to do this.

8

Using structured maps

8.1 INTRODUCTION

The purpose of Study 4 was to ascertain how well students could cope with representing information using a semi-structured formalism which took argumentation as its basis. The task was simpler than that of Study 3, requiring participants to represent a narrower set of information relating to coherent 'topics' in cognitive psychology, rather than to construct a broad overview of what is often very disparate research. The task was additionally simplified because it required participants to take a single aspect of the domain, looking at the evidence supporting and contradicting a theory, rather than trying to encompass structure, process and argument within the same framework: something which is a natural consequence of the particular framework chosen.

Like Study 3 this was not a controlled experiment, so it is difficult to come up with any firm conclusions; however, as a data gathering exercise it may provide some pointers towards the issues in using such representations which may inform the development of a tool.

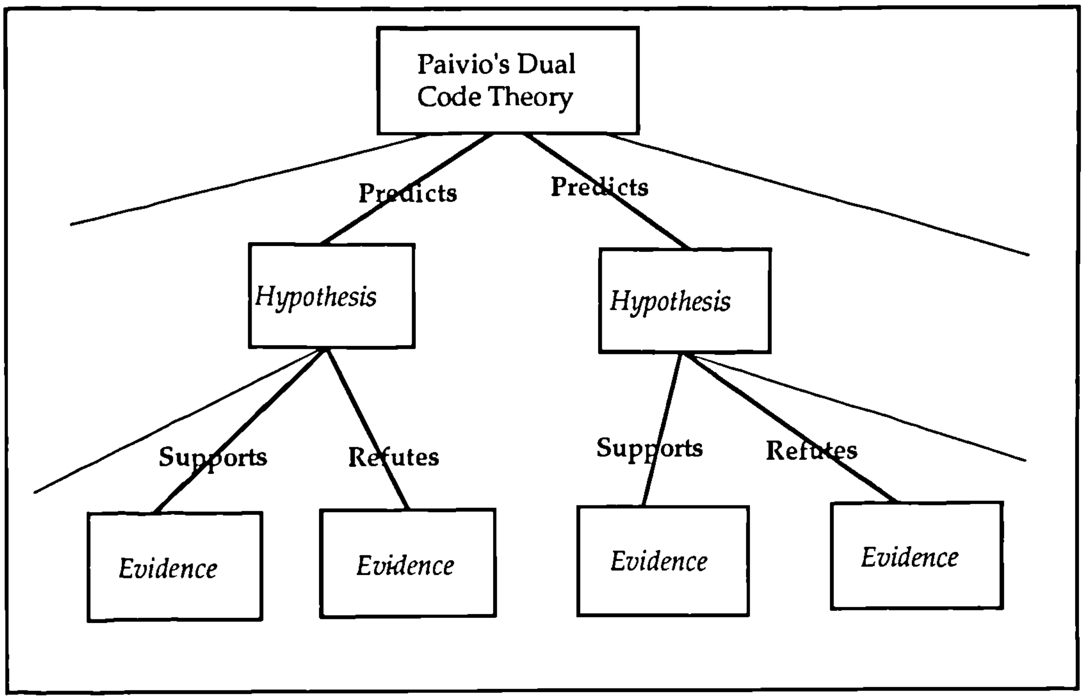
8.1.1 Subjects

The subjects were 36 undergraduate students who constructed the maps as an assignment as part of their cognitive psychology course. Each participant constructed two maps for the purposes of the study. Due to a lot of the maps not being handed in only 15 were analysed.

8.1.2 Instructions

The instructions were given to the participants both during their lecture course, and in the form of a printed sheet of paper (see Table 8.1). Examples were given together with a skeletal framework for the representation.

1 Draw a diagram, in the form of that below, summarising key hypotheses and evidence relating to Paivio's dual code theory. Briefly fill in predictions made by the theory at the *hypothesis* level of the diagram (you may need a different number of boxes), and list evidence which supports or refutes each hypothesis at the *evidence* level of the diagram (again you may need more or less boxes).



2 Draw a diagram, similar to that above, to summarise key hypotheses and evidence relating to Collins & Quillian's model of semantic memory.

Table 8.1 The task description as presented to the students

8.1.3 The task

The task that learners were given would naturally constrain the sort of information that participants could include in their networks more than did the task in Study 3. First of all the information needed to complete the task was narrower in scope, often to be found in a few pages of text; second, only information relating to argument was requested; and finally, the representational structure was given to them, they no longer had to invent it themselves.

8.2 ANALYSES OF MAPS

8.2.1 Overview

In general the students seemed to be able to use the representation fairly well, and the maps produced were more consistent across different individuals than the ones produced for study 3. There are two likely reasons for this. First, the maps were more prescriptive, containing both a global structure—the overall shape of the map, and a local structure—the types of node and relationships between them. This meant that the maps were less dependent on the preferences of the particular individual. Second, the task was easier, more tractable than the last one. This consistency meant that it was easier to compare the maps produced by individual students to each other, aiding communication. There are however a number of issues that manifested themselves that have certain implications both for the design of computer-based knowledge structuring tools and for the teaching of psychology.

First of all it must be said that in general the maps from this task contained more of the information appropriate to the goals of the task than did those in the memory task (see Chapter 6). Because all of the students were asked to use a standard textbook (Eysenck & Keane, 1990) it was possible to ascertain the hypotheses and evidence that should have been included. These can be parsed in to propositions relating to the relationship between evidence and hypotheses, for example *Evidence* (Paivio, 1971) *Supports Hypothesis* (Two separate systems) would count as a single proposition. Table 8.2 summarises the results of this propositional analysis

Map	Maximum no of propositions	Mean (SD)	Mean percentage
Paivio map	12	5.2 (2)	43%
Collins and Quillian map	8	4.7 (1.5)	58.7%

Table 8.2 Summary table showing student's performance against maximum proposition suggested by the textbook.

Whilst these mean percentages of 43 and 58% are low, it must be borne in mind that these are the maximum number of evidence-hypothesis propositions referred to in the text. Much of the evidence tends to show similar things, and we really should not be too bothered if students tend to focus on certain pieces of evidence and ignore others.

All told the maps produced in this experiment were certainly more similar to each other than those produced in the memory study, and students seemed to feel that this exercise was somewhat more tractable. This said, some problems were manifest, and these are discussed in the next section.

8.2.2 Some observed problems

Although the maps were both more coherent and more cohesive than those investigated in the previous study, there are certain issues that reveal potential problems with the use of knowledge structuring tools, these are discussed below.

8.2.2.1 When hypotheses are not hypotheses

Some of the terms used in the framework appeared to cause problems, most important of these was the meaning of hypothesis. "The New Hamlyn Encyclopedic World Dictionary" defines 'hypothesis' as follows:

> "A proposition (or set of propositions) proposed as an explanation for the occurrence of some specified group of phenomena, either asserted merely as provisional investigation (a working hypothesis) or accepted as highly probable in the light of established fact."

In psychology and in the natural sciences a hypothesis tends to have a more specific interpretation relating to an assertion about the world pertaining to a phenomenon that is testable empirically. Such an understanding is not universally accepted, but it is doubtless the one which undergraduate psychology students are most familiar with, and is the meaning intended here. Therefore the assertion: "A horse can run faster over a mile than a human" is a hypothesis in this sense because it is directly testable empirically, whereas: "Love of money is the root of all evil" is not a hypothesis in the sense used here because it is not susceptible to empirical testing; such a statement could be called a claim or a conjecture. Central to this definition is the relationship of the hypothesis to evidence. Evidence can support or contradict a hypothesis directly; in order to empirically test claims one must nearly always include a mediating hypothesis that permits testing. A similar set of issues relates to the notion of a theory; this will need to broken down into claims before hypotheses are generated.

In this study participants frequently seemed to have problems over the interpretation of a hypothesis, in fact in the 78 hypotheses advanced, only 13 actually fitted the criterion of being directly testable. Most of the other so-called hypotheses were in fact claims (or conjectures), some were assumptions of the model or theory and some were simply properties of the model. In the example below (Figure 8.1), the theory "Paivio's dual code theory" is said to predict that there are two systems, verbal and non-verbal. In many ways this is a *claim* embodied in the theory. A more accurate experimental hypothesis (in the sense that it is a testable prediction) would be "Items receiving both verbal and non-verbal processing should show better recall than items requiring just one type of processing". Thus pictures, which are processed twice according to the model, should show higher recall than words, which only need to be processed verbally. This could then be supported by experimental evidence. Not all students showed this failure to correctly specify a suitable hypothesis, Figure 8.2 show two good hypotheses specified for the 'Semantic memory' task. Note that the same student produced both of these maps indicating that it is not just some general deficiency in understanding.

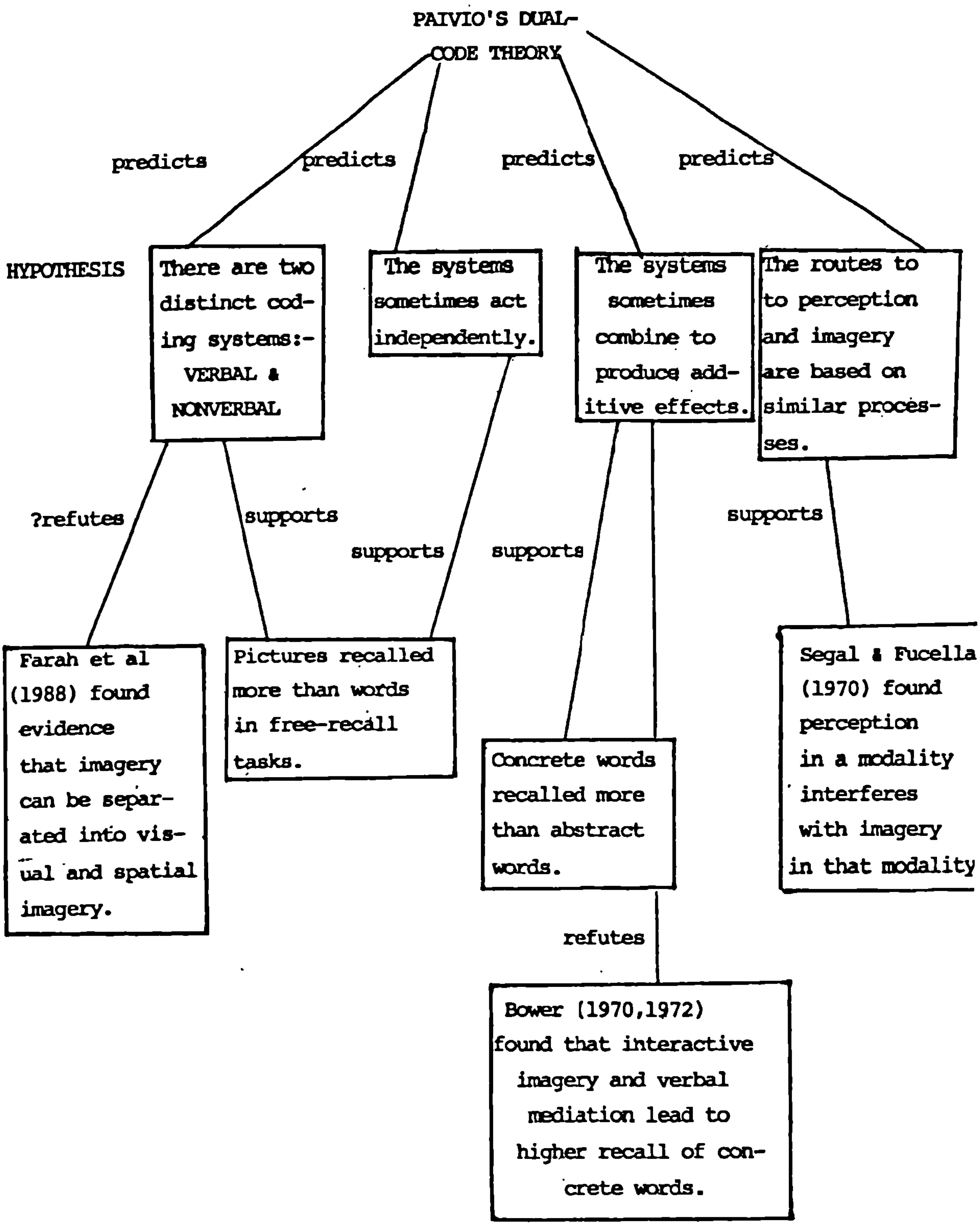


Figure 8.1 Map showing hypotheses that are really claims.

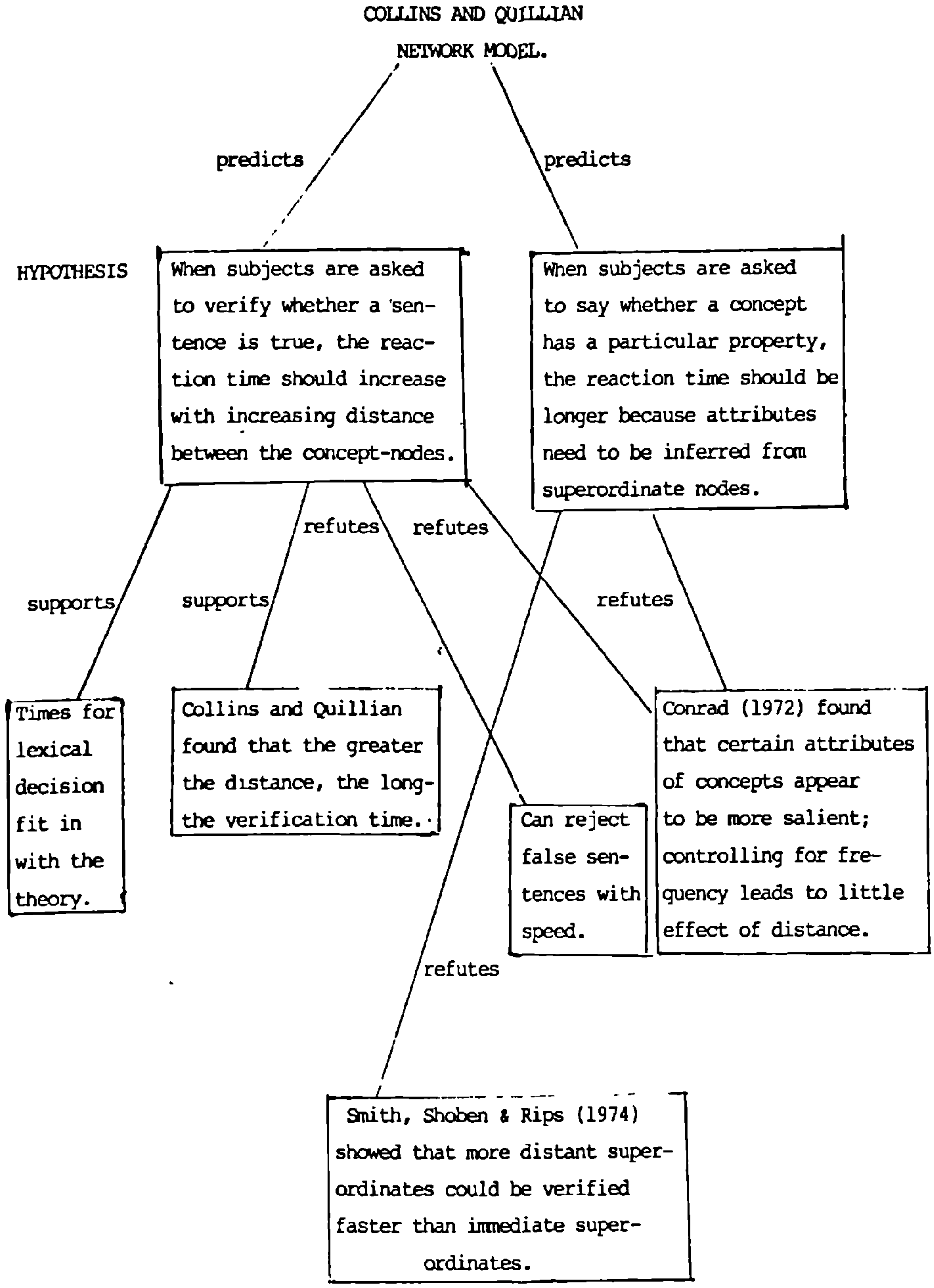


Figure 8.2 A map showing testable hypotheses.

One is forced to ask the question: does this matter? In many ways it does: an important part of psychology is the development of critical thinking skills, indeed, it could be argued that this is the most important thing that students will learn, given that many of the theories, facts and principles that students learn will be out of date a few years hence it is the ability to think critically that will keep them afloat in a changing world. Understanding why a hypothesis is predicted by a theory (or a claim), being able to identify *non-sequitur* and other such problems and effecting recovery is vital if psychology is not to require mere rote learning of information. Of course we cannot lay all of the blame at the feet of the students (or the education system!), and some further discussion of the implications of these results continue in the next section.

The above observation could be interpreted as indicating the participants did not fully understand the meaning of the terms such as 'hypothesis', and were therefore unable to adequately use the model correctly. However, the students taking part in the study had undergone a number of hours learning about experimental design and methodology, as well as statistics; both of which discuss the nature and role of hypotheses in psychology. It is therefore unlikely to be something as simple as merely failing to understand terms. Further evidence in support of this can be found by the observation that students did not always use the term consistently: a number of maps contained hypothesis nodes that were used both appropriately and inappropriately. Perhaps the most likely explanation is that students' incomplete understanding of a hypothesis was compounded by the paucity of its node types. In the hypothetico-deductive model of scientific methodology a theory is tested first by deriving predictions that it naturally implies in the form of claims, and then operationalising these into hypotheses; the model used here missed out the crucial step of allowing students to articulate the claims of the theory. Omitting this step meant that students had to go straight from a theory such as Paivio's dual code theory, to the hypotheses in one step. Figure 8.3 (below) shows an example of a map in which the hypotheses are correctly used notice: first that there is a conceptual leap from theory to hypothesis, and second that the student has attempted to rectify this by introducing an intervening claim which lies outside the original model.

A further potential cause for this effect is may be due to the situated nature of the way that students learned about hypotheses; they may be able to define a hypothesis correctly, as most of them demonstrated during tutorials, but they may find it harder to actually use this definition when explicating psychological studies. Such phenomena are well known in the literature relating to transfer of learning, and the importance of such problems has recently been highlighted by situated leaning theorists (see Chapter 1).

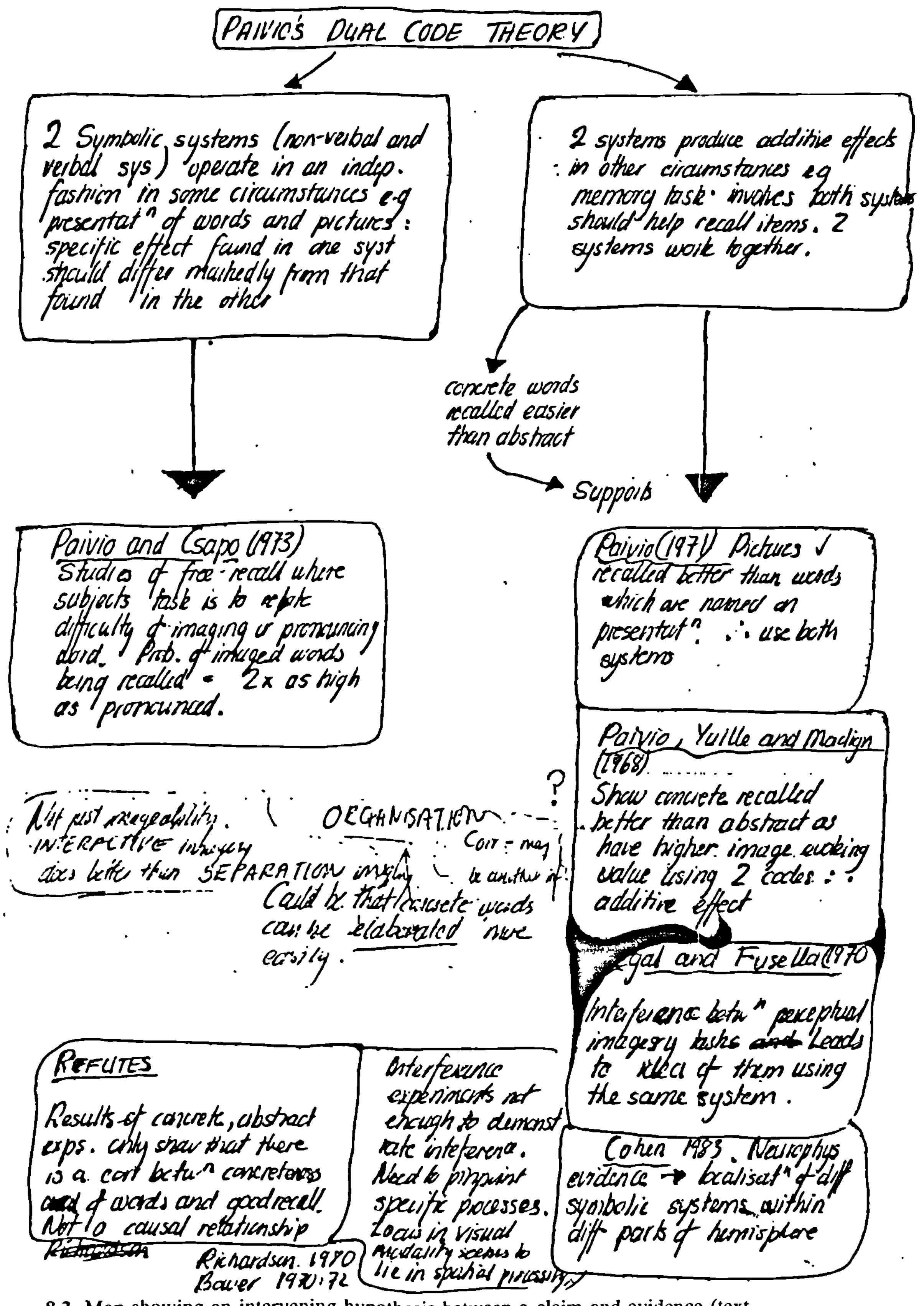


Figure 8.3 Map showing an intervening hypothesis between a claim and evidence (text starting "Concrete words recalled...").

8.2.2.2 Problems specifying evidence

Much of the evidence that students brought to bear on the task was not evidence in the strict sense of the word. Evidence arises as a result of some empirical investigation in response to a hypothesis. Often information that was cited as evidence were actually critiques of one form or another. For example in Figure 8.4 (below) the evidence that begins: 'It's very difficult to actually determine...' in the left of the diagram, is in fact a criticism of the stance adopted by the theory: that concepts have specific defining attributes, rather than refuting evidence.

In total 32 out of the 138 evidence boxes contained information that was not really evidence. Again we must first apportion blame on the model that students were given; given that they had no chance to represent critiques, assumptions and the like, it seems churlish to chastise them for bundling everything up as evidence. It remains to be seen, however, exactly how good students are at spotting the difference between evidence and critiques (see Chapter 11 for more on this).

8.2.2.3 Lack of structure revisited

Given that the purpose of using a semi-structured representation was to try and encourage students to produce more meaningful structures, it came as some surprise to find that there were still occasions where students refused to do so, albeit much less frequently than in the previous study. The main failure to commit to structure was in failing to link up evidence to appropriate hypotheses. As shown in Figure 8.5 there was sometimes a tendency to list the evidence without providing explicit links, or as in Figure 8.4 simply link a set of different studies to all the hypotheses without attempting to indicate which studies supported or refuted which hypotheses.

Given that students were instructed to link evidence directly to hypotheses, and assuming that they were trying to complete the task, there are two potential reasons why this occurred. First, it is quite likely that although students were aware of the evidence relating to the theory, they may not have been entirely sure as to how this related to the specific claims of the theory; since most of the hypotheses were actually claims they may have simply resorted to the strategy of not linking the evidence to the hypotheses (or claims). Second—and again this is due to the uncertain status of the hypotheses—it could be that the hypotheses articulated were not refined enough to be addressed by a single piece of evidence. In many ways the two go hand in hand: a well specified hypothesis, if it exists, is likely to be derived from the student by working backwards from an experimental study. Knowing that, for example, a study to test Paivio's dual code theory looked at memory for concrete and abstract words will imply the hypothesis that concrete words should be remembered better than abstract words. The fact that hypotheses can be ascertained by working backwards from the experiment makes it even more surprising that so few of the hypotheses were specified. Perhaps students found it more important to articulate claims than hypotheses, even when specifying a hypothesis would have made their maps more intelligible. This again emphasises the need for more components in the model.

A further problem in this lack of structuring involves arrow directionality. The original model contained no arrows (see Table 8.1) as it was felt that the name of the link would be sufficient to indicate the direction of the relationship. However 8 of the 30 maps incorporated arrows in the maps and in every instance where they were included, the links between hypotheses and evidence were the wrong way round: implying that the hypotheses support or contradict the evidence. This is curious. It could be that subjects do this by analogy to other maps that they may have seen which show hierarchical relationships between nodes; or it could be that starting from the top with the downwards pointing 'predicts' relationship between theories and hypotheses, they just carry on the same direction. Whatever the source is, it may indicate that students are not focusing on the explicit meaning of the relationships in a way which we may have initially supposed.

8.3 SUMMARY

The task was in some ways more successful than the previous 'memory mapping' task, at least if we look at the extent to which students achieved the goals of the task. The students seemed to feel that the task was more meaningful and somewhat simpler than the memory mapping exercise. Tutorial discussion were, perhaps, less interesting, perhaps because most of the maps were similar there were fewer discussions among individuals. These observations are perhaps more a function of the task being of a less grand scale than in the previous task, rather than being a feature of the structured representation *per se*. As I mentioned above (Section 8.2.1) this task required students to integrate ideas that were already integrated in text-books, rather than drawing together information from disparate areas which is often left un-integrated in the literature. The task was therefore, perhaps, more an exercise of translation and formalisation of knowledge, where information is recast into a new form using a notation, rather than being one where conceptual space was explored.

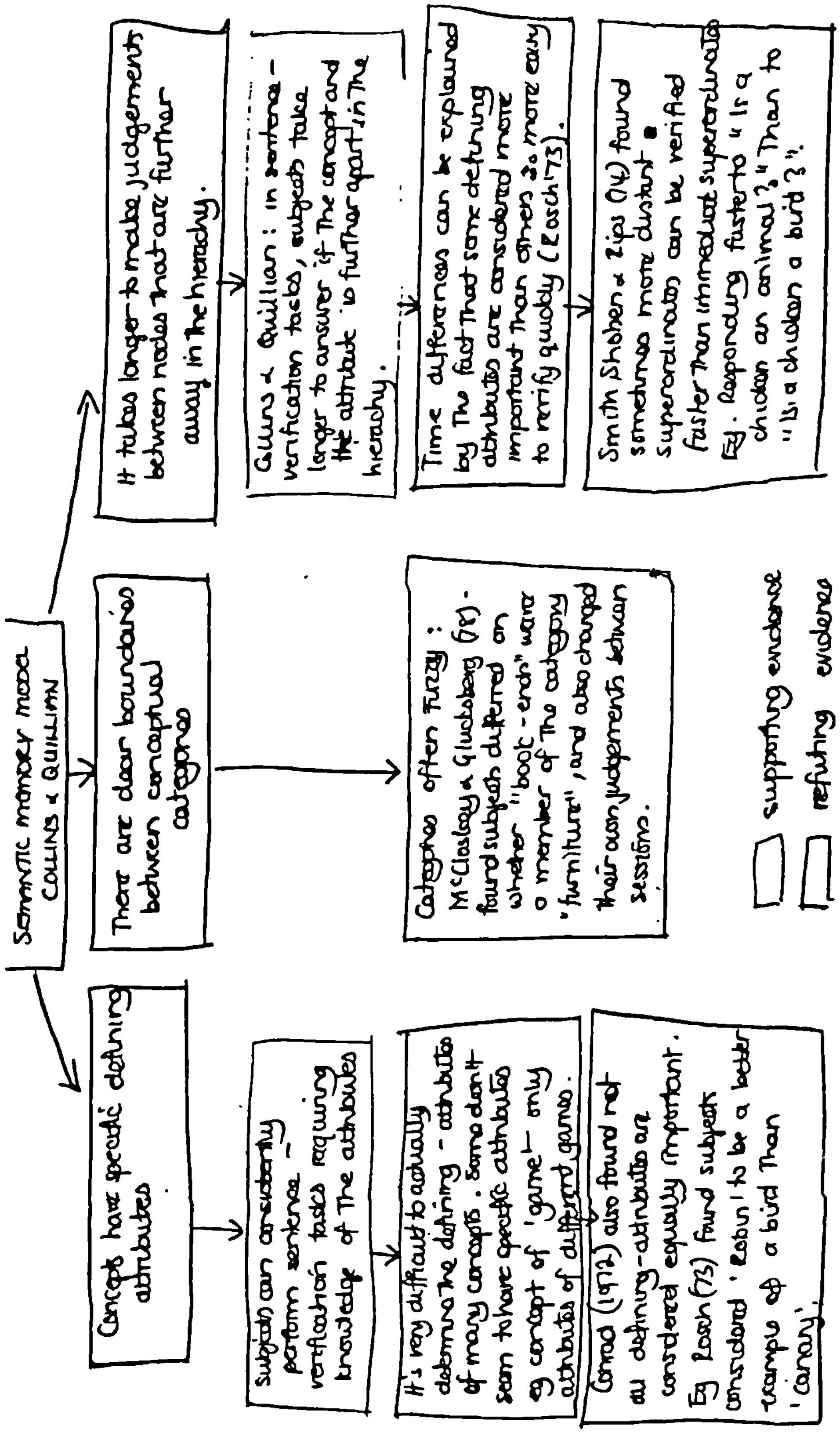


Figure 8.4 Critique masquerading as evidence; the sentence starting "It's very difficult to determine..." is labelled 'evidence' (coloured boxes were used to indicate this) but is more of a critique.

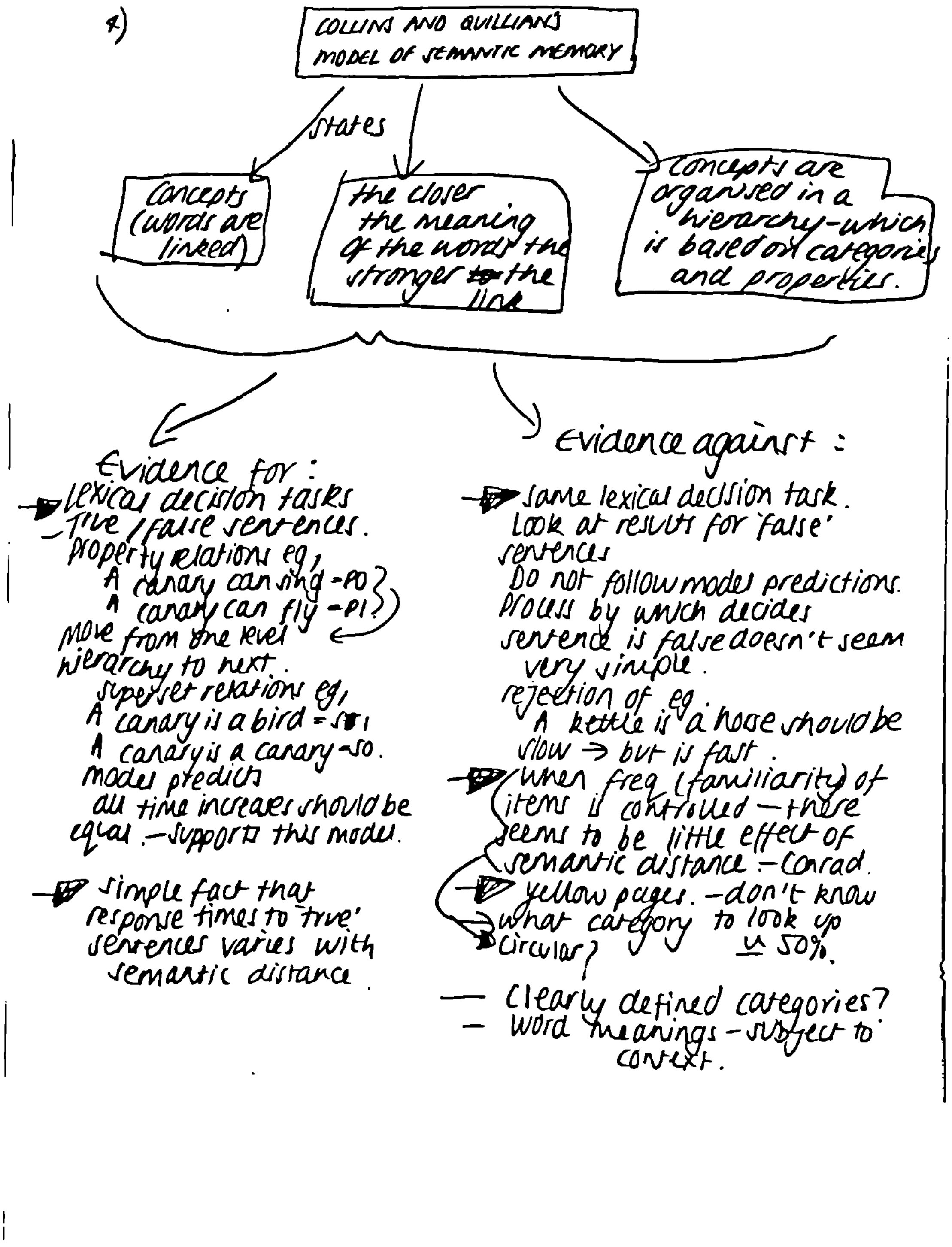


Figure 8.5 Example of inexplicit evidence-hypothesis linking

Certain problems were noted, in particular the failure to use terms such as hypothesis and evidence appropriately within the context of the model may have implications for the development of future structuring tools. However we must be wary of making too many assumptions. For example, as mentioned previously it would be erroneous to infer that students understanding of what constituted a hypothesis was bugged. Discussions revealed that they appeared to have a good understanding of what the term meant and additionally errors were not stable; students using the term correctly may also show incorrect usage in the same or in the other network. What this appears to indicate is that students were struggling to express their ideas against a representation that would not permit them to do so.

The observations from this study gave rise to two design criteria for the structuring tool described in the next chapter. First, any notation needs a more expressive grammar which would allow learners to represent claims which mediate between hypotheses and theories; second, there needs to be restrictions built in to the grammar that permit certain relationships, and do not allow other relationships that are likely to be unhelpful. An example of this last point would be that 'supports' or 'contradicts' relationships should go from evidence to hypotheses or claims, rather than the other way round has was the case in this last exercise. Attempting to create links in the incorrect direction could lead to explanatory text indicating why this link is not permitted.

The next chapter pursues these issues further.

9

The design of a knowledge structuring tool

9.1 INTRODUCTION

The previous study suggested that it might be profitable to develop constrained tools to give the learners some support in forming representations of domain information that are educationally meaningful. The study also suggested that the theory-hypothesis-evidence model used was too constrained, in that students needed to include additional information to create a reasonable argument. The purpose of this chapter is twofold: first it described a more elaborate (but still not a final) notation which was use for the next two studies; and second, it describes the tool that was designed to implement the notation.

9.2 THE NOTATION USED FOR AKA

The purpose of the language used for AKA was not to come up with a formally sound representation for argument, but to develop a notation that could be used to represent much of the argument structure in many social science texts, particularly psychology.

Like most of the notions discussed above, with the exception of Toulmin arguments, the notation used was both task and domain dependent; the intention was to develop something that could be used for a sub-set of learning tasks, in certain domains, rather than a general notation.

AKA has five basic primitives: claim, evidence, critique, phenomenon and question; it also has a further three nodes that are modifications of a claim: assumption, theory and hypothesis. I shall discuss these in turn.

A *claim* is an assertion made about some domain of discourse, and as such it has a very similar definition to that used by Toulmin and Smolensky et al (see Sections 7.3.2 and 7.3.4). Claims require some form of backing, and there are several ways that they can receive this. By being directly supported by evidence, or by being supported, by logical deduction, by other lower level claims.

Evidence relates to a variety of forms of information that can support or contradict claims. In many ways the notion of evidence as a primitive appears fallacious; evidence is only evidence insofar as it related to something else. The notion of evidence is only meaningful when we have some claim, otherwise it is just undifferentiated information. For example stating that I saw my friend Mike at the Opera last night would not be considered evidence unless someone else, such as the police, claimed he was elsewhere. Additionally these pieces of 'evidence' are not, strictly speaking, evidence at all: they are claims, as there are dependent on you believing me or the police. Therefore what we perceive as evidence depends not only on the context (is there a contradictory claim?) but also on how rigorous we wish to be about when we stop calling something evidence and start to call it a claim. In science evidence has a special status because it is assumed to uncontaminated by subjectivity; however there are doubts as to the objectivity of observations (Kuhn, 1970; Brewer and Lambert, 1993). Whatever, the term evidence was selected because it is something that is familiar to most people; the main perceived problem was not one of the epistemological status of evidence, but that it may be used too freely by users of the system – a problem of definition which affects Toulmin's model of argument.

Critiques are items that in many ways lie outside standard argument representation; like evidence it is the relationship between a piece of information and another piece of information that makes it a critique, rather than it being something in its own right. Again the term was chosen because it is something that is easy to understand. A critique is, as it sounds, a criticism—which is itself neither evidence nor a claim—of another information object. Critiques can stand for many things: they may criticise experimental methodology, or may attack a claim for being overly complex or implausible; as such critiques can attack any other type of node, even other critiques.

Questions are provided to define the boundaries of the argument; to set up a context in which the argument takes place. The purpose of providing question nodes is to try and encourage the learner to define their goals and focus on the particular area that they are interested in, rather than straying too far from the point.

Phenomena are observations about the world that appear to be true under certain conditions. An example of a phenomenon in psychology is the recency effect of items in a serial recall task. Claims are often advanced to explain such phenomena; alternatively a phenomenon may be used to support a particular claim. Care must be taken to prevent an argument becoming circular when claims are supported by phenomena that they are constructed to explain. For example, a theory or claim may be advanced to provide and explanation for a phenomenon such as the recency effect; this can become circular if experiments involving the recency effect are used to support the claim; with no other measures taken.

Assumptions. Most arguments are based on certain assumptions which allow the certain claims to be advanced, or certain bits of evidence to be used. One way in which arguments proceed is by bringing the underlying assumptions, of a claim or theory into question. This can then be used to reduce the certainty with which one can assert a particular claim. Assumptions themselves are often arguments in their own right, with claims evidence and so on of their own, in this way they are similar to Smolensky et al's domain of assertion (see Section 7.3.4). The inclusion of a special assumption node was made in recognition that often we are not interested in pursuing this line of thought any further, we merely wish to note that the assumption is there and, perhaps, criticise it.

Theories and *hypotheses* are specific forms of claim. Theories relate to clusters of claims which are put together in a rigorous manner. Hypotheses, on the other hand, are claims that are articulated in such a way as to allow direct testing. Both these nodes were added at a late stage and can be seen as an attempt to tailor AKA for the use in aiding learning from psychology texts.

A final option for creating link types (although not really a type in its own right) is the wildcard option. This allows the user to tailor a node type to their own specification if the pre-defined ones do not suffice.

As well as these primitives there are certain rules for linking them together. Table 9.1 shows the permitted relationships between the various nodes.

Perhaps as important as the permitted relationships are the relationships that are not permitted. An example of this is the way that evidence cannot be linked to other evidence as it is assumed that evidence does not usually make any useful statements about other evidence; that is not to say that it cannot be linked, just that it may be more useful for learners to try and think about the evidence—claims relationships, rather than those between evidence and evidence. The basic model, then, is one of evaluating claims that are competing to explain a phenomenon or to address a question. Claims are evaluated by virtue of the evidence that can be mobilised to support or contradict them. There are some similarities with Toulmin's model in that AKA is based around claims, but it contains primitives that, we believe, accord more with the sorts of informational roles that students will encounter in text-books.

Node type	Links to...	Relation name
Theory	Question Hypothesis	Addresses Predicts
Claim	Claim Question Theory Hypothesis	Sub-claim Addresses Sub-claim Predicts
Evidence	Claim Assumption Critique Hypothesis	Supports Contradicts Supports Contradicts Supports Contradicts Supports Contradicts
Hypothesis	None	
Assumption	Any node	Underlies
Critique	Any node	Attacks
Phenomenon	Claim	Supports
		Contradicts
Question	Question	Sub-question
Wildcard	Any node	User definable

Table 9.1 List of nodes and permitted relationships.

The notation used by AKA was developed progressively as a result of comments by the users and attempts to use the system by the experimenter. The aim was to start with as few nodes-types as possible and add them only when significantly large chunks of information could not be represented. Hence AKA started with 4 node types: claim, evidence, question and evaluation. Evidence could support or contradict claims, as could claims, evaluations analysed claims which in turn could be used to address the question or questions. Critiques were added after a number of testers commented that they could not fully evaluate competing claims using evidence alone: evidence could be criticised for methodological and other considerations; claims could be attacked for being unparsimonious and so on. Similarly, assumptions were added for similar reasons: a tester indicated that claims were often based on certain assumptions and could be attacked indirectly by attacking these underlying assumptions. Phenomena were added still later as something that claims are set up to explain (other than questions). Both hypotheses and theories were added as special types of claim. These last three mentioned node-types are really variations of nodes that were already existed, the reason for incorporating them is to make the notation more tractable, rather than simply making it more expressive although it also does this. It is assumed that during the selection of the node types learners would be triggered by terms used within the text, it seems useful to provide learners with the option of doing this.

9.3 USING AKA

The notation above was incorporated into a system, AKA, which was implemented in HyperCard; the following section introduces the various features of the system, with some information as to how these were implemented.

9.3.1 The user interface

The user interface of AKA was designed to be as simple to use and as quick to learn as possible. It was felt that direct manipulation of objects, using the mouse, was the best way to achieve this. A tools palette was used to perform most of the major operations that could not be performed by directly clicking on an object (see Figure 9.1). As many of the participants who would be used to test the system would be unfamiliar with the Macintosh interface, menu operations were kept to a minimum, except where it was the simplest means of achieving the desired effect, or where the command would be used infrequently.

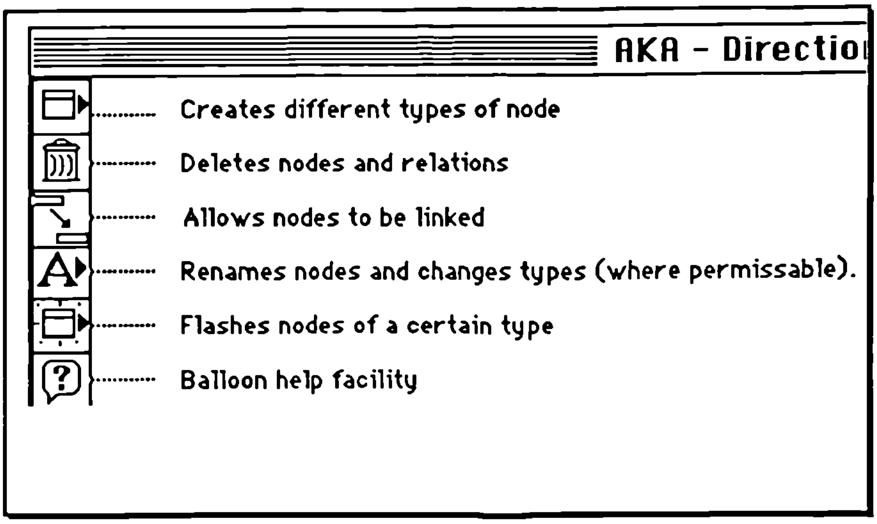


Figure 9.1 The tools palette.

Because AKA was driven as much as possible by the mouse it necessitated having separate modes for each type of action; AKA had three modes: browse mode, link mode and delete mode; clicking on an object in any of these modes has a different consequence. To avoid confusion, the mouse-pointer was used to signal to the user which mode the system was in. When in browse mode the cursor was set to its default arrow shape until it was moved over a draggable object. When this happened the pointer changed to a hand showing that the object could be moved. In link mode the same default arrow cursor was used, this time moving it over a linkable object changed the pointer to a cross. Finally when in delete mode the cursor took the form of a dustbin to indicate that objects could be deleted when in this mode.

9.3.2 Nodes and links

Nodes in the network are represented by rectangles which contain two text areas: a *type* area which contains the category of the node (claim, evidence and so on) which is in **bold** text; and a name area which contain the name of the node which is entered by the user, as an aid to discriminating the node from other of the same type. Nodes also contain text fields, to allow the user to record notes. Links are directional, the direction of the link being indicated by an arrow; the relation type of the link is denoted by *italicised* text. Figure 9.2 shows the main components of the network.

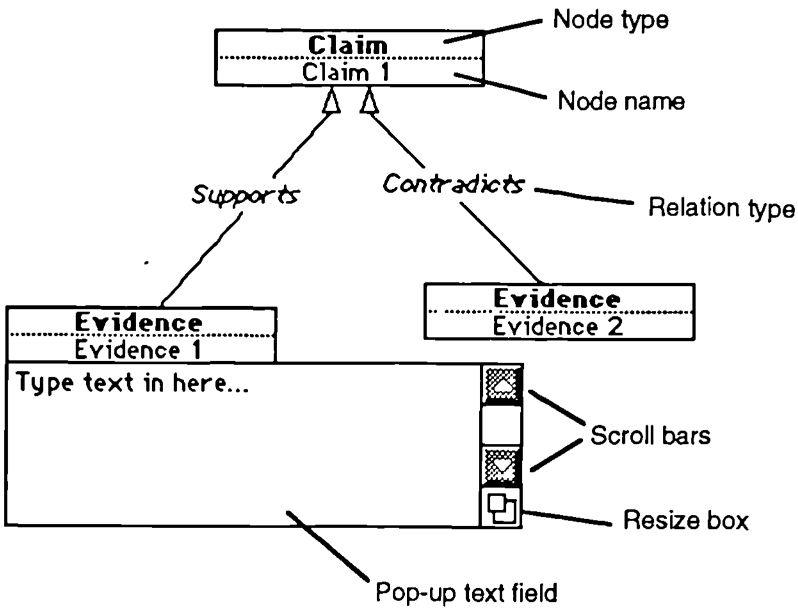


Figure 9.2 The main components of the network.

9.3.3 Creating objects

Objects are chosen via a pop-up menu activated by holding the mouse down over a button in the tools palette (see Figure 9.3). Selection of the appropriate type is achieve by moving the mouse-pointer over the options and releasing the button when the required node type is highlighted in black. The cursor then changes to a small rectangle to show that it is ready to create a node, clicking this cursor anywhere in the workspace creates the node of the required type, in the place where the mouse was clicked. The system then prompts the user for a suitable name for the node: 'Untitled' is the default name.

Both the nodes and the relation names in AKA are HyperCard fields, lines are simply drawn onto the card. HyperCard fields were chosen in preference to buttons, perhaps the most obvious choice, for two reasons: first, fields allowed the use of nodes that contain both a type and a name, buttons allow only a single line of text; second fields can also act as containers for text allowing the nodes to contain information about themselves. On this first point, buttons could have been used if the node type were represented by an icon rather than text; however, it was felt that given the relatively large number of different node types the proliferation of different icons could cause confusion. The second point is important: both the argument nodes and relation names in AKA store information relating to which other nodes they are linked to, and the relation names also store information relating to the strength of the link between the two nodes that it joins.

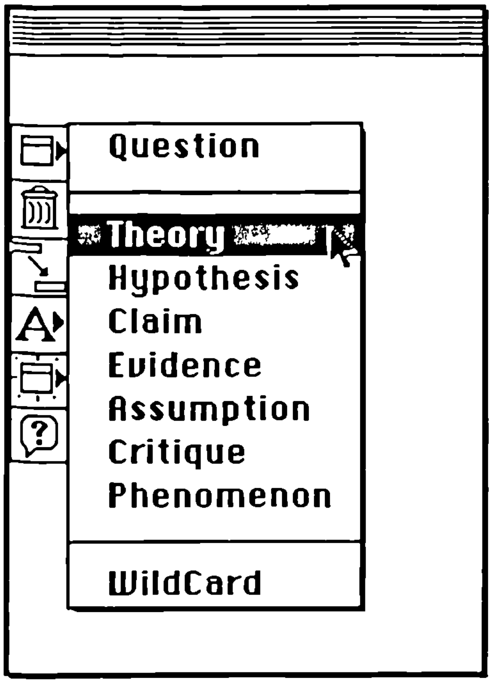


Figure 9.3 Choosing the object type from the pop-up menu.

9.3.4 Moving objects

Once created, screen objects can be moved around the screen simply by positioning the mouse over the object, holding the mouse-button down and dragging the mouse. Releasing the mouse-button deposits the node at the co-ordinates of the mouse-pointer when the button was released, any links between the moved-node and other nodes are re-drawn. During the dragging process, a grey rectangle indicates the future position of the node, in a way similar to that used by the Apple Macintosh operating system when dragging files, windows and folders; Indeed, the same **dragGrayRegion** function used by the operating system is used by AKA. It was felt that this was desirable to the standard way of dragging in HyperCard (where the object itself, rather than a grey rectangle, follows the mouse-pointer around the screen) for three reasons: first it is quicker, with less annoying lag between a movement of the mouse-pointer and a change in the object's position. Second, it is tidier: when objects are linked, moving the object directly reveals the mess of converging links under it, moving a grey rectangle avoids this. Finally it allows the user to compare the future position of the node to the original position (because the node remains in its original place until the mouse is released) facilitating positioning.

9.3.5 Deleting objects

Deleting objects is again performed using the tools palette. Selecting the button bearing the dustbin icon (see Figure 9.1) changes the cursor to a dustbin shape; clicking this over any of the screen objects (nodes, relation names) allows the object to be deleted. Deleting an argument node also deletes any text associated with that node, and any relations that it may have with other nodes; a dialog box stating this is presented to the user before any action is taken (see Figure 9.4).

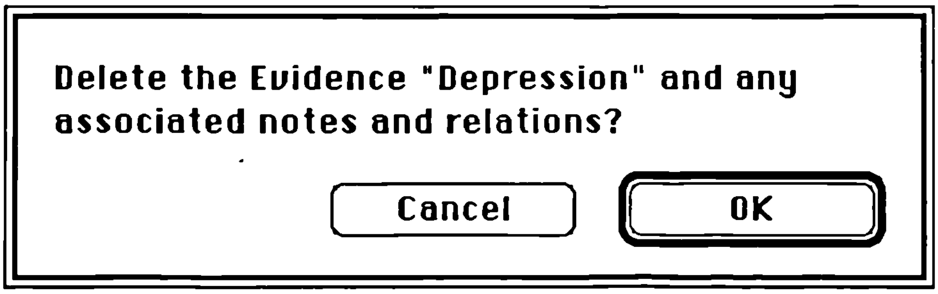


Figure 9.4 A dialog box warning about deletion

9.3.6 Linking objects

In the final version of AKA linking is performed by dragging the mouse between nodes that the user wishes to link whilst in link mode; This superseded the previous method which required users to enter link mode, and then click the mouse over the two nodes that they wished to link. The main reason for this change was that in the previous version the *order* of clicking denoted the direction of the relationships, whereas in the newer version the *direction* of the drag denoted the direction of the link, making the direction of the subsequent link more obvious (see Figure 9.5).

In the newer version, the link mode could be entered in one of three ways: by selecting the 'link' button so that it highlighted, by using the power-keys command-L, or by holding down the option-key whilst dragging.

Whichever method is chosen, dragging between nodes has the effect of causing a line to come from the start node to the mouse-pointer, the line has an arrow denoting the direction of the relationship (see Figure 9.5). Linking is completed by positioning the mouse over a node and releasing the mouse button, this destination node then flashes to show that it has been selected. The system then takes the names, types and ID numbers of the to-be-deleted nodes and checks them. First, it checks to make sure that the user is not trying to link the node to itself, a pointless action, but one that can occur by accident; if this is the case it exits the linking routine informing the user why via a dialog box. Second, it checks to see if any of the nodes are wildcard nodes, if they are then it invokes a routine that deal exclusively with this type of node. If neither of the nodes are wildcard, the system invokes a routine that deals with pre-set node types. If this last mentioned routine is invoked then AKA makes a third check to see if a link is permitted between the two nodes. If linking the two node types contravenes the linking rules then AKA exits the routine, presenting a dialog box stating that the node cannot be linked (see Figure 9.6); this dialog box offers a "Why not?" help facility that gives reasons as to why the two node types cannot be linked.

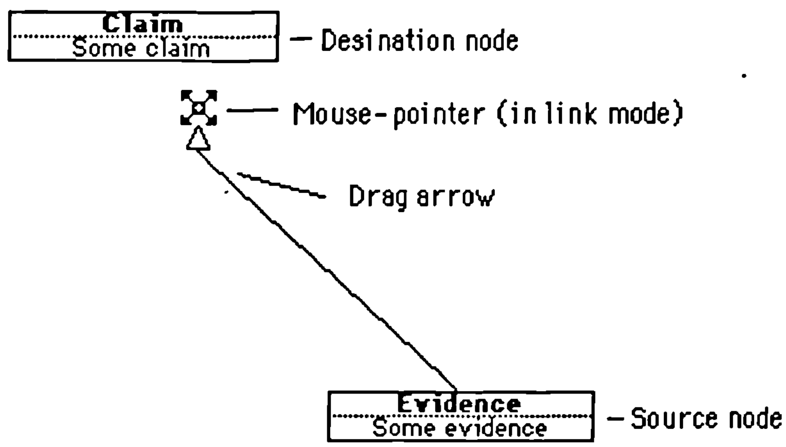


Figure 9.5 Linking nodes by dragging between them whilst in link mode, note that the line with the arrow follows the mouse-pointer as it is moved.

If the two nodes can be linked together, then AKA selects the link names allowed for the two node types, and presents them to the user in a scrolling dialog box (see Figure 9.7).

Selecting one of these names, and choosing "OK" causes a link to be drawn, with the arrow pointing in the direction of the drag, and the relation name positioned halfway along the link. Selecting "Cancel" exits the routine and returns the network to the state that it was at before the linking procedure started.

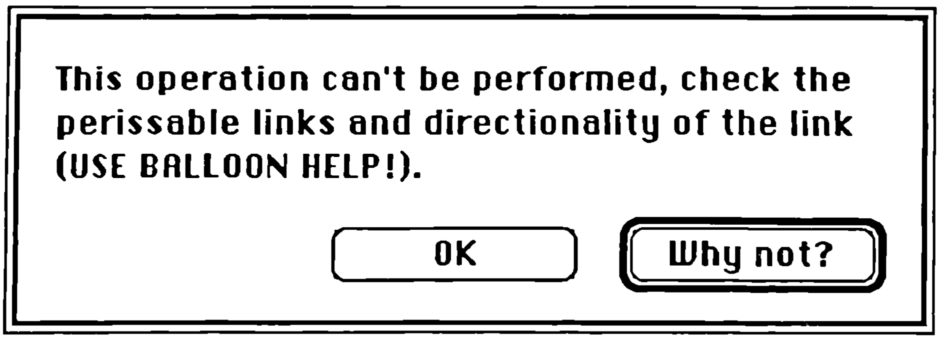


Figure 9.6 The dialog box presented when two nodes cannot be linked together.

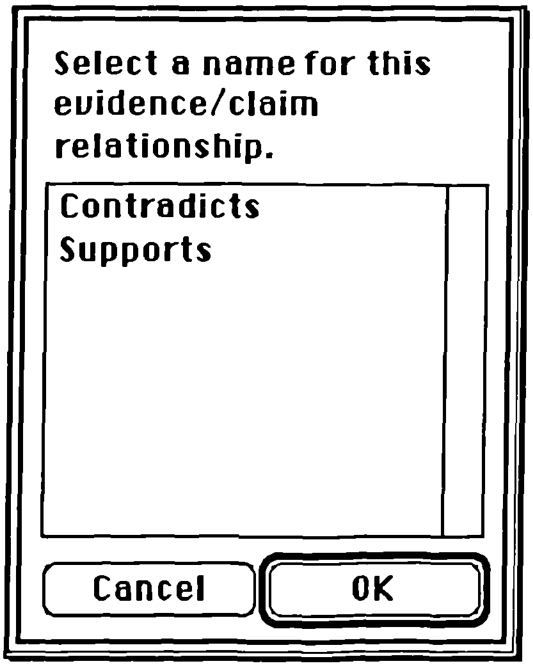


Figure 9.7 Scrolling dialog containing the permitted link names.

9.3.7 More about arrows

HyperCard, unlike a number of drawing packages such as MacDraw, does not support lines with arrows. Earlier versions of AKA simply used plain arrowless lines; the only way that users could tell the direction of a relationship was either by working it out from the relation name, or by using the facility that flashes nodes in the direction of the link. Indeed, the instructions for the earlier systems advised users to be consistent about the direction of the links: to place claims above evidence and so on. This state of affairs was clearly unsatisfactory: as networks got more complex it became increasingly harder for users to determine the directionality of the links, resulting in confusion. Additionally, if maps are to be used to communicate ideas to others then the directionality of the links should be immediately obvious; particularly if paper-based printouts are use, which do not afford the luxury of being able to click on elements to get the to flash in the direction of the link. Later versions therefore used line with arrows which were drawn using the HyperCard paint facility.

9.3.8 Changing the name and type of nodes and links

The names of nodes can be changed at any time, this is achieved by using a pop-up menu activated by holding the mouse down over the rename button (see Figure 9.8). Selecting the rename node option causes the mouse-pointer to change to a capital letter 'A', clicking this over any of the nodes causes a dialog box to prompt the user for a new name for the node.

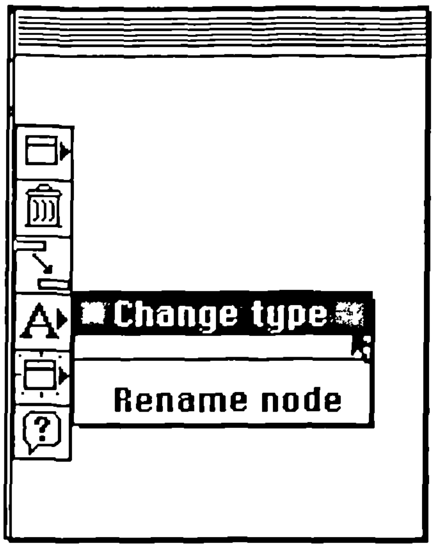


Figure 9.8 The 'change type' and 'rename node' options

Changing the type of a node is slightly more complex. The nature of the tool prevents the user from linking certain objects together, thus it is important that users are not allowed to contravene these linking rules by linking two permitted node types together and then changing one to an type that is not permitted. For example, if an 'Evidence' node is linked to a 'Claim' node, it is important that the user cannot change the claim to another 'Evidence' node. Thus the system checks the node that is being renamed and selects, from a database of known types, all the nodes that can replace the selected node without contravening the linking rules; these nodes are then presented to the user in a scrolling dialog box, which they can select in order to effect a change of type (see Figure 9.7).

Changing the type of a link follows a similar procedure to changing the type of node (see above) except this time the system checks its database for a list of relationships that can hold between the two nodes connected by the link. Again these are presented to the user in a scrolling dialog box.

The exception to these rules is if the node selected is a wildcard node, identified by it type being written in italicised text. Recall that wildcard nodes can have any type, and any relationship with other node types. Thus there are no restrictions placed the possible types, or relationships between adjacent nodes when one is a wildcard.

9.3.9 Text fields

Each of the argument nodes has a pop-up field associated with it that allows text to be typed into it. Text field are accessed by double-clicking on an argument node. When the field appears it does so with the cursor already placed at the end of any text in the field (or at the top-left if there is no text already in) so typing can be begin straight away.

The default size of the text-field is 6.6 by 2.6 cm and the default text font is Geneva 9 point, although these can be changed by the user if they wish. Early versions of AKA used standard HyperCard fields as text fields, but later versions used external windows as they allow the user to resize the text-field by dragging a resize box at the bottom right of the field, something not permitted by HyperCard fields. Changing the size, style and font of the text is achieved by using the standard Macintosh menu facilities.

In addition to resizing text fields they can also be moved; moving the parent node causes any open text fields to move proportionately. Text fields can also be move independently of nodes by holding down the control-key and dragging with the mouse. This feature is useful when multiple text-fields are open at the same time and the user wishes to read them all without disturbing the structure of the underlying network.

Closing the text-fields is achieved by the same means as opening: by a double click over the parent node. When text-fields are closed any changes to the text made; including the style, size and font are save; changes made to the size of the text-field are saved also.

9.3.10 Changing the strength of links

In certain circumstances it was thought that users would like to be able to show that some relationships are stronger than others. For example, a piece of evidence supporting a claim may be widely criticised. Alternatively a claim may be supported by evidence which it is generally agreed is good evidence. AKA allows such distinctions to be made by allowing the user to represent the strength of the links. This is done simply by having three thicknesses on line: thick lines standing for strong relationships, thin lines standing for weak relationships and medium lines standing for medium strength relationships.

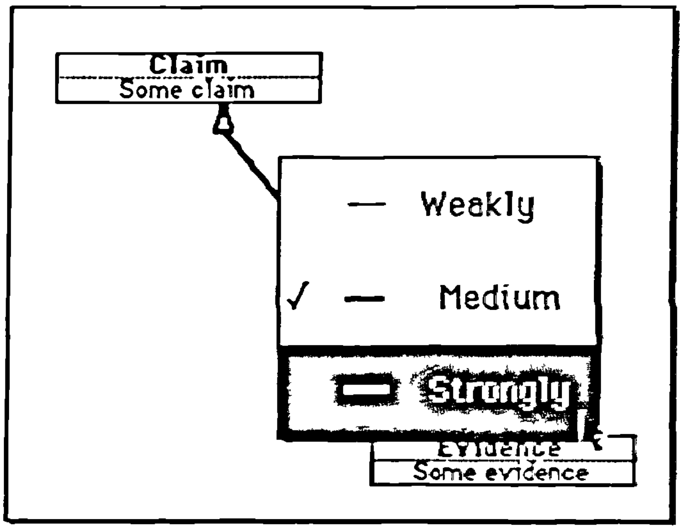


Figure 9.9 Changing the strength of a link

The default line size, and therefore the default relation strength is medium; although this can be changed by the user very easily. If the mouse is placed over a relation name and the mouse-button held down then a pop-up menu appears over the relation name, this contains the three link strengths, with the current strength having a tick next to it; changing the link strengths is done by dragging the mouse over the appropriate menu option and releasing the mouse-button, this causes the thickness of the line to change.

9.3.11 Balloon help

In order to make the system as simple as possible for users to use alone, a balloon help facility is provided. Balloon help uses the *FullBalloons* external command from the Rinaldi collection which automatically turns the Macintosh "Finder" balloon help on, and allows scripts to be placed in screen objects which evoke a help bubble when the mouse is move over it. The script is executed every time the mouse-pointer enters the button that contains it, if balloon help is switched on then the external command "FullBalloons" places the quoted text in a speech bubble on the screen (see Figure 9.10).

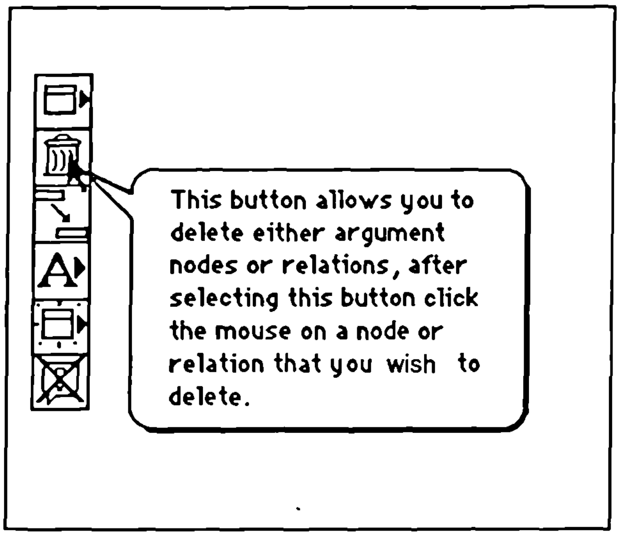


Figure 9.10 Balloon help for the "delete node" button.

Balloon help is switched on by selecting the "Balloon help" button in the tools palette, when it is switched on the icon of this button changes bears a cross showing that it is active; clicking it again turns balloon help off. Balloon help is available for all of the buttons in the tools palette, many of which are modal, that it the buttons can have different functions depending on the state of the system. For example the balloon help button itself has two functions: to turn balloon help on if it is off, and to turn it off it is on. Such modal buttons are handled by the use of IF... THEN.. handlers in the button script. Thus different two alternative messages may be displayed, depending on whether the system is currently in link mode or not.

As well as providing help relating to the function of the various buttons, balloon help can also indicate to the user what other nodes a particular node can be linked to, and the relations that can exist between these. This is the main function of balloon help in this system, and was implemented as a result of a number of users complaining that they could not remember what objects could be linked together, and what relationships were permitted. Paper-based descriptions of this tended to be ignored as they were difficult to read, and before balloon help was implemented a number of users wasted time trying out combinations of links to see if they were allowed and what relationships were provided. Figure 9.11 shows this facility in operation, note that it provides information about what the node is, what it can be linked to and what relationships are permitted.

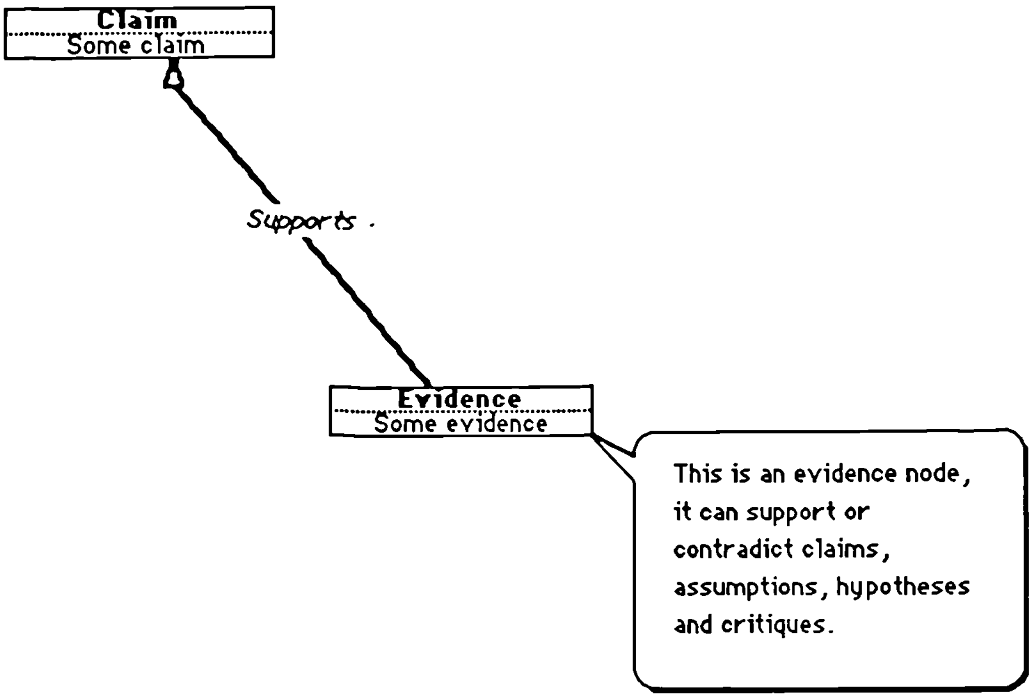


Figure 9.11 Balloon help for linking.

9.3.12 "Why not?" help.

"Why not?" help is a provision for allowing users to obtain some rationale for the restrictions placed on linking. When the system exits a linking routine after failing to find the attempted link in its database, it provides a dialog with the option "Why not?" (see Figure 9.6). Selecting this option brings up a window containing a text-based explanation why the two objects could not be linked. The window shown in Figure 9.12 is displayed when the user selects "Why not?" after unsuccessfully attempting to link two evidence nodes together. The help text is stored in a number of hidden HyperCard fields, there is one field for each help text, which is determined by the number of possible combinations of node that are not permitted to be linked. Each of the fields has a name formed by the concatenation of a source node and destination node; for example the field containing the help text shown in Figure 9.12 is called 'EvidenceEvidence'.

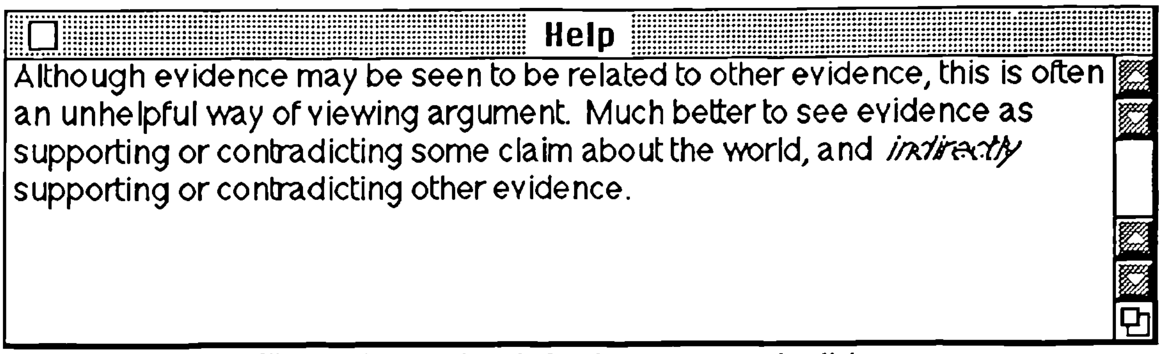


Figure 9.12 "Why not?" help window selected after the user attempted to link to evidence nodes.

The linking function keeps track of the types of the nodes that the user is attempting to link in a global variable, all it then has to do is to concatenate the two types, check if there is a field with that name, and if there is place the text into the help window.

9.3.13 Flashing direction

As mentioned in the previous section the facility that flashes nodes in the direction of a link was written before AKA had arrows. It was preserved, however, because even with arrows, confusion can arise when the screen gets cluttered. The problem here is not always the direction of links, but as nodes start to overlap and links get tangled, it is often difficult to see which objects are linked together, and what the relation names are. The flash direction facility was preserved for this reason. It is invoked simply by double-clicking the mouse over a relation name, this causes the nodes to flash in the order: source node, relation name, destination node, thereby indicating the direction of the relationship.

9.3.14 Listing nodes

A facility that arrived late in the evolution of AKA was the ability to list argument nodes that reside on the screen. This could be done in two ways: by the order in which they were created, or by the type of node. In both cases the lists are evoked by selecting a menu-option. Being able to list the nodes was implemented for two reasons: first, it provides a alternative way for users to find particular nodes, rather than scanning the network; and second, it was thought that providing a different representation might give learners a new perspective on the information that they are working with.

9.3.14.1 Listing by order

Listing by order merely collects together all of the argument nodes currently residing in the workspace and orders them by their order of creation. Because each of the nodes is a HyperCard field, and HyperCard automatically gives each new field a unique ID number of increasing size, ordering the nodes in is very simple to perform. The complete list is placed into a external list window, which allows data to be structured in columns (see Figure 9.13). Selecting any of the names in the window causes the corresponding node to flash, indicating the location of the node. Double-clicking on the name opens the text field associated with the node.

9.3.14.2 Listing by type

Listing by type produces a more structured list of the argument nodes, listing them according to their type. This feature simply checks through all of the argument nodes on the workspace grouping together nodes of a similar type, putting them in a sub-list, and the creating a master list of all the nodes by concatenating these sub-lists in a fixed way. As much as possible, the list is structured according to the precedence of the node type in argument; thus questions appear first in the list, then phenomena, evaluations, theories, hypotheses, claims and so on (see Figure 9.14). It was envisaged that this list may be a useful alternative representation for the argument network, perhaps giving users a fresh perspective on the arguments being constructed. It is for this reason that the list produced by AKA contains the titles of arguments even when there are no nodes of that type; to encourage learners to reflect upon the argument, perhaps thinking "I've got no assumptions, perhaps I could identify some."

9.3.15 Aliases

It is almost inevitable that during the construction of a network that a single node may need to be linked to more than one other node; for example an evidence node may support one claim and contradict another. If the two claims are some distance apart on the workspace, or there are a number of other nodes between the nodes, then the network can get tangled and difficult to read. For this reason AKA offers an alias option which allows a particular node to be copied and placed anywhere on the workspace, thus the alias can be linked to the node instead of the original which can reduce the number of confusing cross-links.

Aliases are identified by their titled being in outline text rather than the normal bold text; they also contain no text fields, instead double-clicking on an alias causes the text field of the original node to open, and flash to direct attention.

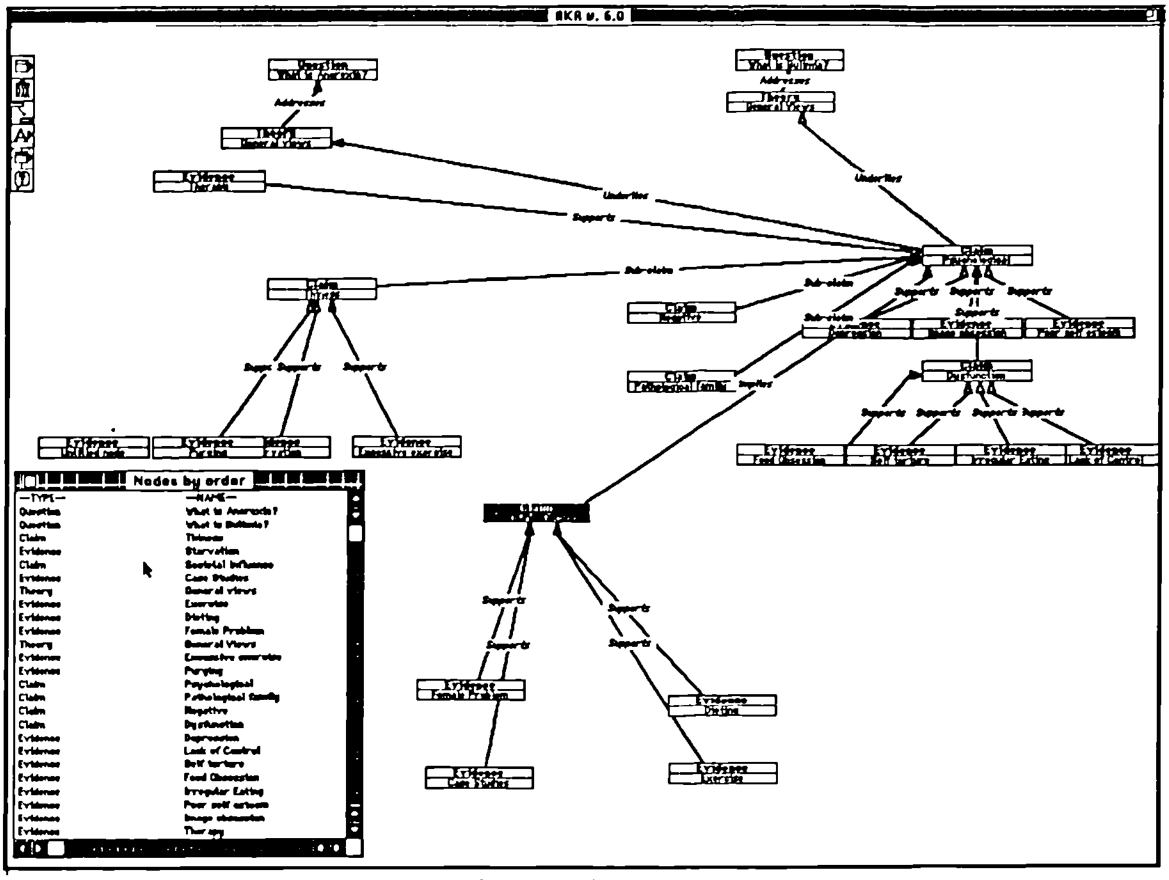


Figure 9.13 Listing the nodes by order of construction.

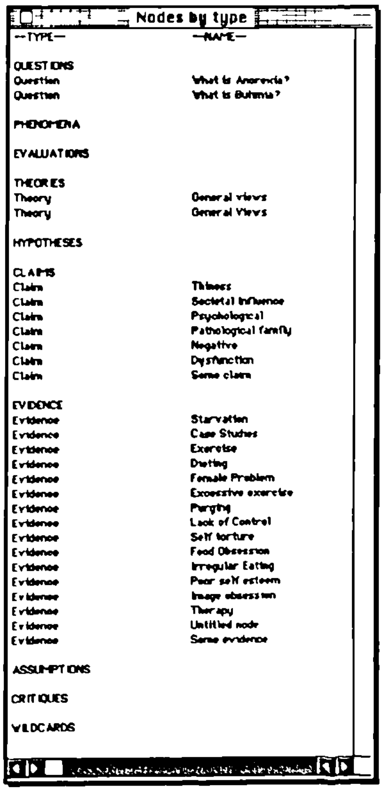


Figure 9.14 Listing the nodes by type

Attempting to delete an alias results in a dialog box which gives the user the option of deleting the alias alone, or the alias and the original (see Figure 9.15). Aliases cannot exist independently, therefore deleting a node that has an alias will automatically delete the alias as well; the user is warned of this by way of a dialog box (see Figure 9.16).

9.3.16 Refreshing the screen

Every time a linked node is moved the links need to be erased and re-drawn in a new place; erasing is done by painting over the old link using paint with the same colour as the background (in this case white). Unfortunately if the link crosses any other links then the part of the other link that overlaps with the link being deleted will also be erased. If this occurs a number of times then the network starts to look tatty with lots of broken lines; for this reason a refresh screen facility was added. Refresh screen is selectable from the 'Utilities' menu, and simply redraws the screen, mending any broken lines and erasing any rogue paint.

9.4 SUMMARY

The final version of AKA represented a culmination of an iterative design process. Features were added following comments by various testers, which were themselves tested on subjects. It was not only system features that were incorporated as a result of tests; the notation itself changed as a result of subjects struggling with too few terms, or terms that were too general. As a result of this the notation is considerably more complex than it was at the start; perhaps too complex for most individuals. However, given the nature of the learning tasks (see next chapter) it seemed sensible to have too many rather than too few nodes and relation types.

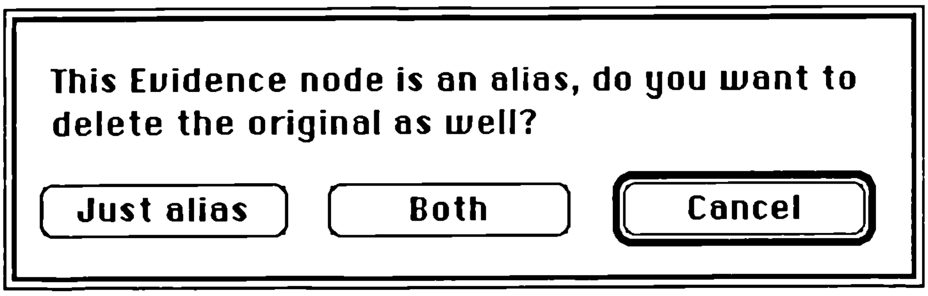


Figure 9.15 Dialog box presented when attempting to delete an alias.

Figure 9.16 Dialog box presented when attempting to delete a node that has an alias associated with it.

AKA suffers most from being implemented in HyperCard. Although it affords rapid prototyping and an in-built user-friendly interface, it is much less flexible than a true programming language—often many of the features had to be achieved in ways that were notable less graceful than they could have been. Perhaps HyperCard's biggest drawback is that it is slow. For short programs that do not require use of the graphics facility this is negligible; AKA however uses long scripts and extensive use of graphics. Additionally when networks get bigger, AKA runs ever slower. In some ways this may be more of a personal bias; few of the subjects and testers commented on the slowness, perhaps because they were unused to other, faster, structuring tools such as MacEuclid. Unfortunately the nature of the studies reported in the next two chapters required extensive manipulation of the system to arrive at appropriate control conditions, and thus use of off-the-shelf software was not possible.

10

Two case studies

10.1 Introduction

Although laboratory-based studies into the use of knowledge mapping tools can tell us a great deal, it is also the case that the artificiality of the task can have the implications for the way that any tools are used. A number of researchers (Suchman, 1987; Carroll, 1990) have suggested that in order to appreciate the limitations of a computer system (or any system for that matter) one needs to study it being used for real tasks. To supplement any experimental observations is was deemed appropriate to investigate the use of the knowledge mapping tools in a real task. Two subjects took part in the study and used the tools to organise and structure their ideas in order to write an essay assignment.

Essay writing and learning place different demands on an individual. Essay writing does not require that learners retain information—although this may occur as a by-product of the writing process. It does, however, require that the learner understands the information if ideas are to be communicated effectively. At the point of the study the subjects in these two studies claimed that although they had a basic grasp of the main points to be articulated in the essay, they did not have a clear idea of many of the details and arguments that they would undoubtedly need to incorporate in o the essay, neither did they have a clear idea of the structure of the information. It is important at this point to define that the term *the structure of the information* relates to the relationships between arguments and concepts, it should be contrasted with the term *the structure of the essay,* which in addition to the structure of the information, is compromised with other issues such as rhetorical style and having to present the information in a clear, linear way. The first term involves learning, the second, although it *can* involve learning, is more concerned with the process of writing, and involves different skills. Of course it is impossible to pinpoint, in a task such as this, the point at which learning skills end and writing skills take over; in many ways the process of writing occurs side by side with the process of learning: one naturally complements the other. Writing also involves organising ideas, another process which can have an effect on recall.

The subjects were given two tools to use: an unconstrained knowledge mapping tool, and a constrained argumentation tool (AKA) which was described in detail in Chapter 9. The knowledge mapping tool was given as a means for subjects to create and organise their notes; the constrained tool was given to allow them to represent the structure of the main arguments to be incorporated into the essay.

10.2 METHOD

10.2.1 Subjects

Two subjects took part in the study: an MSc student in health economics, and a BA student in English literature. Both had been assigned essays as part of their course and had agreed to use the tool to help them in this task. Both subjects were male; and were not paid for their participation.

10.2.2 Materials

Subjects in this study were provided with two tools to help them in their task. The constrained tool, described in Chapter 9, and an unconstrained concept mapping tool. The unconstrained tool was similar to the constrained tool, in that it both nodes and links could have types assigned to them, the difference was that these were optional not mandatory. The purpose of using two tools was that it was anticipated that in such a long sessions subjects would probably wish to have some form of scratch pad where they could record their ideas, and perhaps construct simple maps, before using the constrained tool. As we shall see the emphasis that the subjects placed on the two tools was one of the principal differences in this study. The constrained tool was of a slightly earlier version than the final one described in Chapter 9. The mos' salient difference is that it contained only six node types: *Claim, Evidence, Question, Phenomenon, Assumption, Critique.* It therefore omitted *Hypothesis* and *Theory* which were added later. Additionally, the arrow facility had not been implemented; links between nodes were therefore 'plain' lines.

Although the two tools operated independently of one another, it was possible to cut and paste text between the two tools, although nodes and links could not be transferred in this way.

A Macintosh IIcx was used to run the experiment. This was fitted with a two-page monitor, enabling the two tool windows to be on screen at the same time in A4 size.

As in the previous experiments screen-recording were made; and a video of the interaction was made to match up on screen actions with verbal discussions.

10.2.3 Procedure

Subjects were introduced to the two tools by way of a paper-based tutorial (see Appendix 3) which familiarised them with the various facilities available to them. Following this they were shown examples of networks created by other subjects during the development of the tools; during this part the experimenter discussed the nature of the various node types and relation names. Subjects then had an opportunity to practise using both tools by themselves. This required them to construct two networks based on the Callanish stone circle. A short discussion followed this when subjects were asked to describe the network that they had created to the experimenter; the purpose of this was to ensure that subjects had a working knowledge of the various argument primitives used in the constrained tool. When it seemed that subjects understood how to use the tool, they proceeded to the main part of the study.

Subjects were allowed as much time as they wanted to complete the task. They used both tools to organise and structure their ideas. They were requested to bring along any books or notes that they felt that they might need to help them to compete the task. During the session the experimenter periodically interrupted them to discuss what they had done, and what they were going to do next. This method was chosen in preference to using 'think aloud' protocols because it was envisaged that having to verbalise in this way may interfere with students efforts to learn and organise the information.

The session ended when subjects felt that they had assembled enough information to help them to write an essay. Both subjects were given the option to take the networks away with them either in computer-readable form, or as a computer print-out which contained both the map and any notes that were made.

10.3 CASE STUDY 1: HEALTH ECONOMICS

Case study 1 investigated the use of knowledge mapping and knowledge structuring tools in supporting essay writing in the field of health economics. The subject had an assignment to write an essay relating to the factors that influence health states. This required him to discuss various claims and theories, assess these based on different criticisms and evidence, and finally produce a conclusion. It was anticipated that the use of the constrained tool would help in structuring these arguments and information required to complete this task. This subject used the tool for a total of 6 hours and 40 minutes, excluding training, over the course of a single day.

10.3.1 Use of the tools

Participant 1 used both of the tools, but spent the overwhelming majority of the time using the unconstrained tool. Indeed it was only when he was four hours into the study before he opened[1] the knowledge structuring tool and this was only briefly to check the different node types available. All told this subject spent 5 hours and 32 minutes using the unconstrained tool, and only 1 hour and 8 minutes using the constrained tool.

10.3.2 Description of the interaction

The first section of the interaction consisted of a period where the subject made copious notes in a single note-field belonging to a node in the unconstrained tool called "Class differences in health" the information outlines empirical evidence relating to the observation that there are class differences in health. This took approximately one hour. Following this period two other nodes were created: one on ethnicity, and one relating to common sense theories. Notes were made in the ethnicity node outlining the fact that the claims in the first node are flawed as they failed to control for ethnicity. The 'Common sense' node contained information relating to the general perception that there are class differences in health (see Figure 10.1).

Discussions with the subject revealed that this part of the session involved laying out what he already new about the topic, and making notes to outline various objections:

> "What I'm doing is trying to lay the foundations of the argument. Everyone knows that there are class differences in health, but we shouldn't take this as a matter of good faith. I'm trying to provide evidence for them."

Having set up a general framework which lays out the nature of the problem to be addressed, the subject then proceeded to create a set of explanation nodes that address some of these issues.

---

[1]The two windows were both on screen that the same time and were both in view. However, I refer to opening when a participant makes the window active for some reason.

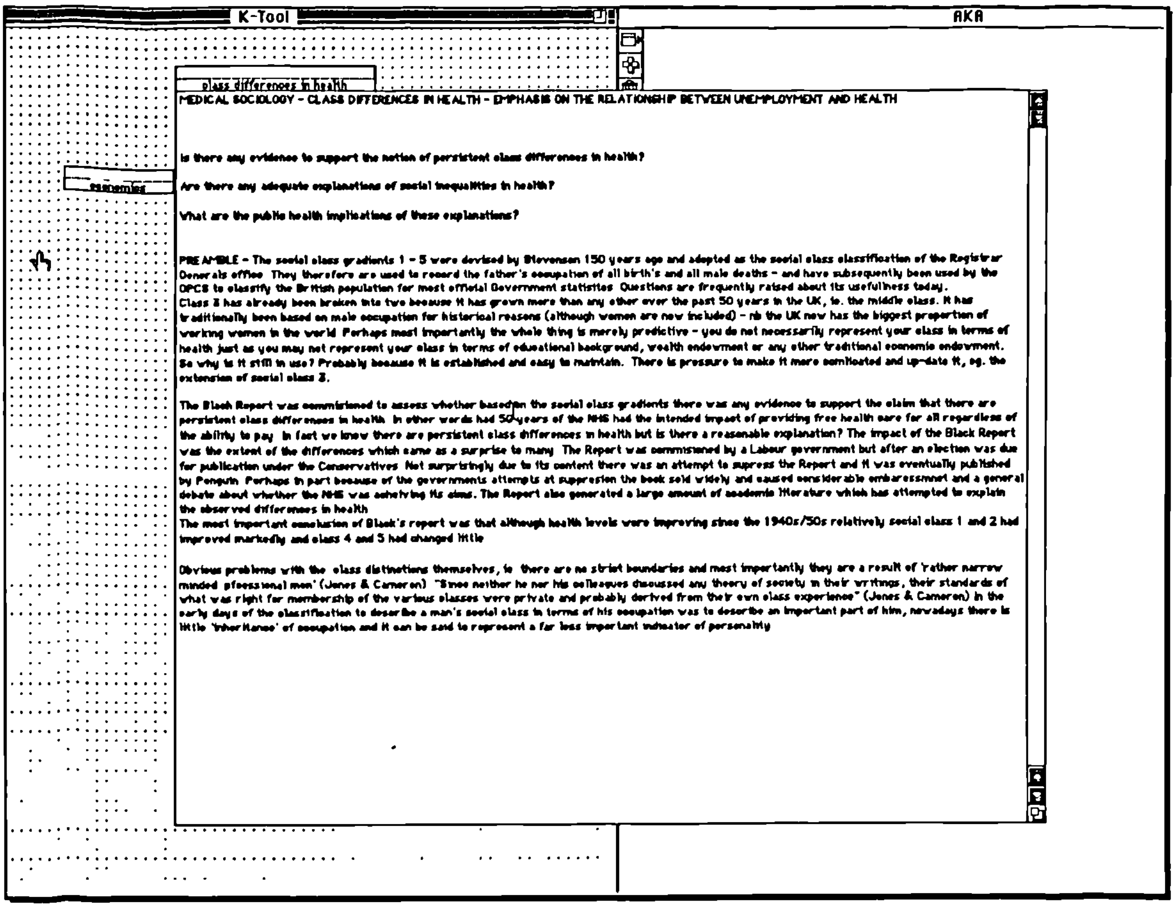


Figure 10.1 Notes created for the node 'Class differences in health".

In total four nodes named explanation nodes are created (called explanation 1 through to 4), these are created in rapid succession, all within 15 minutes of one another. Brief notes are typed into each of the note-fields associated with these nodes; the notes simply outline the nature of the explanation and are written in skeletal form, as though they are to be fleshed out later (see Figure 10.2).

Having assembled a number of possible explanations for the notion of class differences, the subject then tries to outline some evidence which related to the explanations. A node is created with the name 'Evidence' and some information is typed into it. At the end of the evidence a contradictory clause which begins 'However...' is introduced. Immediately after a new node is created, named 'Critique' and the 'However...' clause pasted into it. He said of this move:

> "I suddenly realised that I was saying two separate things, on the one hand I was giving evidence to support this position, and on the other hand I was qualifying the statement with a critique, which is sort of what you do in an essay. I thought that it [the clause] would be better off in its own node, mainly because it's important and I intend to come back to it."

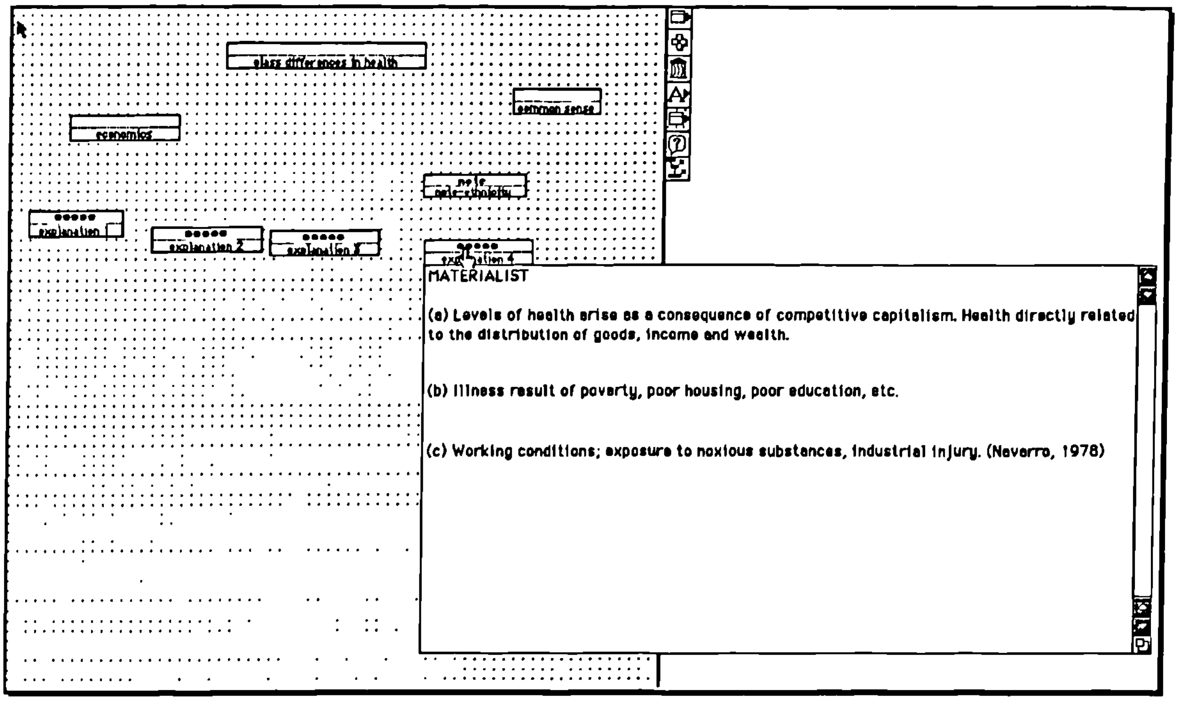


Figure 10.2 Skeletal notes in explanation note-field

In fact, the position represented by the 'Evidence' node is not really evidence in the strictest sense, but itself more of a critique of a position. The node 'Critique' is therefore a critique of a critique! (see Figure 10.3)

He then expands on this criticism in the node entitled 'Critique', he also notes what the people asserting the critique believe should be done. The node 'Evidence' is then moved over near to the node 'Explanation 1' these are then linked, and asterisk is used to denote this relationship. The critique is then linked to the evidence node, again an asterisk is used.

More notes are then made in the node entitled 'Explanation 2'. These elaborate upon the information that was already there. As before, a critique is placed at the end of the notes (see Figure 10.4). Unlike before, this is not incorporated into a critique node. A new node is then created relating to a theory put forward by LeGrand, some of the information in this node is incorporated in a node created called 'Economics'. The text from economics is copied, pasted into the new node 'LeGrand' and the older node is deleted. Thus the old node which stated general economic principles is specified so that it asserts a single theory.

There then follows a period where various note fields are opened an closed as the subject reads the text contained in them, to check what information they contain.

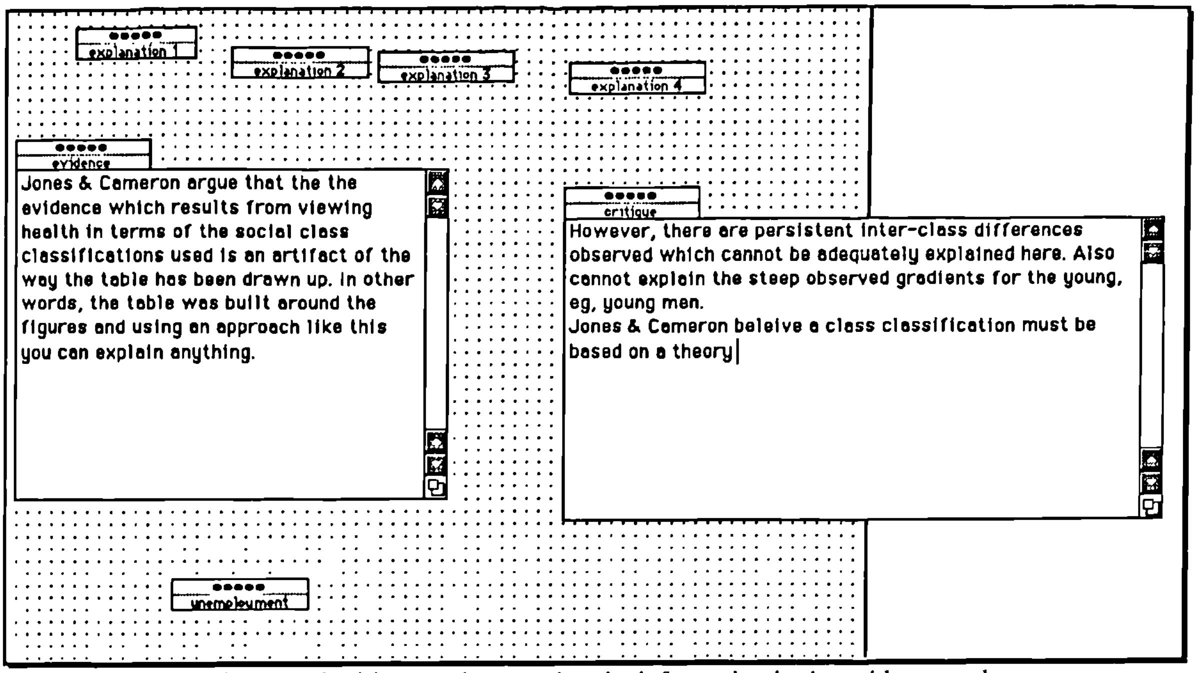


Figure 10.3 An evidence and critique node, note that the information in the evidence node is more of a critique than evidence.

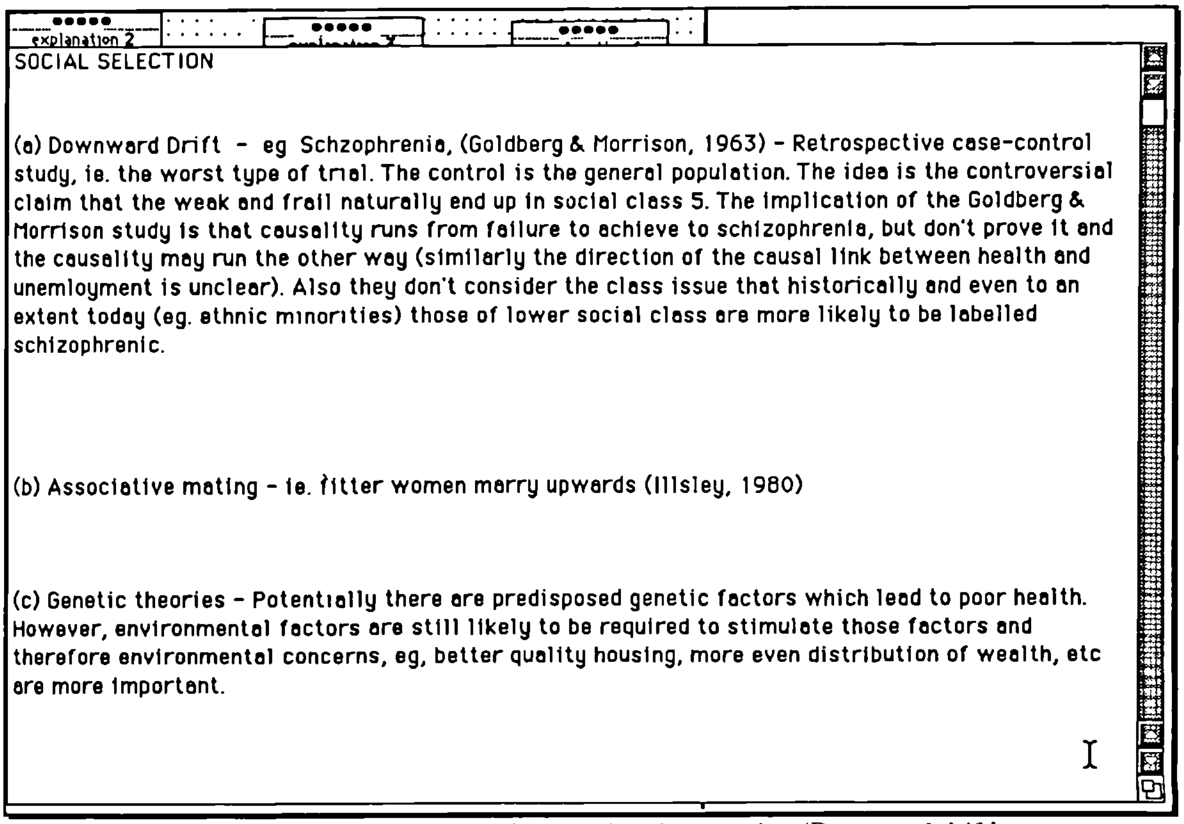


Figure 10.4 The skeletal outline is expanded, note that the assertion 'Downward drift' contains both expository information and information that criticises this position.

Following this the explanations that are currently unlinked, that is all of them bar 'Explanation 1', are linked to the concept 'Common sense'(see Figure 10.5):

> "What I am trying to show here is that although we believe intuitively that Social class must have an effect on heath, there are a lot of confounding factors. I mean, trying to isolate the effects of SES [Social-Economic Status] per se from the knock-on effects of, well, Northeners eating pies and drinking beer is difficult. I'm trying here to show that there are alternative explanations for the effects of class on health, and then I'm trying to knock these down by using other arguments. So [points to links between explanation nodes and Common sense node] these are all related, sort of to common sense beliefs"

He therefore sees his task as being to put forward evidence for there being class differences in health, against opposition which stated that there are no differences.

Next the types of the four explanation nodes are changed from the default bullets to the type 'Explanation'. The reason why node-names were initially used to denote type may be indicated by the following exchange:

> Experimenter: "These [nodes] are given names that are type-like, why have you done this?"
>
> Subject: "I thought it easier to call them just by a name, and worry about the types later, when it actually matters."

This indicates that the subject is adopting a least commitment strategy, preferring to start of with ideas that are relatively unspecified and formalise them later. It is important to bear in mind that this is not something that is determined by the system — in the unconstrained tool (but not the constrained tool) types can be changed at any point during the interaction. Rather, it appears that the subject does not wish to commit himself to a specific type of node because he is unsure as to exactly what role the information represented by the node will fulfil as the network develops.

Three nodes are then created all with the type 'Implication'. These are then given the names 1 through to 4, and linked to the 'Explanation' nodes with the same names (1 through to 4). The implication nodes as yet contain no text.

> **Subject:** "After creating these explanation nodes, which are sort of theories I suppose; I've now gone on to try and decide what the implications of the different explanations are for health policy."
>
> **Experimenter**: "You have four implications nodes, does this mean that you know of four separate implications, each relating to a particular explanation?"
>
> **Subject:** "No, well not yet, but this one does [points to explanation 1] and given that there are all these explanations [points to other explanation nodes] each one must imply something or other for policy, whether its stated is a different matter."

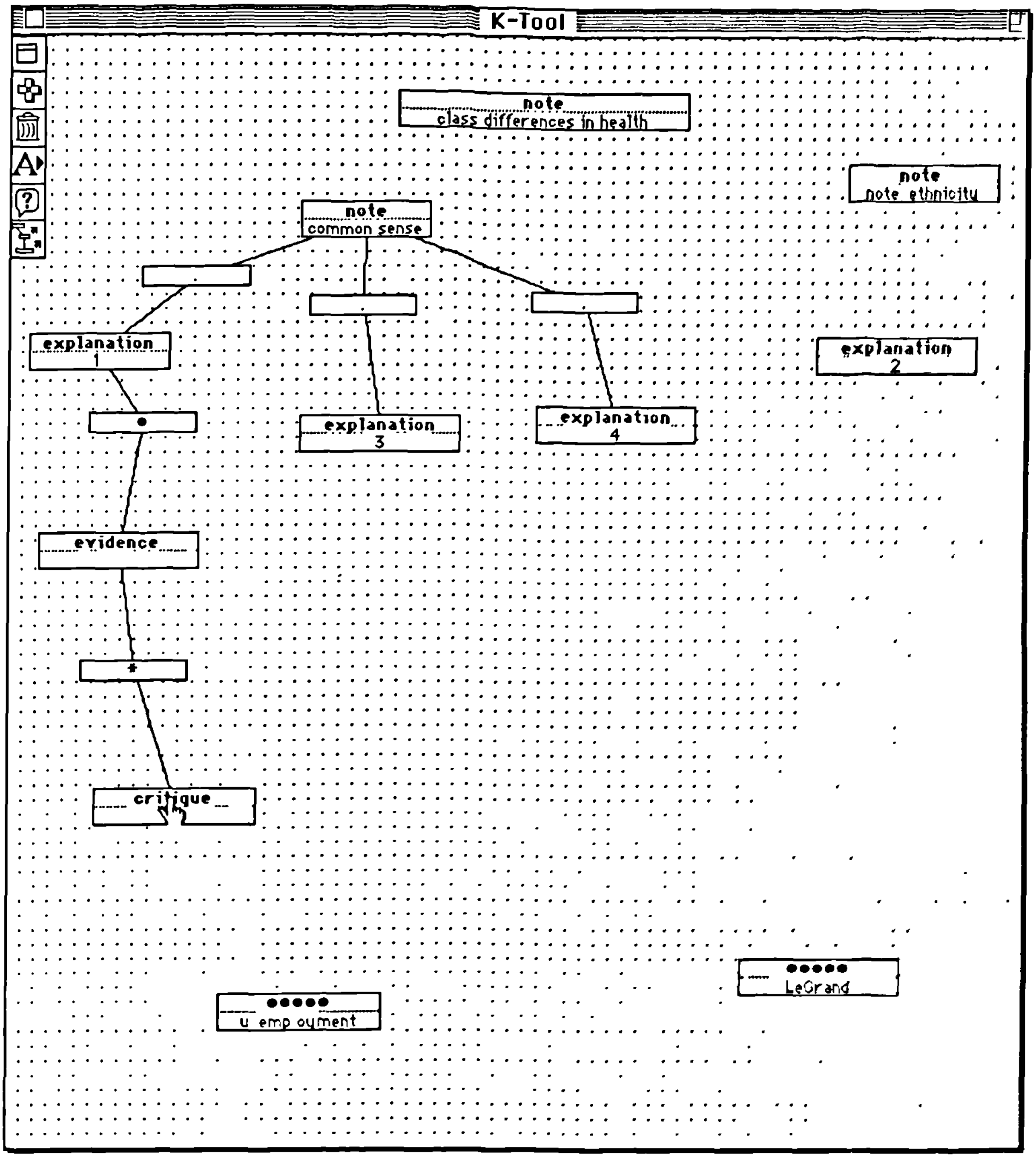


Figure 10.5 Explanation nodes are linked to the central 'n e' node Common sense

This interchange perhaps reveals something quite imp rtant abou the effec ha us ng a network-based map is having on the subjects' behaviour. By laying ou he different explanations separately, and being informed by the text that one explanat on has an implication for health practice, the subject decides ha a l of he o her explanations must have implications as well. This may then fuel a sear h for the implications in the literature, or encourage him to reflec upon what he knows about health economics to try and postulate an implicati n.

In the next step the implications for all the explanations were specified in the text fields and the implications nodes linked to the corresponding explanations. During the process of making notes the subject spent a great deal of time with a number of note-fields open as he tried to determine the nature of the implications (see Figure 10.6). The intention was to fill in the details of the implications and then try and construct an argument network using the constrained tool.

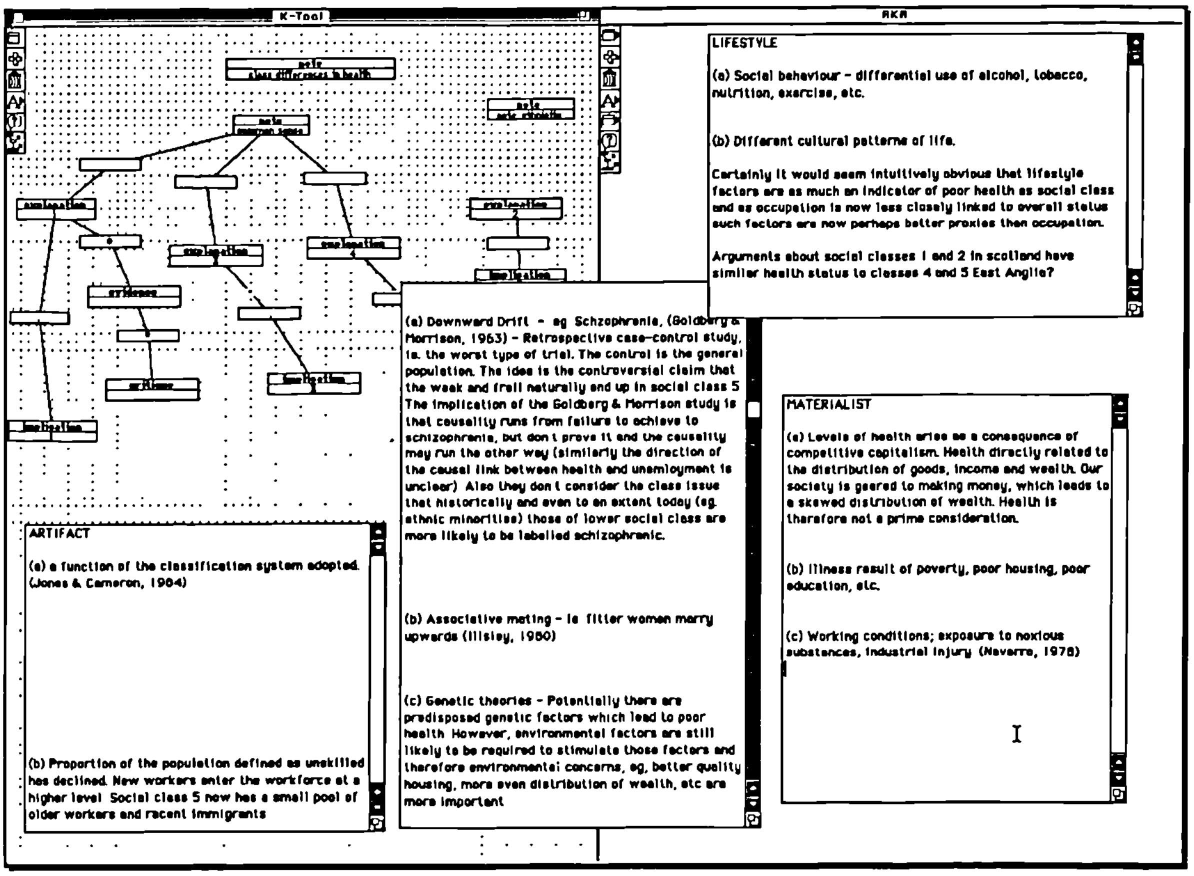


Figure 10.6 The network with some of the note-fields visible.

Some of the implication nodes were linked together, because the corresponding explanations both prescribe the same action.

With all the nodes now in place the subject then spends some time refining the network. Some of the nodes are given proper types, more notes are added to some of the note-fields and so on.

10.3.3 Using the constrained tool

As was mentioned above the constrained tool was used for only a fraction of the time that the unconstrained tool was used. In many ways the network provided using the unconstrained tool contained a reasonably articulate, if rather idiosyncratic and under-specified argument relating to health care policy.

The use of the constrained tool began with the specification of the first claim. This was basically a re-written version of the information articulated in Explanation 1 from unconstrained tool, although the text was more focused. Some evidence is provided to support this position, and a critique node is created which criticises this evidence. As for the claim both these nodes contain refinements of the information incorporated into nodes in the unconstrained tool. Following this, three other claims are then created: named 'Claim 1', 'Claim 2' and 'Claim 3'. Text is typed into these nodes, which again is similar to that in the explanation nodes in the unconstrained tool . 'Claim 1' is then renamed 'No differences', 'Claim 2' is re-named 'lifestyle' and 'Claim 3' is re-named 'Materialist' these names are more meaningful and related to the propositions that they assert. 'No differences' states that there are no real differences in health as a function of class; 'Lifestyle' relates to information about the effects of unhealthy lifestyle that poorer people tend to lead; and 'Materialist' states that the poorer members of society often live in less healthy areas and so on.

The sole piece of evidence is linked to the three claims: supporting 'lifestyle', 'Materialist' and contradicting the 'No difference' position. A new claim node is created called 'Differences' to contrast with the no differences position, and the two claims that assert that there is a difference are linked together with the relationship 'Sub-claim'. As the subject stated:

> "It seemed that when it boils down to it there are only two claims: that there is a difference and that there isn't a difference. These then contain more subtle differences. There really isn't a theory or anything for the statement that there are no differences; it mainly just contains criticisms of the approaches to measuring the differences... I created the differences node because it balanced the no differences node. These two [Materialist and lifestyle] are sort of sub-claims of it."

The position that there are no class differences is therefore really a null hypothesis; there is little evidence to support it: the burden of proof lies on those who state that there are differences.

When asked whether he thought they really were sub-claims he said:

> **Subject:** "Well they're related in some way, and they *are* sub-claims of each other, but perhaps they are more than that as well.
>
> **Experimenter:** "I mean, why have you got 'materialist' a sub-claim of 'lifestyle'; why didn't you just put them as both being sub-claims of differences, linked directly to it?"
>
> **Subject:** "Well, I could, but they aren't independent: having poor housing and education can effect the sort of lifestyle you lead, so they are related."

Since in this model claims could only support, contradict, imply or be a sub-claim to another claim the subject was experiencing a problem of being unable to express what he wanted, so he defaulted to using a sub-claim relationship. The problem was not that sub-claim was the wrong sort of relationship, but that it could not express the nature of the relationship in as fine enough way. It would appear that this is a manifestation of Green's role expressiveness, which relates to how well the set of available terms allow the user to express themselves. Note, however, that the subject could think of no better term than the one he selected; he therefore satisficed with a structure that was close to the one that he wanted.

Finally in this part of the interaction a claim of 'Selection' was created, again derived from the explanations made in the unconstrained tool. This contained information that stated that to some extent so-called class differences in health are a result of genetically determined differences in health which also determine what class someone will be in. For example, it is argued that fitter women marry men who are higher in the class hierarchy. The evidence mobilised to address this claim is rather curious. The evidence node connected to it states evidence that supports the position, however the link between the evidence and the claim is a *contradicts* relationship. This is by virtue of the fact that the evidence is largely retrospective and has subsequently been largely discredited. In actual fact what we have here is some supportive evidence that has been criticised, this criticism should be represented by a critique node attacking the evidence. At the end of the study the subject agreed with this point and admitted that he was incorrect in his procedure at this point. This could be due to a number of reasons. First, and perhaps most obviously, it could be the case that the subject did not review the network carefully enough to identify this inconsistency. Second, it may be a manifestation of Green's viscosity, recall that this is a measure of a tool's ability to be changed. He may have seen the inconsistency but could not be bothered to change, given that it was not crucial, and would require more work.

Another point was that the 'Selection' claim was not linked in to the rest of the network, the reason for this was that:

> "...it represents a different approach from the one in the rest of the network. It doesn't state that there are no class differences per se, just that the class differences are the result of other factors."

In other words by adopting a strict dichotomy: pitting differences against no differences, the subject automatically excluded information that provided alternative explanations for the observations. This is an interesting point and is not merely the result of the constraints provided. The constraints built in to the system would permit such a feature; for example, instead of a dichotomy three top-level claims could be advanced: that there are real differences in class health, no differences, and artificial differences. The problem with the subject's map is that the argument advanced was too narrow in its scope. This may perhaps be due to unfamiliarity of dealing with this type of representation, or it may be indicative of some underlying failure to conceptualise the problem *per se* in a suitably rich way.

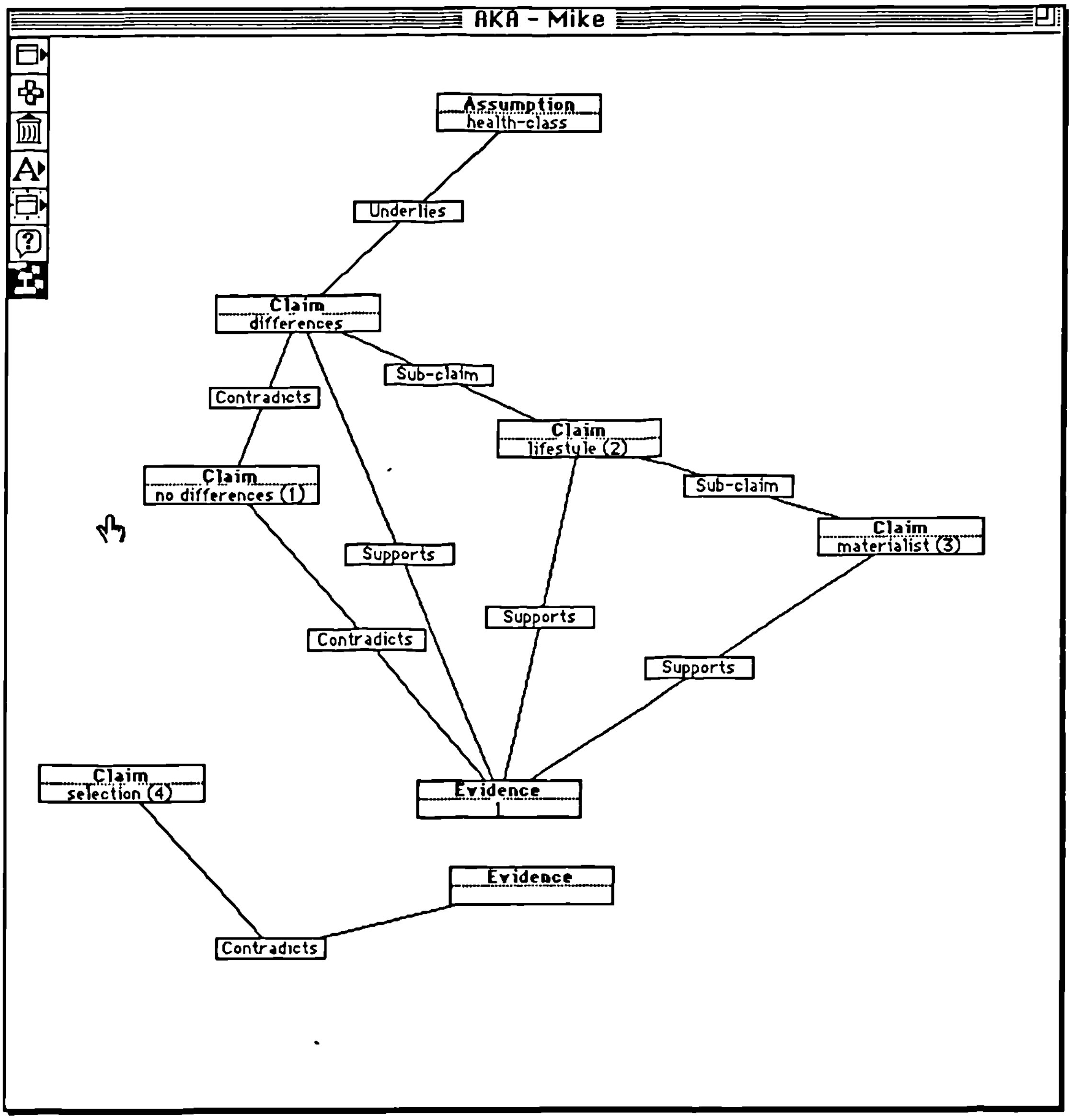


Figure 10.7 The finished map created using the constrained tool

10.3.4 Summary

This subject was quite well prepared for this session in the sense that he had most most of the ideas regarding the structure and content of the essay failrly well formulated at the outset. This can be seen by the amount of text that he was 'downloading' in the early phases (see Figure 10.1). In truth the benefit that either of the two tools had is questionable, they may have helped clear up a few ideas, but it seems from the statements that he made during the interaction that the tool was not really helping that much, the rather impoverished constrained map (Figure 10.7) also suggests that using this tool gave little insights into the problem. I shall say more about his after discussing the results of the second subject.

10.4 CASE STUDY 2: STRUCTURALISM

Case study 2 was rather different to case study 1: requiring the subject to represent his thoughts on structuralist theories of literature. It was supposed that this task really would test the argumentation model; the previous domain, health economics tends to use terms such as evidence, theory and the like; often the arguments concerning literature are more oblique, more tied up in discursive text.

10.4.1 Use of the two tools

Subject 2 spent 8 hours and 25 minutes using the two tools spread over two days. This time divided into 1 hour and 40 minutes using the unconstrained tool, and 6 hours and 54 minutes using the more structure the constrained tool. This is in contrast to subject 1 who spent the majority of the time using the unconstrained tool.

10.4.2 Use of the unconstrained tool

As for subject 1 the interaction started with the creation of a single node in which the subject made copious introductory notes, finishing off by specifying two questions that needed to be addressed: 'Is structuralism an adequate account of language?' and 'Is language a prison?'. The subject then creates three other nodes in quick succession: 'Basic Saussure', 'Marxism' and 'Historical context'. Some expository text is typed into these nodes. At this point the subject justified his actions:

> "Well I've got two questions in here [the 'Superstructuralism' node] relating to whether it is a good account of language and what its implications are [Is language a prison] so I'm just laying out the various factors that are relevant to answering those. 'Basic Saussure' is just Saussure's position, and 'Marxism' and 'Historical context' are sort of to do with thoughts that were flying around at the time."

Thus having formulated the question, the subject was laying out the historical context of the arguments. 'Marxism' and 'Historical context' are then linked with an untitled relation.

A new node is created 'Public system' this is linked to the 'Superstructuralism' node by the relation 'Evidence'. Two other new nodes are created: 'Sign nature' which is linked to 'Superstructuralism' with the relationship 'Evidence' and 'Meaning fixed' which is linked to 'Sign nature' 'Implication'.

"...Saussure's arguments are partly based on the premises that the relationship between the signifier, that is the word, and the signified, the object in the real world, are arbitrarily related. There is no reason why, say, a dog should be called a dog and not a cat. [The other reason]...is that language is a public system it is an inherently social phenomenon, that cannot be discussed in isolation. [Both of] these are therefore some sort of evidence for structuralism. [Meaning being fixed] is refuted here by Saussure's argument that there are two signifiers for a single signified and this can change. This is related to structuralism, but it's not evidence, more of an implication."

Following this, a number of other nodes were created relating to various factors relevant to the structuralist debate (see Figure 10.8).

"What I've done is started mapping what structuralism is, the sort of things that it replaces, some of the things that Saussure says implies, the sort of things that refute those implications; and therefore to an extent, refute structuralism. It also comes to the sense that one's a sign and one's a public system"

Figure 10.8 shows the network in its almost completed state. It can be seen although that there is some organisation to the network denoted by the links between nodes, there are also links left untitled:

"I've left this one [the link between 'orgsound' and 'Public system' untitled. Organised sound ['orgsound'] is linked in some way to it both being a public system: that meaning is public, and meaning being fixed. Both this and the others [untitled links] are untitled because I'm not sure how they fit in."

A number of nodes are left unlinked, this was not merely due to carelessness:

"In a sense I'm breaking structuralism up and trying to look at it in terms of other things such as rhetoric and personal meaning; though I'm not sure what I'm doing with that yet. There is a completely different paradigm over here [points to the right of the network] which is Marxism / materialism, which has to be taken into account. I haven't linked them in yet: maybe Marxism can be used to provide a critique of structuralism, or an alternative to it. I have to put it in terms of the enlightenment as well."

Hence the reason for the poorly specified links is due to the subject being unable to come up with a precise definition of the relationships between concepts, short of saying that they are relevant. This appears to occur at two levels: at a local level, being unable to specify relationships between individual pairs of nodes; and at the level of clusters of nodes, where the subject is trying to fit a paradigm distributed across more than one node to another paradigm.

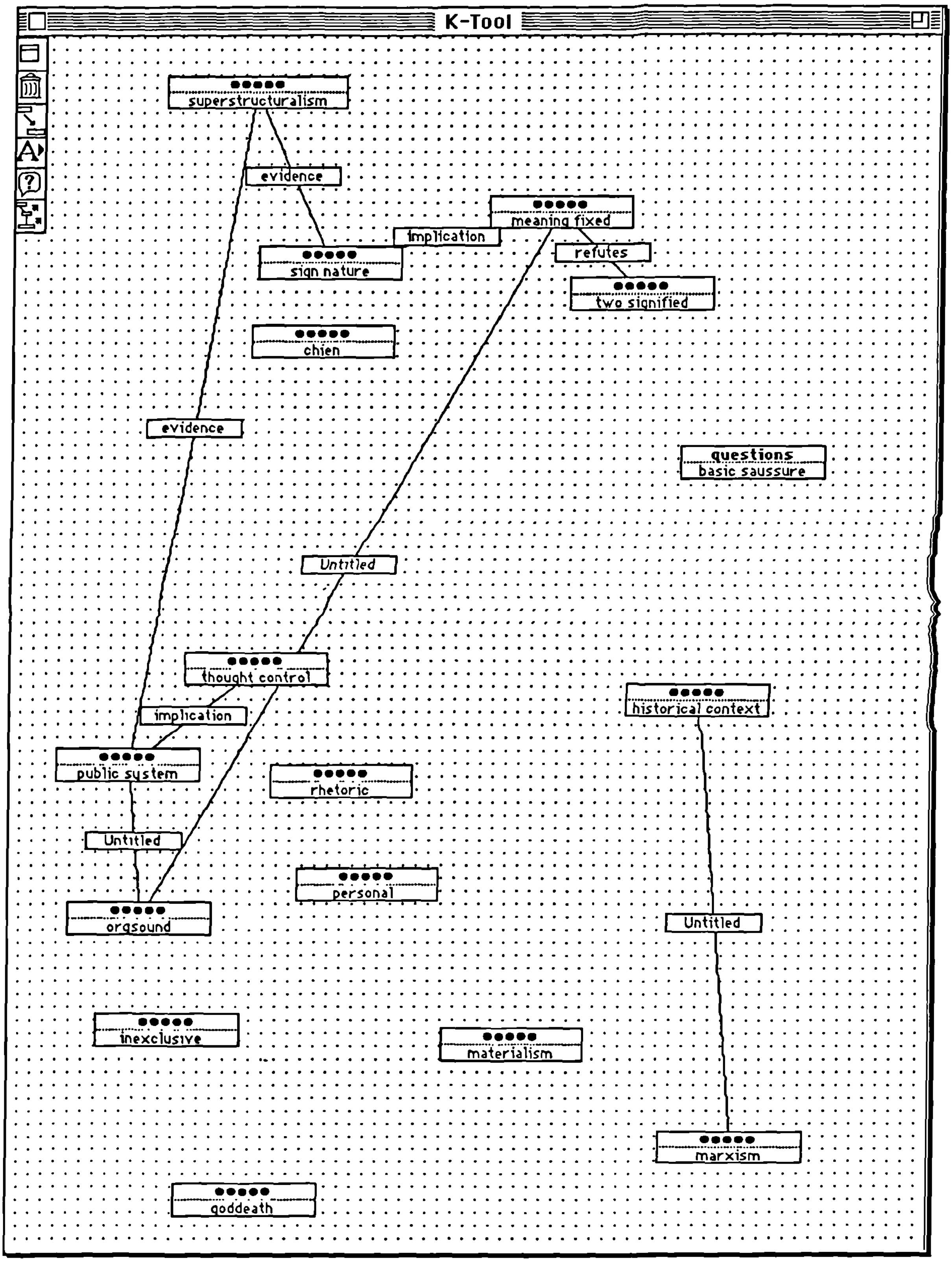


Figure 10.8 The network constructed using the unconstrained tool almost complete

Overall it appears that the unconstrained tool was used very much for brainstorming: concepts were created as the subject thought of them, or as they were suggested by other concepts. Concepts that were linked tended to be done so shortly after they were created, rather than near the end. Very little text was actually included in the network, apart from the text that was typed in at the very beginning, perhaps indicating that the subject was dealing with the organisation of ideas rather than considering the way that it would be translated into text. This seems to be quite different to the way that subject 1 proceeded.

10.4.3 Use of the constrained tool

As has been mentioned, use of the constrained tool accounted for most of the time of the interaction as a whole. The use of the constrained tool started off with the creation of a question, which was: "Does structuralism give us an accurate theory of language?". It is therefore similar to the main question noted in the unconstrained tool . Following on from this three evidence nodes were created that were closely modelled on three of the nodes in the unconstrained tool . Then the subject hit a problem trying to use the model:

> "[Structuralism is]... such a self-contained system. There aren't any experiments or anything. There are kind of observations, which kind of point to things, but is seems that the way that these observations are made certain assumptions which make it difficult to use this [the argumentation model]."

The problem seemed to be that the way information is expresses in the text-books does not explicitly accord with the argumentation model. As he said shortly after:

> "Part of the difficulty is that I'm used to a more open style: you're set a question, and although you come up with an answer at the end; most of the essay is more of an exploration into the nature of the question."

It is interesting to note that 'exploring the question' in terms of deciding which information is relevant and, perhaps more importantly, the role that the information plays in addressing the question appears to be the most important factor in using the tool effectively.

The subject then seemed to get the hang of using the model; some claims were created, and the subject realised that two of the things that were initially called evidence were in actual fact claims. Once this impasse had been resolved the subject produced a highly organised representation of the information:

> "I was talking to someone last night who was saying that you can't say if a work of art is good or bad, it's all a matter of opinion. I don't see why literature should get away with that. This [the tool] makes you look at what's happening [in the domain] and means that your aesthetic ideas are a lot clearer."

Once the claim had been defined the main part of the network was assembled very quickly (see Figure 10.9).

There are two top-level claims: that meaning is fixed in an institution of discourse, and that language is phenomenological; these are characterised in the network as being in direct contradiction to one another. Only one piece of evidence was placed in support of the phenomenological claim, but it had no contradictory evidence and no critiques.

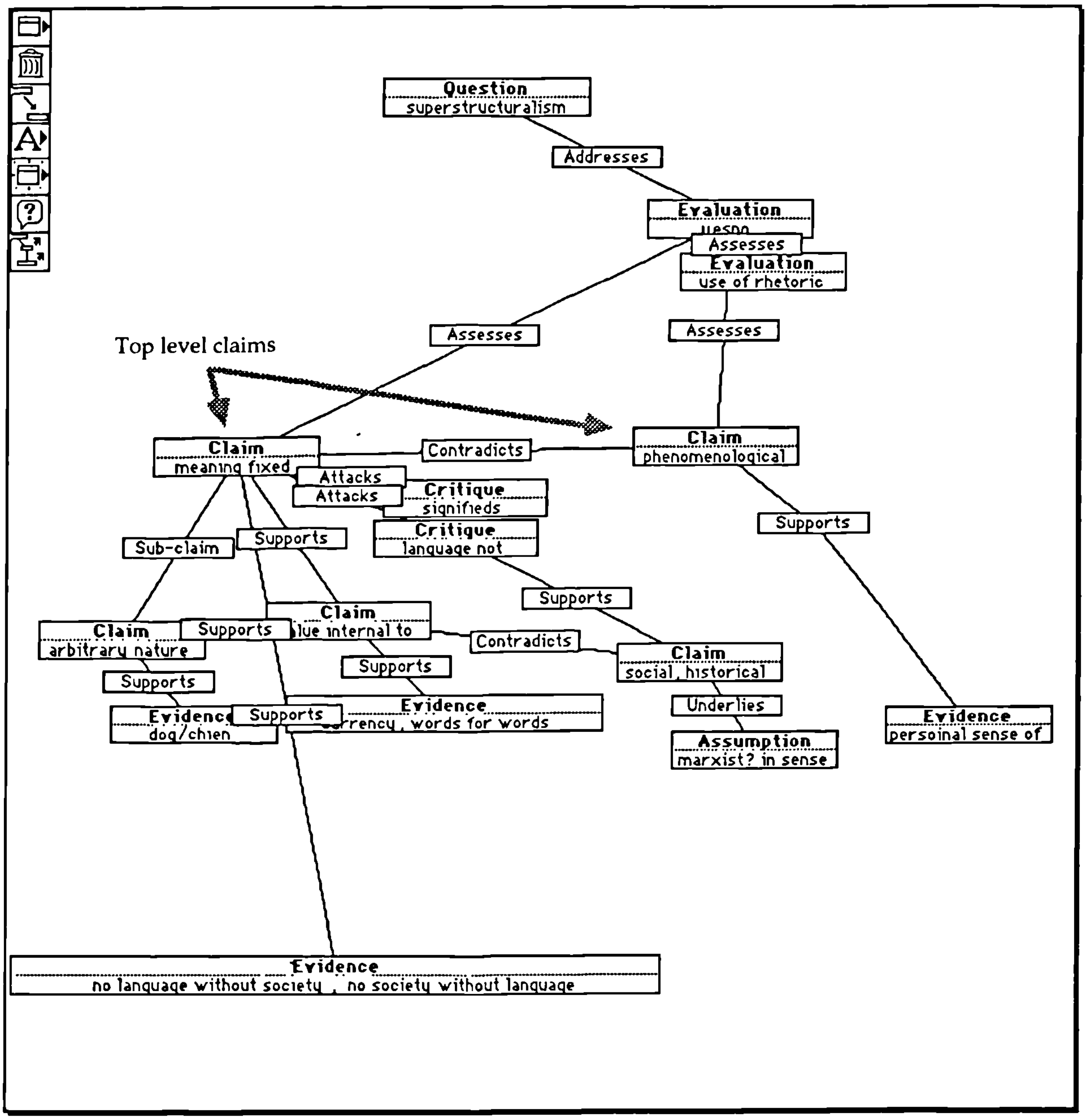


Figure 10.9 The constrained tool network almost complete.

The claim 'meaning fixed' on the other hand had one piece of evidence that supported it directly; one sub-claim, itself supported by evidence; a supportive claim, which in turn was supported by evidence. On the negative side it had two critiques, one of which was supported by a claim; and this claim also contradicted one of the claims of the 'meaning fixed' top-level claim. Referring to this bias in the evaluation of the top-level claims the subjects had this to say:

"I suppose that what I'm doing is to evaluate the structuralist claims, as characterised by Saussure, in their own right, rather than to simply look at the difference between structuralist and other explanations. This is mainly because [first] I know more about structuralism, rather than its alternatives; and [second] the way that structuralism is normally evaluated, if it is evaluated at all, tends to be in its own right whether it is useful; rather than comparing it to other approaches. People then stick to their own approach, whether its structuralist, deconstructionalist, Marxist or whatever, and whilst they criticise the others [approaches] it's not normally so analytical as this thing [the argument model] requires it to be."

Thus it appears that the nature of argument within literary criticism seems to be unlike the rational model for science[2]. In science, claims are evaluated by how useful they are in explaining certain phenomena and how well they allow us to predict new phenomena; the theory that predicts and explains more is regarded as the most useful. If this subject is correct, this is difficult in that the different approaches to literary criticism are less like competing claims and more like competing paradigms. It is therefore difficult to pit them against each other since they share little common ground. Each approach makes so many assumptions of its own that even discussing basic ideas is problematic. This is not to say that trying to do this is fruitless; it appears that some of the more useful experiences that this subject has was in the failures:

"I mean I can't connect these two very meaningfully [the structuralist and phenomenological arguments] I've put contradicts, but that's pretty wide of the mark. If there's one thing that this [the exercise] has made me do its to take a step back from all of this and to try and be quite precise in the way I consider the relationships of the arguments to one another. I mean, lot of the time I've failed to integrate the ideas: I'm still not exactly sure what the relationships between Marxism and Structuralism are, but I think its good that it made me realise that."

It therefore seems that one of the more useful properties of using graphical representations with fixed node and relation types is that having to choose a node or relation type from a collection of unsuitable alternatives may force the individual to think more deeply about relationships than if they were allowed to generate imprecise types themselves, this is something that I shall return to in the conclusions to this thesis (Chapter 12).

The final stage of this subject's activities involved fine tuning the network. Another claim was added which acted as a single top level claim; the claim was "Language is thought" — a basic structuralist tenet; the previous two top-level claims were seen to

---

2 Note that I am not stating that individual researchers necessarily adhere to this model, but it tends to be the way that it is presented to the individual in textbooks.

support or contradict this position. The two evaluation nodes were deleted to be replaced by a single one, which addressed the question. An extra critique was brought in: "Descartes likes this", this compares Saussure's distinction between signified and signifier to Descartes mind body duality, and criticises the exclusive dichotomy as being a fundamentally Western predilection. An extra link was added, the phenomenological perspective was used to support the critique of structuralism that language is not static:

> "I suppose I'm stepping through the network, making sure that all the nodes are linked to all the nodes that they should be linked to. For example, this [the link between 'Phenomenological' and 'language not static', although not explicitly referred to [in the texts that were used] is certainly the case"

This again shows that, if used properly as here, such representations can allow the user to go beyond the text, merely by being encouraged to link concepts.

It should be mentioned that at this point, after around 8 hours of use, the subject started to hit problems with the model:

> "...I want to say that there's all this stuff about the subjectivity of language; this relates to the phenomenological idea, but it isn't a claim or evidence of anything; it's just sort of 'to do' with it— I just can't fit it in."

It was never intended that the model be used to express everything an individual wanted to. Arguments often require information to be brought to bear which lie outside any model; this was catered for by the wildcard facility (see Section 10.2) which allowed user definable nodes and links. The subject used this facility, creating an "Info." node that allowed contributing information to be linked to the phenomenological perspective.

At this point the subject considered that the network was about as good as he wanted and needed:

> **Subject:** 'I suppose that's about finished. There's more that I could say, but a lot of it couldn't be done using this [type of model]. It doesn't do everything, built as a way of clarifying ideas and making me examine my understanding its been useful."
>
> **Experimenter:** "Are you happy with it then?"
>
> **Subject:** "I suppose that I'm *fairly* happy with it. I suppose, if I started [using the constrained tool] again from scratch, then it would look a bit different. I mean, its OK, it means *something*. But the way that I built it meant that I was always building upon something I built earlier. And often my ideas had changed slightly."

This comment indicates a very important issue in using such tool and representations for learning. As was discussed in Chapter 1 learning and understanding is not a process of mere accretion, if it were a meaningful map could be built up bit by bit, and the whole would exactly equal the sum of its parts. As it turns out we do not understand each bit of knowledge fully and move on the next, there bits that we are more or less certain of, misconceptions, gaps in our knowledge and so on. The implications for knowledge mapping or knowledge structuring is that, as the subject implied, we are always building upon foundations of earlier understanding. Decisions made as to the structure of the network may not accord with how we would do it now, which often means that either we make do with the network as it is, or engage in a costly (in terms of time and effort) restructuring process.

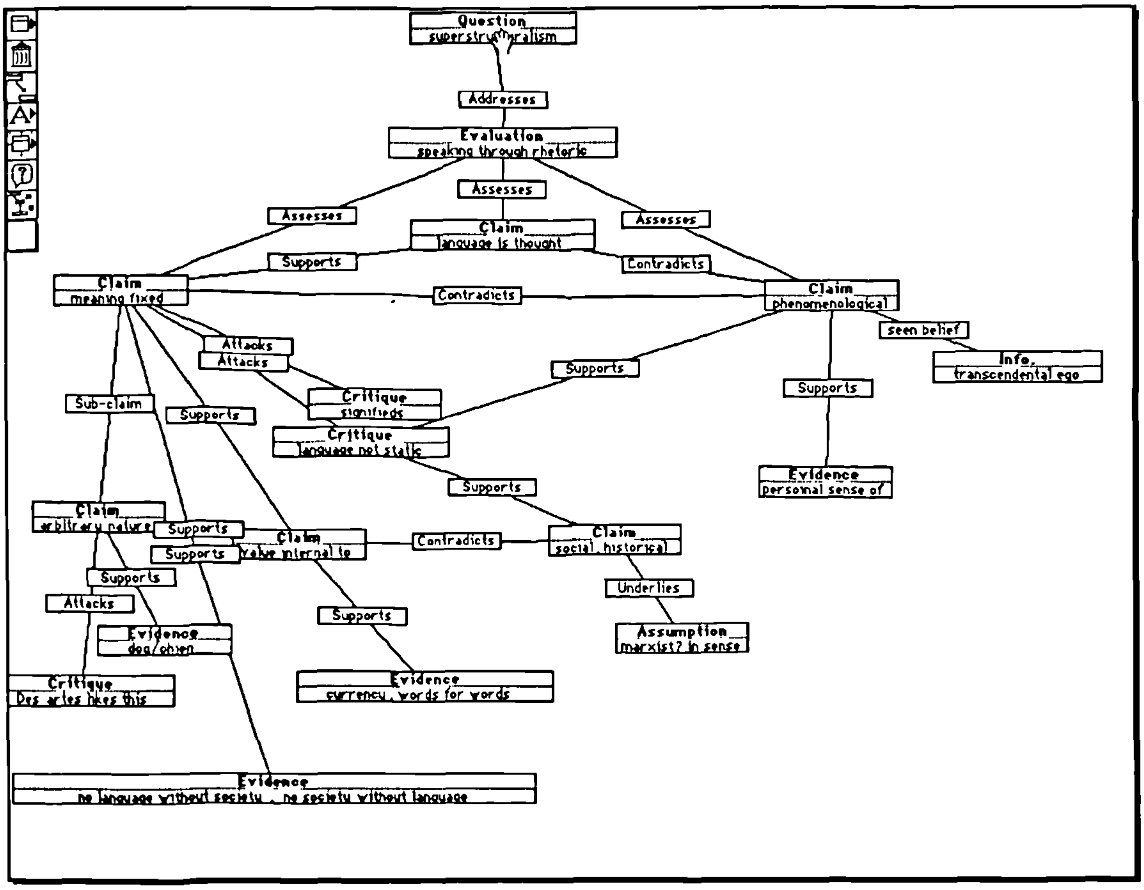


Figure 10.10 The completed network constructed using the constrained tool.

10.5 SUMMARY

These two longish studies were useful in identifying a number of issues associated with the tools. Some of these were fairly humdrum issues of usability; others indicated some extensions to the model were needed; and others were more conceptual about the nature of using structured representation for learning.

10.5.1 Usability issues

The study revealed that there were problems associated with the tool itself. For instance, there were quite a lot of errors caused by subjects being unaware of what mode they were in: subjects would often try and move a node whilst in link mode, or link two nodes whilst in the default mode, resulting in time being wasted. To correct this, the system was altered so that the mouse pointer changed when it was over a node, to indicate which mode it was in (a hand icon when a mouse-down could move the node, and an arrowed-cross when it could create a link and so on, see Section 9.3.1). Perhaps more importantly the lack of explicit directionality in the links often made reading the maps difficult: for example when one claim supported another it was not immediately obvious which one supported which, thus arrows were added to the system to indicate the direction of the relationship.

10.5.2 Problems with the model

A number of problems with the model were indicated by the subjects. Often these were problems associated with trying to turn everything into an argument; as indicated in the penultimate comment in Section 10.4.3 other information may often need to be added. To a large extent this can be addressed by using wildcard nodes. Of perhaps more relevance to developing usable networks were the paucity of node types. In this form the model did not distinguish between different types of claim; for example, there was no notion of a theory or hypothesis in the model. Subject 1, in particular, found this disconcerting; the text that he was dealing with used the term theory, and he felt that there should be provision for representing the distinction. Additionally claims (or theories) are not made in a vacuum, they are attempts to explain some phenomenon in the world such as language, or class differences in health; whilst question nodes can be used, as in these studies, to represent phenomena, it seems more realistic to incorporate phenomena as a the thing that is explained by the claims. Modifications were therefore made to the model to allow hypotheses, theories and phenomena to be created.

10.5.3 Conceptual issues: using the tools

Perhaps the most striking difference between the two studies were the differences in the extent to which the two subjects used the tools. Subject 1 constructed an almost complete network using the unstructured tool, and translating the basic points to the constrained tool. Subject 2, on the other hand, used the unconstrained tool to simply record the basic ideas doing most of his work using the constrained tool. The relative difference in importance with which subjects considered the two representations can be seen by the way that subject 1 continued to refine his network using the unconstrained tool as a result of work done using the constrained tool. Subject 2, on the other hand, once he had started to use the constrained tool, he only returned to the unconstrained tool to check and copy notes.

Trying to explain why there was this difference is not easy; subjects own explanations indicated that they were unsure as to why they distributed their time they way they did. Perhaps it was due to the extent to which they could express their ideas in terms of concepts and relationships. As I mentioned above, the discussions revealed that from the outset subject 1 had a fairly good idea what information should and should not be included in the essay, and also how this information should be structured. Subject 2, on the other hand, had less of an idea of what the final essay should include. Thus, subject 1 could go a long way using his own knowledge to construct a network, whereas subject 2 appeared to hit a point where he could go no further linking concepts together using the unconstrained tool. This may have prompted him to start using the constrained tool earlier in the hope that it may provide him with some ideas as to how to fit the information together. Of course there could be many other reasons for the difference, but this explanation is consistent with discussions with the subjects. Subject 1 gave far more detailed descriptions of what he was going to do from the outset, whereas subject 2's descriptions were more concerned with the here and now. The relative effectiveness of constrained and unconstrained tools in supporting the learning process are discussed in the next chapter since they represent a theoretical dissociation in the development of knowledge structuring tools.

Another factor that appears relevant to the use of these sorts of tools is the importance of deciding on the overall approach to be taken before committing oneself to any form of structure. It was indicated in Study 3 that the sort of macrostructure an individual chooses can have implications for the ease with which they can fit the information together at a more local level. The same applies also for the use of the constrained tool: the sort of claims that are set as being top-level can have implications for the nature of the rest of the argument. If users commit themselves a particular approach too early, then they may have to spend time restructuring the network later on when they realise that the it is not how they would like it. This was observed in both of the above sessions: subject 1 committing himself to evaluating two top-level claims, when really there were three; and subject 2 needing to restructure his ideas when he realised that some of the so-called opposing claims were, in fact, related.

In many ways this problem is unavoidable because avoiding it would requires them to know how they want the network to look before they start to construct it. In other words they would need to have a very good understanding of the domain before they used the tool, rendering the tool surplus to requirement. Some of the more negative effects of premature commitment may be alleviated if the users are encouraged to be more circumspect about the way that they construct the net. Hints for how to do this were provided in the next study.

Finally, it should be mentioned that both subjects were enthusiastic about their time spent using the tool. They were not paid to take part in the exercise, and were using time that they could, perhaps, have used in more traditional essay preparation; so their comments may count for something. Of course, there is always the problem that using a novel tool may make subjects perceptions of what they actually derived from the experience seem somewhat overly positive, but given that there was some real objective at the end of it—the essay—I assume their judgements to be fairly sound. Perhaps the overriding comment was that the constrained tool seemed to provide something to react against as much as something to support structuring of ideas, that it made them question their understanding more than they may do otherwise. Future research needs to deal with whether using such representation encourages reflection when compared to other learning activities, such as: note-taking, essay writing and so on. However, given that these comments were made when describing what they had just done, they can perhaps be given more credence than if there were stated at the end of the experiment.

Generally there are a number of processes that were seen to occur for both subjects during the course of these interactions.

10.6 FACTORS AFFECTING THE STRUCTURE OF KNOWLEDGE MAPS

The construction of a map requires subjects to translate both mental and textual representations into a graphical form. There are a number of factors that seem to influence the way that knowledge maps look; in this study there were at least six factors that affected the structure of the maps constructed.

10.6.1 Framing effects

This study revealed that the way in which the problem was framed had implications for the way that the subjects pursued a solution, and hence constructed the network. Framing effects are well known in the problem solving literature, and relate to the way in which the superficial structure of two isomorphic problems can effect the extent to which they are solved (Wason & Shapiro, 1971Kotovsky, Hayes & Simon, 1985). I have already discussed that Subject 1 framed the problem as two competing claims, rather than three competing claims; and that Subject 2 revised his network after realising the relationship of structuralism to Marxism. Subject 2's comments about 'exploring the question' are also indicative of the importance of framing effects.

10.6.2 Viscosity

Green's dimension of viscosity appears a number of times in subjects' comments. Subject 2's last reported comment that he was building upon what something that he built earlier relates, in part, to viscosity; he later stated that if he had started again then the structure would be different. One must ask, however, how fluid a tool needs to be to permit this. The utility of fluidity can be interpreted as a cost / benefit trade off: the benefits that can be gained from restructuring in terms of producing a more satisfactory network that permits further 'building' are offset by the costs of devoting time and effort—both cognitive and physical—of restructuring the net. The more fluid the tool, the lower the effort, leading to lower cost and hence, more benefit. However, restructuring of the type indicated by Subject 2 is likely to involve rather more than simply renaming and rearranging a few nodes, and perhaps moving some text (see next chapter).

10.6.3 Premature commitment to structure

Related to viscosity is premature commitment, which I also discuss at length in the next chapter. It could be argued that many of the problems mentioned in the discussion of viscosity are due to subjects committing themselves to structure prematurely. I would argue against this view; from the subjects' comments it was the fact that they had to commit themselves to a structure that made them realise that the structure was inadequate. Again, I am not arguing that we should force learners to commit themselves to a structure at the outset—subjects in this study were not required to do this—rather I am arguing that like viscosity premature commitment may be seen as a greater evil than it really is in the context of learning (but see Sommerville & Twidale for another view). A possible alternative is that learners never commit themselves to a structure.

10.6.4 Unconsidered relations

Similar to Green's notion of *hidden dependencies* is that of unconsidered relations. The difference is that whilst Green's principle relates to the extent to which a system makes relationships among objects and operations transparent. Unconsidered relations refers to the user not seeing, or not being aware of the implications of one part of the argument to another. For example in subject 2's final map, there is quite a lot of evidence (both direct and indirect) used to assess the claim that meaning is fixed, but there seems to have been little attempt to show how the evidence that supports and contradicts this position related to the alternative 'phenomenological' claim. Likewise the single piece of evidence used to support the phenomenological position is not linked in to the claim that meaning is fixed. Of course this could be due to the fact that the subject thought about this and failed (not too likely given the fact that he did not mention this when asked about the network), or it could be that evidence relating to one claim has nothing to say about the other (which seems rather implausible). Unconsidered relations can be seen as being related to problem framing: the subject has a particular conception of the goals of the task, which prevents them from visualising other interpretations. They might ask themselves "how does X relate to Y?" but not "How does X relate to Z?". This problem is discussed further is Chapter 12 when I suggest improvements to knowledge structuring.

10.6.5 Domain knowledge

The domain knowledge that the user has is going to a large determiner of the final network; not just the atoms of knowledge the individual posses, but the way that it is structured and organised. Certain aspects of network construction seemed facile for the subjects in this study: some of the evidence for particular claims, for example, seemed to be reeled off as if it was stored in this manner. At other times subjects were made aware of gaps in their knowledge by the activity of constructing the network. Subject 2's comment about the relationship of Marxism to structuralism indicated that here was an integration that he had no *a priori* knowledge about. It was only by mobilising knowledge about Marxism and about structuralism that enabled him to approximate an integration. The task therefore can be seen as a method of prompting learners to delve deeper into their knowledge, perhaps drawing connections that they might otherwise not consider.

10.6.6 Reasoning and argument skills

The constrained tool requires subjects to structure arguments, in order to do this effectively users must have knowledge and skills relating to effective argumentation. The constrained tool helps here by providing a number of pre-defined categories that subjects may use, and by permitting certain relationships between particular node types; but it still requires the subject to identify elements of the argument in the text (such as the claims, assumptions and so on) and map these onto the developing representation. Recent psychological studies have highlighted the importance of domain content knowledge to reasoning and argument tasks (Carey, 1985;Wason and

Shapiro, 1971) but equally it is the case that merely having knowledge about content does not presuppose that the individual can reason or construct an argument about it (Kuhn, 1991). Of course in this task much of the work was already done. Subjects could merely follow the line of the text sources that they used, translating textual versions of, for example, "The claim X is supported by evidence Y" into a graphical version. Similarly much of psychology can be learned without the necessary critical thinking skills that enable the student to truly explore and discuss the area (see the Greeno quotation in Section 1.2 for an example); rather information can be learned almost by wrote with little understanding of the deeper and wider implications of the argument. Notwithstanding this, there were occasions in this study where learners seemed to hit impasses; where the text seemed to give them no clue as to where to go next (for example, the Marxism / structuralism problem referred to in the previous section); so it does appear that reasoning skills may have some role to play.

10.7 SUMMARY

This points above do seem to play a role in shaping the map that the subjects produced. Perhaps the most important factors from a design point of view are the effects of premature commitment and viscosity because they are the factors that we have most control over. The next study is an attempt to investigate these issues in more detail.

11

A comparison of structured and unstructured tools

11.1 INTRODUCTION

This chapter is an attempt to investigate the relative costs and benefits of using a constrained tool when compared to an unconstrained tool for supporting learning. The potential benefits centre around the possibility that the constrained tool tends to direct the learners' thinking towards specific sorts of relationships, in this case argument, thus providing a supportive framework for exploration. There are, however, a number of potential costs: first, the problem of shoe-horning may arise, this is where the learner attempts to force ideas into a representation that is inappropriate; second there is the problem that the commitment to structure that this requires interferes with the learner's attempt to understand the information; and third, there is the less severe but still significant potential problem that learners may be forced to structure their ideas before they are ready to do so—the problem of premature commitment. The problem of shoe-horning is self explanatory, and I shall go on to discuss the implications of this after the study; however the harmful effects of formality and premature commitment need further elaboration.

11.1.1 Formalisation and premature commitment revisited

Recently Shipman and Marshall (1993) aired a cautionary note about the dangers of requiring users to formalise their ideas. They see the requirement to formalise as being a result of the increasing use of computers in the workplace; in order to support a task a computer needs a formal representation, and humans, they argue, do not work like this. To support this claim they assemble evidence from a number of studies which include:

(1) Their own experiences using formal versions of the NoteCards environment;

(2) Naturalistic studies on office filing behaviour which show that people often postpone filing to the last possible moment;

(3) Instances from applications, such as gIBIS and the Co-ordinator, that have failed due to users' rejection of the formal aspects of the system.

Shipman and Marshall give three reasons for the occurrence of these problems. The first relates to the hoary old problem of changing conceptual structure, which I have already covered in the section on premature commitment (Chapter 7). Second, that the process of formalisation, rather than the formal language *per se* forces people to do things that interfere with the standard working practice. Third, some knowledge is tacit and therefore is difficult to formalise and attempts to do this might result in reconstructions rather than a true reflection of the actual knowledge used. Shipman and Marshall conclude by stating that people might be justified in avoiding the formalisation of knowledge as often the costs outweigh the benefits.

There are therefore two issues relating to premature commitment: that it may give rise to inefficient organisation, and that people tend to avoid doing it. Arguing that premature commitment is a good thing is like arguing that too much exercise is a good thing: saying that something is premature automatically denotes it as potentially harmful. I therefore take no issue with premature commitment, but I would like to question the notion that *early commitment* is a global malady that would afflict all tasks and tools to an equal extent. Much of the research suggesting the problematic nature of early commitment is bad comes from studies where the user is well practised in the particular domain (Shum, 1991; Monty, 1990; Marshall & Rogers, 1992; Shipman & Marshall, 1993). Does the same apply to knowledge structuring for learning?

11.1.2 Is learning different?

Is there a difference between the principle of premature commitment as applied to knowledge structuring for design and authoring as compared to learning? Some seem to suggest that there is not. Twidale, Rodden and Sommerville (1994) report on the development and evaluation of Designers' Notepad (DNP) which is a computer-based tool that was originally developed to support the initial stages of the software design process, but has also been used as a general purpose knowledge mapping tool for supporting learning. Recognising the problems of premature commitment, they have designed DNP as a system that attempts to avoid the pitfalls of premature commitment in three ways: first, by placing no constraints as to the way in which the learner creates concepts, whether these are linked or whether names or types are assigned to the concepts. Second, by allowing the use of user-defined symbols such as the colour, shape and type-names of the concepts and links. Third, by making the tool fluid by permitting changes to the structure as it develops. Shapes, types, colours and the structure of the network can all be changed quickly and easily. DNP therefore accords quite closely to the prescriptions of the early-commitment-is-bad school. But is this necessarily appropriate, and is the avoidance of early commitment at all costs a good thing?

First there tends to be a different value placed on making mistakes. In design or authoring a bad product produced as a result of premature commitment is always viewed as a cost; in education, on the other hand, this is not always the case. Often errors can have a great deal of educational significance in that they may highlight underlying misconceptions. A caveat of this is that the student makes the mistake in a sufficiently explicit fashion so that they can reflect upon it, or an instructor can provide informative feedback. Getting it wrong is an important aspect of learning, indeed impasse-driven and constructivist accounts of learning place errors as being an important learning mechanism (see Chapter 1).

Second, there are differences in the knowledge that the different users possess. Designers and authors are professionals and will therefore not only have a great deal of knowledge not only about the domain, but will also have their own (often personal) working practices. The whole point of being a student is that they do not have this breadth and depth of knowledge and methods. The point here is that whilst a professional might find certain types of commitment bad, the same may not necessarily apply to the learner who might welcome the support offered by a system that does not require them to specify structure as well as content.

Third, the fact that a learner tends to do something in a particular way is no guarantee that it is the best way to do it; of course the same applies to professionals but the case is weaker, and they are likely to be more resistant to change. In Green's Word Processor example (see Section 7.3.1) there is a no relationship between the task (writing a document) and the nature of the commitment (specifying the number of words)—simply the action of committing oneself does not help one to do the task any better. Imagine, however, that a novice writer had to pre-specify the maximum length of each sentence used in the document, such that the system gave an error message each time the sentence exceeded the given length. Suppose that the system recommended that a sentence should not exceed 30 words to be readable. The individual might find using the system a frustrating experience, it may take twice as long to complete the document, but it is likely that they will learn something about their writing; it may even force them to use shorter sentences in future documents not using this Machiavelian system. Of course a word processor such as this is unlikely to be the best or even a good way of teaching about writing, but this is likely to be due to the quality and the way it delivers the feedback rather than being due to premature commitment alone. The notion of meaningful feedback also applies to design tools, as it is argued that one of the benefits of design rationale notations is that it explicates knowledge by encouraging users to be more formal about specifying the relationships between decisions and options.

Fourth there are differences in the time scale that the benefits of knowledge structuring are supposed to act. In design and authoring the tools have to support their particular activities over a long period of time: days, weeks or even months, and they have to do this with little or no external intervention. Knowledge structuring tasks for learning tend to be used over a shorter time, around the time that it takes to write a good essay. A map that takes several months to complete is likely to be an arduous, time consuming and therefore costly task, whereas a the effort involved in doing this to a smaller map will be rather more modest.

We can now can attempt to define the cost of early commitment to structure. When the task is poorly defined in terms of all participants, when the structuring activity takes a long time, when there is little meaningful feedback offered by committing oneself and where the notation conflicts with standard working practice there is likely to be a high cost associated with early commitment. When there is some form of agreed upon good answer, when the time-scale is short, when meaningful feedback may be offered, when there is little interference between working practice and the notation then there is likely to be a low cost associated with early commitment.

11.1.2.1 No premature commitment, no commitment

Finally I should mention one of the potential drawbacks of avoiding early commitment. One of the findings of Study 2 was that many of the maps contained unlinked concept nodes and nameless links. By avoiding early commitment there is a very real danger that one throws the baby out with the bath-water: the benefit of knowledge mapping is that learners are encouraged to reflect upon structural relationships. If they are not encouraged to do this then they might not do it at all. As I have argued in Chapter 1, part of learning about a domain is to learn not just the content material, but also how practitioners deal with the information that is being learned about. Merely asking learners to map out what *they* feel is important or relevant may be of some use, but perhaps it is also good to give them some agreed upon methods of representing this information. Second, how communicable are maps where learners assign their own symbols to concepts? How can these maps support peer or expert evaluation?

So far I have made the argument look like we either have a system that forces early commitment, or one that does not. This is not strictly the case as another of Green's dimensions, that of fluidity, can provide some escape from the ills of early commitment.

11.1.2.2 Fluidity: escape from the problems of early commitment?

If one finds, as Marshall & Rogers did, that some representation has become a blind alley due to early commitment to structure what can you do? If the tool is fluid rather than viscous, the argument runs, you can restructure the network so that it accords more closely to your understanding. A tool can be fluid in a number of ways, of which I shall only mention three. First, the system can be fast. McAleese (1989) criticized early versions of NoteCards for being "notoriously slow" in updating the network. If it takes even a few seconds to perform an action then it is less likely that the user will perform it than if it takes a fraction of a second. Second, the interface should permit wholesale restructuring: multiple elements should be able to be modified or deleted at the same time; links can be changed and deleted; types changed and so on. Third, other interface considerations involve the ability to copy portions to the network as provided by AAA (see section 7.5.2) and so on. Although Green agues that we should consider these dimensions as orthogonal, it seems that premature (or early) commitment and viscosity are in fact closely related, and impact on one another[1]. Given two systems, one viscous and one fluid which are otherwise identical, it seems fair to predict that an experienced user would tend to avoid commitment more on the viscous system because there is a greater cost associated with making changes to the representation.

Fluidity is however often non-trivial to implement as it brings yet another of Green's dimensions into play; that of hidden dependencies. Once you permit users to restructure part of a network, it has an impact on other parts of the network. Assume, for example, that one of the restrictions in the tool is that evidence can say nothing about other evidence, as is the case for the constrained tool used in this and the previous study. Assume that the learner has linked an evidence node in support of a claim. Now suppose that the learner realises that they have mis-categorised the information; what was has been called a claim is now in fact evidence. When the type of the offending node is changed from claim to evidence it must necessarily delete the link in order for it not to violate the linking rule. Because the rules are in effect hidden, the learner may not necessarily realise that this would happen. This is a very simple case, one could easily imagine more complex cases. Dependencies between concepts could result in a large portion of the network being restructured as a result of a single superficially benign action.

Hence the problem with fluidity is that any structure, be it text or a knowledge map, is not modular; you cannot simply plug bits in and out to change the meaning, or more accurately, you do change the meaning but not necessarily in the way that you want. For

---

[1] Green himself recognises that the dimensions are non-orthogonal, but states that for the purposes of guidance we should 'pretend' that they are unrelated.

example the two networks produced on KNOT (see Section 3.5.3) are dissimilar in almost every respect and one cannot be derived from the other simply by moving a few nodes around, it requires a global restructuring. A standard fluid tool such as Microsoft Word permits restructuring of text in a large number of ways: cutting and pasting sentences; dragging and dropping words and phrases; rearranging whole sections via the outline facility and so on. Subjectively we may have the experience of trying to rearrange a document that would have been better if we had started again from scratch rather than tinkering with the pre-existing structure. An additional problem with the notion of fluidity is that it is not a fixed quantity, rather it decreases with the number of entities that need to be changed. No matter how fluid a system is, if a large portion of it needs to be changed, the effort, and therefore the cost, is going to be quite large.

All of this is not to say that fluidity is a worthless concept, it is of course an essential feature of any tool, however, it is not always the answer to poorly structured maps. Often it is better to throw out the old map and start again.

11.1.3 Summary

The following study is an attempt to investigate some of these issues. Subjects used two tools, one constrained and one unconstrained. In addition the constrained tool required some degree of early commitment (pre-selection of node and link types), and was relatively viscous in that modification was reasonably effortful (link types could not be changed once created). Subjects were required to use the tools to structure information presented to them in a research paper. Some of the factors under discussion were:

- Which condition produced maps that were the most focused?
- Which condition produced the more communicable maps?
- Were there any obvious manifestations of premature commitment in the constrained tool, and if so did these seem to outweigh any positive effects (such as points 1 & 2).

11.2 METHOD

11.2.1 The task

The task in this study required subjects to learn information relating to anorexia and bulimia nervosa. The topic was chosen primarily because it is involves much debate and argument, without it being too technical for the average post-graduate student to understand. The materials used consisted of a paper by Støylen and Laberg (1990) which was judged by a lecturer in psychopathology to be a reasonable introduction to the area. Subjects used either a constrained or unconstrained tool depending on the condition that they were in.

The constrained and unconstrained tools were roughly similar to those used in the Chapter 10, for the purposes of clarity I shall briefly state some of the principal differences between them.

The unconstrained tool allowed learners to create nodes which initially had no type assigned to them (indicated, as for the case studies, by four bullet points, '••••'), although types could be assigned later on if the subject wished to do so. On creating a type the system presented subjects with a dialog box containing all seven types available for the constrained tool (see below), however, the unconstrained tool also allowed them to specify their own types if they wanted to, which were stored for later use. Node types could be changed at any point in the interaction. When two nodes were linked the subjects were asked to select a type and were given all of the types available in the constrained tool (supports, contradicts, underlies and so on, see Chapter 9), but again they could choose either to leave the node untitled or create their own type as for nodes. Finally, and again similar to nodes, the types of links could be changed at any time during the course of the experiment.

The constrained tool provided subjects with a list of node-primitives that they could use to help them in their task, these were: *claim, theory, hypothesis, question, phenomenon, evidence, critique*, and *assumption*. Learners have to select a node type before the node is created. The name of a node can be changed at any point in the interaction, however the type of a node could only be changed if the node was not linked to any other nodes. Changing a node-type once the node was linked required subjects to delete the links first. A similar set of constraints applied to link-types, except not only were there a limited set of types but these varied depending on types of node was being linked (see Chapter 9). As for nodes, the type of a link had to be specified before the link was created, and could only be changed by deleting the link and creating a new one. Finally subjects in this condition were provided with a special node option known as wildcard that allowed them to specify their own type if they wished to. Wildcard nodes behaved like nodes in the unconstrained tool, in the sense that they could be linked to anything with any relationship that the subject felt was appropriate, and the types of node and relations could be changed at any point.

The two tools therefore differed not just in the constraint, but also in the extent to which each required some form of early commitment, and in viscosity, or resistance to change. Both of these factors are not central to the claimed benefits of the tool, but rather they represent a fairly simple way of implementing commitment to *some* structure (early commitment), and of preventing the structural rules from being violated (viscosity).

Both tools were run on a Macintosh IIcx computer fitted with a two-page monitor. A screen-recording program was used to record the on-screen interaction.

11.2.2 Design

The study was a simple two-condition between subjects design, the independent variable was the type of tool used: structured or unstructured. There were two main dependent variables: the quality of the maps that were produced and the quality of summaries written at the end of the experiment.

11.2.3 Procedure

Like studies 1, 2 and 5, study 6 had two sessions: a practice session, where subjects familiarised themselves with the system; and the experimental session where they used the tool to construct a map of some information that they were provided with.

Subjects were provided with a tutorial booklet that explained what the tool was and what it could be used for; it also introduced them to the various operations that they could perform using the tool that they were given (see Appendix 3). Students went through the tutorial at their own pace, and were free to ask questions at any point. There were two tutorials, one for each condition.

Once the tutorial was complete, and subjects were happy that they could operate the system they were told that they would be required to learn some material relating to anorexia and bulimia nervosa, using the tool to help them. They were told that in order to establish how much they already knew about the topic that they were to write down as much as they could relating to the two diseases; they were allowed a maximum of fifteen minutes to do this. When this was complete they were given an instruction sheet which outlined their task. The instructions are show in Table 11.1.

The paper that you have been given contains information that relates to anorexia and bulimia nervosa. Read through the paper making use of the tool to construct a map of the information. Pay particular attention to:

- The nature of the diseases,
- Proposed theories for why they arise,
- Evidence supporting or refuting these theories.

You have a maximum of 2 hours to complete the task, but you can finish before this if you wish. When you have finished I will ask you to write a short summary of the information in this paper, this will be completed WITHOUT NOTES.

Table 11.1 Instructions given to all subjects.

To help subjects to understand what was required of them they were shown an example of a network based on theories of schizophrenia. The experimenter discussed this with them briefly.

Subjects were also given a list of hints (see Table 11.2 below) to help them in constructing the network.

If there were no questions then the study began. Subjects were given a maximum of two hours to complete the task, although they were told that they could finish before this if they felt they had covered enough.

Throughout the course of the experiment subjects were asked to describe what they were doing during 'natural breaks' in the session, when the subject appeared to have something interesting on the screen. Discussions during the construction of the a map can be insightful, but care was taken for them not to intrude too much on the subject's task.

• Start by identifying and specifying the question that you are interested in answering, make it your goal to answer this, use sub-questions if necessary.
• Identify the key claims of the argument(s).
• Identify the evidence that relates to these claims.
• Don't be in a rush to link nodes together, often it's better to wait a while until you're more sure of what should be linked to what.
• Reflect upon what you are doing regularly. Asking yourself questions relating to the identity of certain components of the argument, for example: "Is this a claim or a critique?", "Is there any evidence to support this claim?" can often be of great benefit.
• Try and use as little text as possible, when typing check whether some of the information in the text might not be better represented as part of the network.
• Check the validity of the relationships that you have created; you may find that you will need to change them, or restructure the network as you progress.
• Try and provide a summary of your conclusions in the question box.

Table 11.2 Hint sheet given to all subjects

After a maximum of two hours, subjects were requested to stop using the tool (they were given five minute warnings from 15 minutes if necessary). They were then quizzed about the map that they had constructed. Following this the network was hidden and subjects presented with the second set of instructions, which were practically the same as the first set (see Table 11.3)

Write a summary of the information contained in the paper with particular reference to: • The nature of the diseases, • Proposed theories for why they arise, • Evidence supporting or refuting these theories.
Try and get across the main points rather than the details, and pay attention to the structure of the summary; try and make it as clear as possible. Write no more than a page.

Table 11.3 Instructions for writing summaries

When subjects had finished writing the summary the experiment was at an end.

11.2.4 Subjects

Subjects were post-graduate students from the University of York. 12 subjects took part in the study, (seven male, five female); the unconstrained condition having four male and two female subjects; the constrained condition three male and three female.

11.2.5 Potential outcomes

There are four possible outcomes relating to the quality of the maps:

(1) Subjects using the unconstrained tool produce better maps due to the fact that they are able to express what they want, and formalise when they feel it necessary.

(2) Subjects using the constrained map produce better maps due to the fact that they are given the means to represent goal-relevant information.

(3) There is no difference between the maps because subjects using the unconstrained tool used similar primitives and relations to those using the unconstrained tool.

(4) There is no difference between the maps because subjects using the constrained tool avoided using the node primitives.

These last two potential outcomes are possible because the unconstrained tool can be treated as a semi-constrained tool by using the node and link types built into the system. On the other hand the constrained tool can be treated as an unconstrained tool by using the WildCard option.

In order to define what I mean by 'better map' I make the following assumptions:

(1) Relevance assumption: a good map is one that contains a large number of proposition that are relevant to the goals of the task.

(2) Correctness assumption: a good map is one in which the propositions that it includes are correct in relation to the information in the text.

(3) Communicability assumption: a good map is one that communicates ideas effectively to others, irrespective of whether the propositions are relevant to the goal of not, or are correct or not.

For the purposes of this study the relevance and correctness assumptions were coalesced to produce the completeness assumption. The quality of the maps was measured using a combination of objective ratings (using a propositional analysis) and subjective ratings using independent raters. Details of these are reported in the results section.

Of less importance was the quality of the summaries that students wrote at the end of the study. One possible outcome would be that the constrained tool by focusing subjects' attention onto the argumentative relationships might result in subjects showing a better understanding of the arguments in the text. In order to explore this a similar propositional analysis to the one used for analysing the maps was used.

11.3 RESULTS

The use of knowledge structuring tools for learning is a relatively new area of study, as should be clear from the previous chapters there is as yet no theory that can be used to guide analysis. Any data generated by this study, therefore, may say something about the use of these tools and have potentially important implications for the development of such a theory. In addition to the possibilities posed at the end of the last section, it seemed profitable to investigate as much of the data as possible to see what the implications are for knowledge structuring. The results section is therefore divided into three sections: first, some initial observations of between-condition differences in the maps are noted; second, the maps and summaries are analysed to investigate the differences more systematically by looking at the propositions that they contained; and third, the process by which the maps were created is analysed.

11.3.1 Initial comparisons

In this comparison I look at the maps in very simple terms. The aim is simple: what differences between the conditions were there in the number and type of nodes, links and propositions that subjects created?

11.3.1.1 Number of nodes

One of the most obvious differences observed between the two conditions was that subjects using the constrained tool created more nodes than did those in the unconstrained tool (see Table 11.4), a difference that was statistically significant using a one-way ANOVA ($F[1,10] = 5.45, p< 0.05$).

Condition	N	Mean number of nodes	SD
Constrained	6	25	5.1
Unconstrained	6	16	7.3

Table 11.4 Comparison of number of nodes per condition

What might this difference mean? One potential explanation may be that subjects using the unconstrained tool used text as a means for recording information in preference to using nodes and links. In order to test this the amount of text used across the two conditions was compared to see if subjects in the unconstrained condition made more notes. When this was done it was found that although in general subjects using the constrained tool did make more notes (see Table 11.5), this difference was not significant (F [1,10] - 0.86, p-0.37).

Condition	N	Mean number of words	SD
Constrained	6	274	120
Unconstrained	6	366	214

Table 11.5 Comparison of number of words per condition

This gross measure may be confounded since subjects in the constrained condition created more nodes. A measure of number of words per node was used to see in there was an across condition difference here. Again it was found that although subjects in the unconstrained condition used more text per-node (see Table 11.6) this was not significantly different (F [1,10] = 3.025, p = 0.11). This lack of significance is due to the large between subject variance, particularly in the unconstrained condition.

Condition	N	Mean number of words per node	SD
Constrained	6	11.5	7.5
Unconstrained	6	23.8	15.6

Table 11.6 Mean number of words per node

A final test on the relationship between number of words and number of nodes at the number of words looked at the relationship between the number of nodes created and the amount of text produced, with the conjecture that this relationship may be inverse. Subjects using nodes to express themselves may find less need for making notes and vice versa. A Spearman Rank-Order correlation was performed looking at the relationship between number of nodes and number of words; this again showed no relationship (r = 0.004).

The lack of any significant results relating to the number of words may be due to the small sample size: any real difference between conditions is being masked by the individual variation in note-taking. Subjects can make notes in a number of ways, using more or less text to express the ideas that they have. In order to test for this the notes were evaluated to see if they differed in the number of propositions that they expressed. This is likely to be a more valid measurement of the relationship between the amount of information in the map and information in the text than simply the number of words since it frees the information from the vagaries of individual style. A proposition is a single statement such as 'depression causes bulimia' and using the scheme the number of propositions used could be enumerated. The results of this exercise are shown in Table 11.7 below (see Section 11.3.2 for more on propositional analysis).

Condition	N	Mean number of propositions	SD
Constrained	6	38.5	6.9
Unconstrained	6	38.1	10.1

Table 11.7 Number of propositions in the text per condition.

The table indicates that there is little difference between the two conditions in the number of propositions that subjects expressed in textual form, an ANOVA shows the same non-significant result (F [1,10] = 0.001, p = 0.98).

11.3.1.2 Node types

As stated in the Design section the two tools were not really all that different in terms of what one could represent. The constrained tool could be treated as unconstrained if wildcard nodes were used, whereas if the unconstrained subjects stuck with the node and link type that were given rather than creating their own they could approximate the use of the constrained tool. This section looks at the number of system given primitives that subjects used, when compared to self-generated primitives.

Condition	User defined (wildcard)	Provided	Type-less	Total
Constrained	7	143	0	149
Unconstrained	56	28	15	99

Table 11.8 Total number of system and user defined node types per condition.

It can be seen from Table 11.8 that the vast majority of node-types in the constrained condition were given by the system, whereas most of the nodes in the unconstrained condition were self-generated. There are also a fairly high number of type-less nodes in the unconstrained condition (15% of the total) something in common with the study in Chapter 10. The absence of any type-less nodes in the constrained condition is not too surprising given the system's insistence for the specification of node-types up front; only wildcard nodes can be left untyped, and, as Table 121.8 shows, there were only seven of these created out of 149.

11.3.1.3 Link types

Looking at the link types reveal a similar story (see Table 11.9 below), with subjects in the constrained condition using predominantly given link types (again not surprising since only wildcard nodes could be linked using subject-generated types) whilst subjects in the unconstrained condition tending to ignore the link types provided and define their own.

Condition	User defined	Provided	Typeless	Total
Constrained	5	122	0	127
Unconstrained	87	19	0	106

Table 11.9 Link types for both conditions

If the source of the node types (user defined or provided) is treated as a within subjects variable with three levels then the interaction between this and condition is significant using a one within, one between ANOVA F [1,10] = 52.93, p< 0.0001.

A couple of interesting comparisons can be made with the data for the node-types. First, although one subject in the unconstrained condition, Subject U3, used given node-types almost exclusively, he tended to use self-defined link types. Second, two subjects, C4 and C5, used a handful of self-typed wildcard nodes, they tended to link these by using the given argumentative relationships. This indicates that when subjects in the two conditions are using these facilities in different ways: constrained subjects use wildcard nodes to represent parts of the argument that they cannot do using the pre-defined nodes; whilst subjects in the unconstrained conditions even when they use argumentative node-types, tend to use these for non-argumentative purposes. This observation is expanded in the next few paragraphs.

The next analysis attempted to look at the nature of the propositions that were expressed; a proposition corresponding to a node-link-node triplet (see Section 11.3.2). Three categories were used: argumentative, structural and causal. Argumentative propositions are things such as Evidence(X) supports Claim (Y), and generally say something about the evaluation of the models in the text. Structural propositions relate to the organisation of concepts in the domain, they may be hierarchical such as, Anorexia is_a Eating disorder, or non-hierarchical such as Bulimia relates_to Anorexia. Structural relationships also occur between argument nodes such as: Claim (X) underlies Claim (Y). Finally causal propositions make statements about the cause and effect relationships among concepts such as, Bingeing leads_to vomiting. Table 11.10 (below) shows the number of these categories of relationship.

Condition	Argumentative	Structural	Causal	Total
Constrained	117	10	1	128
Unconstrained	27	33	41	101

Table 11.10 Categories for link types

It can be seen from the table that the majority of propositions in the constrained condition are argumentative in nature, with only one causal relationship. The constrained condition, on the other hand, shows a more equal distribution of the three types, interestingly the two conditions show opposite emphasis of these three types: the unconstrained condition showing most causal relationships, and fewest argumentative relationships, whereas the constrained condition is the converse. A Mann-Whitney test revealed significant differences between the conditions for argumentative relationships ($U = 1$, $p<0.01$) and causal relationships ($U = 3.5$, $p<0.05$, with hierarchical relationships narrowly missing significance ($U = 6.5$, $p = 0.06$).

It is probably unsurprising that subjects in the constrained condition tended to incorporate argumentative relationships at the expense of hierarchical and causal links; very few of the pre-defined links were of the latter two types and subjects wanting to incorporate them would have to use wildcard nodes. Of more interest is the general paucity of argumentative relationships created in the unconstrained condition. In many ways this is not so surprising; the text contained a great deal of causal propositions (bingeing leads_to vomiting, anxiety causes bulimia and so on) it seems that subjects in the constrained condition were merely being led along by what the text told them.

11.3.1.4 Summary

In trying to determine why subjects using the constrained tool created more nodes, I advanced the hypothesis that it may be due to them preferring to express graphically what they did not express textually. The results of various analyses are rather mixed. It does not seem to be the case that subjects in represent information graphically *instead* of textually, but rather that they use text in *addition* to any graphical representation.

One feature of potential interest is that, subjects using the unconstrained tool show higher standard deviations for the amount of text, the number of nodes and the number of propositions created during the study. It could be that the constrained tool somehow level individual differences, even for things such as number of nodes which superficially has little to do with how constrained the tool is.

11.3.2 Scoring the maps

The assumptions in the Design section state that a good map should be a faithful representation of the information contained in the text, given the goals of the task and that they should also be as explicit as possible for the purposes of communication. In order to try and get some objective measure of the completeness and goal relevance of the maps, the text was broken down into its relevant propositions, and the map was marked using these.

The text refers to eight models of the aetiology and maintenance of bulimia and anorexia nervosa. Of these four are discussed in some depth, these are: the socio-cultural model; the cognitive-behavioural model; the anxiety model; and the affective disorder model. Each of these models is discussed with respect to how good and useful it is. This information falls into three categories: evidence from studies on suffers of eating disorders; the extent to which the model explains certain features of the diseases; and how well the model prescribes remediation of the illness and how effective these treatments are. A well-structured map should therefore contain the following features: the four main models discussed (and perhaps passing mention to the other four models) together with the evidence, criticisms and scope of these models with appropriate links to the models. The value of links was ascertained by coding two linked concepts as a proposition, in the same was as in Section 11.3.2. A list of all the important propositions suggested in the paper was drawn up and marks assigned to them; two marks were given to an important proposition, one mark to a more peripheral proposition. This scheme has obvious problems: subjects may not use exactly the same node types; or may express themselves in a novel (but not necessarily incorrect) way. An example of both these points may be to express a negative finding as a critique which attacks a model rather than expressing it as contradictory evidence. To overcome these problems flexibility was built into the scheme if the proposition could be expressed a number of ways then alternatives were allowed with no decrease in marks; further flexibility was provided by reducing the marks by half for a proposition that was not quite right, but still not wrong (see Appendix 3 for the marking scheme). Two other points must also be stressed: first the scheme was drawn up before the networks were marked so that it reflects the propositions suggested by the text, not by the networks. Second, the marking is of the networks not of the supportive text; this seems a reasonable assumption given that it is networks that are being analysed, not the text (subjects were instructed to keep text to a minimum). This said, the text was used occasionally but only when the names of nodes were not enough to indicate their role in the argument.

The maps were marked by the experimenter and a final mark assigned to each one. It was found that overall maps created using the constrained tool contained a greater number of propositions than those created using the unconstrained tool. Table 11.11 shows the means and standard deviations for this measure.

Condition	N	Mean percent score	SD
Constrained	6	29	10.9
Unconstrained	6	12	7.6

Table 11.11 Mean percent proposition scores for the maps

This difference was significant when tested using a one way ANOVA ($F [1,10] = 5.0$ $p < 0.05$).

In order check the reliability of this measure, an independent rater was assigned the task of marking the maps using the scheme used above. It was found that the raters marks agreed favourable with those of the experimenter using a Spearman Rank-Order correlation ($r = 0.74$).

If we are to look at the total number of key propositions rather than the scores (recall that some of the propositions are scored out of 2) then a similar difference is obtained ($F [1,10] = 12.63$, $p < 0.01$). The rationale for doing this is to find out if there is a difference in quantity as well as quality of key propositions expressed (see Table 11.12).

Condition	N	Mean number of propositions	SD
Constrained	6	12.50	1.18
Unconstrained	6	5.83	1.30

Table 11.12 Mean number of propositions expressed in the map

11.3.2.1 Ratings

Two raters were assigned the task of marking the maps on two dimensions: (1) the extent to which the maps contained goal relevant information (completeness) and (2) the extent to which the maps communicated these ideas to others (communication); both ratings were out of ten. The correlations between the scores for both of these raters were 0.89 for completeness, and 0.80 for communication; showing close agreement between raters. The means for both raters are shown below.

Condition	N	Completeness rating	SD
Constrained	6	7.2	1.6
Unconstrained	6	5.7	3.9

Table 11.13 Rated scores for completeness (maximum = 10).

Condition	N	Communicability rating	SD
Constrained	6	7.3	1.2
Unconstrained	*6*	*4.3*	*2.7*

Table 11.14 Rated scores for communicability (maximum = 10).

Although completeness was found to be nowhere near significant F [1,10] = 2.2, p = 0.16; communication narrowly missed significance at the 95% level F [1,10] = 4.1, p = 0.06. The non-significance of this result (with a two-tailed test) is not too surprising given the rather low number of maps used per condition (six). However, the means for both of these results are in the direction predicted by the hypothesis, and the standard deviations show that the constrained maps again produced scores that were more similar. If we are less conservative and apply a one-tailed test, we find that communication reaches significance (p>0.05) and completeness almost does (p=0.08). This confirms the results of the propositional analysis: subjects using the constrained tool generally seem to produce better maps that are more similar to one another. Subjects using the unconstrained tool, on the other hand, tend to vary more.

11.3.2.2 Efficiency

A further question we might investigate is how focused subjects were in the creation of the map; in other words how many of the propositions that they created were relevant to the goals of the task—assessing models of eating disorder—and how many were less relevant to this task. First of all we need to look at the total number of propositions that were created, Table 11.15 (below) shows this. Whilst there are slightly more propositions in the constrained condition, this difference was not significant (F [1,10] = 0.65, p = 0.44).

Condition	N	Mean percent score	SD
Constrained	6	20.8	2.4
Unconstrained	6	17.6	3.5

Table 11.15 The mean number of all propositions for both conditions.

Interestingly, although subjects in the constrained condition created a significantly larger number of nodes, they created comparatively fewer links. This could be partly due to the restrictions in the system which prohibited certain node-types to be linked together—for example, evidence could not be linked to evidence—and by reducing the potential link types between any pair of nodes.

Efficiency can then be established by using the ratio:

$$\textbf{Efficiency} = \frac{\textbf{Number of key propositions}}{\textbf{Total number of propositions}}$$

Maximum efficiency therefore equals 1 where all the propositions are key-propositions. Table 11.16 (below) shows the means for both conditions for this efficiency index.

Condition	N	Mean efficiency	SD
Constrained	6	0.62	0.06
Unconstrained	6	0.37	0.07

Table 11.16 Mean efficiency index per condition.

This difference was significant using a one-way ANOVA ($F[1,10] = 6.53$, $p < 0.05$).

It therefore appears that not only do subjects using the constrained tool include more key propositions in their maps, they also include proportionally fewer less relevant propositions.

Of course this measure of efficiency is only partial. We should also take into consideration the proposition scores that each of the maps obtain. Although this score is similar to the number of propositions, it also takes into account the clarity of the proposition. Recall that certain propositions are marked out of two or three depending on how explicit the subject is (see marking scheme, Appendix 3).

Thus the equation for this more complete efficiency index is:

$$\textbf{Efficiency} = \frac{\textbf{Number of key propositions}}{\textbf{Total number of propositions}} * \frac{\textbf{Map score}}{\textbf{Maximum possible score}}$$

A perfect efficiency score using this new measure would again attain 1. Table 11.17 (below) shows the average scores for both conditions using this new index of efficiency.

Condition	N	Mean efficiency	SD
Constrained	6	0.19	0.04
Unconstrained	6	0.07	0.06

Table 11.17 Efficiency index taking scores on maps into consideration.

This difference was again significant ($F[1,10] = 7.143$, $p < 0.05$).

11.3.2.3 Proposition agreement

One of the problems with the global analyses on the propositions reported above is that it is possible that two subjects including 50% of the total number of key propositions could conceivably have completely different propositions in their maps. It would be of interest to ascertain the extent to which subjects agreed as to the importance of salience of a particular proposition and to see if there were any differences between conditions. One of the benefits of constrained tools is that it tends to make maps more similar, indicating that it is focusing learners on the goals of the tasks. One way of investigating this is to look at the number of propositions shared by subjects in both of the conditions.

In order to test the significance of this it is necessary to weight each of the propositions with the number of subjects who agreed upon it, such that a proposition that all agreed upon would score 6, whereas a proposition that only one person included would score 1. Propositions that no-one included in their maps were removed from the analysis, note that because there were more zero scores in the unconstrained condition, the groups are of unequal size.

Condition	N	Mean agreement score	SD
Constrained	37	3.0	1.6
Unconstrained	27	2.3	1.7

Table 11.18 Agreement scores for propositions

This difference shown in Table 11.18 was found to be significant using a non-parametric Mann-Whitney test: ($U = 350$, $p < 0.05$).

Figure 11.1 shows the deviations from the ideal. In an ideal world, educationally speaking, all the maps would have been the same and perfectly correct. If everyone agreed on the propositions there would be no outliers, so that there would be as many propositions agreed upon by all subjects as there would be say half of them and above. Plotted on the graph below this would result in a horizontal line at the 100% mark. The worse case, on the other hand, would be where no one agreed with each other, and none of the propositions were correct, represented by the graph by the horizontal line the zero point. The graph shows that although both groups were far from perfect, the subjects in the constrained condition were closer to the ideal than those in the constrained condition.

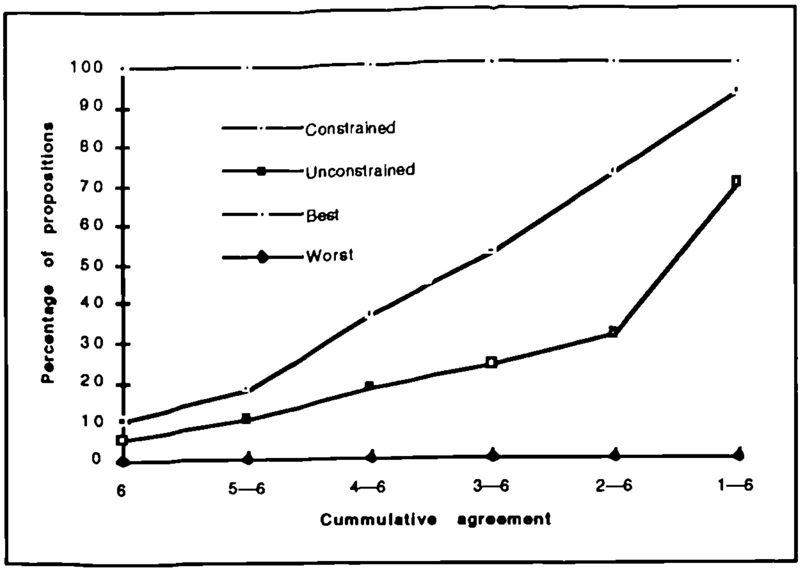


Figure 11.1 Cumulative agreement scores

11.3.2.4 Summary

The propositional analysis reveals the following:

(1) Subjects using the constrained tool included a greater amount of goal relevant propositions.

(2) Subjects using the constrained tool scored tended to show more agreement with each other on the propositions that should be included.

11.3.3 Descriptions of the maps

The analyses described above are quantitative in nature; they look at how many of the key-propositions subjects included. Given that some leeway was allowed in marking the maps, there also needs to be some qualitative analysis of the maps constructed. This may help answer a number of pertinent questions such as how did subjects in both conditions seem to frame the problem? How much were they led by the text? What errors or misinterpretations did subjects show? For references to individual maps, see Appendix 3.

11.3.3.1 Constrained tool subjects

Subjects using the constrained tool seemed to have a few problems using the notation. One area of disagreement (although by no means an error) was whether to frame the problem as trying to explain the phenomenon of eating disorders, or trying to answer the question of what caused them. Three used questions for this (Subjects C1, C4 and C6), one used phenomenon (Subject C2) and out of the remaining two one did not tie his argument together in this way (Subject C5) and one used wildcard nodes (Subject C3).

This is not a great problem, but it seems that using phenomena is of more use since this is more specific to what eating disorder are. It could be argued that constructing an argument to explain phenomena rather than to address a question is more in keeping with the goal of scientific reasoning.

Another area of disagreement was how one represented the various models that were discussed in the text. There was no specific 'model' node, so subjects either had to create their own or to rely on a pre-defined node.

Subject C1 used 'claims' to represent the competing models 'theories' were used, but these were non-specific, only forming a bridge between the claims and the questions. In fact the theories could be removed with no effect on the meaning of the map. Subject C2 used hypotheses to represent the models. Here is a rather unsurprising misinterpretation of what a hypothesis was meant to mean. In the notation a hypothesis is intended to relate to a general prediction generated by a claim that can be tested empirically. The subject responsible for this map quite understandably used hypothesis to refer to a model or a theory.

Subject C3 used both claims and theories to represent the models producing a rather interesting inconsistency. Anorexia is addressed by claims, whilst bulimia is addressed by theories. One possible reason for this is that the claims were created before any of the theories, which were created towards the end of the session. It could simply be that the subject decided to use the more specific term late on, and did not bother to change the claims back to theories[2] This is likely to be a manifestation of viscosity and will be addressed in the general discussion.

Subject C4 used claims to represent the models in a consistent way, quite a lot of evidence was mobilised in the form of evidence node. One problem that C4 encountered was that he felt that there were levels of evidence. For example, the evidence node 'Mostly women' is used in the paper as supportive of the socio-cultural model. This led to a problem because as he saw it this evidence was itself supported by other evidence: the pressures of advertising, the desire for an ideal shape, women's generally low self-esteem (perhaps cause by the first two factors) and the absence of control over their lives. The syntax of the constrained tool prevented evidence being linked to evidence, so he created his own 'Supp. evidence' (supportive evidence) node to express the relationship as he saw it. This shows one of the difficulties of trying to come up with a rigid model

---

2 As pointed out in the method section the constrained tool was quite viscous in that it would not permit the user to change the type of a node once it had been linked. Changing the type would require the user to cut all the links first!

of argument: there are always thing that will slip through. Perhaps a more appropriate interpretation of the information would be that the socio-cultural model has a sub-claim, or makes the assumption, that factors such as advertising will have an effect on eating on self-perception, and this sub-claim (or assumption) is supported by the fact that eating disorders are a predominantly female problem. It is not ideal, but it captures the essence of the argument. Subject C4's map also has eight nodes that are not linked into the network (and therefore do not form propositions). A discussion with the subject after the experiment revealed that this was due to them not being treated by the paper other than them being mentioned in passing.

Subject C5 produced a map that had a half-completed feel about it. He used a mixture of theory nodes (endocrynal, family systems and ego-psychological), claim nodes, hypothesis nodes and wildcard nodes to represent the various models. Unlike subject C3 who also showed some (though rather less) inconsistency, this cannot simply be explained by the order in which the nodes were created. All that could be said is that the subject saw little difference between the meanings of the node-types and therefore used them interchangeably.

Subject C6 was much more principled in her approach. Theories were used to represent models, and a single claim was used to highlight a specific assumption of a theory, and a hypothesis was used to represent a more specific prediction of a model which was supported by evidence.

Generally the use of terms such as critique and evidence were less problematic, although there was some confusion over whether something was contradictory evidence, or a attacking critique. This is likely to be partly to do with the rather unspecific nature of a critique. A critique can be a number of things: it can be a criticism of experimental methodology in evidence; an attack on philosophical assumptions; a criticism of a theory for being too vague or narrow; or the assertion that a claim or theory does not explain certain findings or phenomena. All of these things can be built up from lower level types such as claim, evidence (or datum) and so on. Critiques are not part of a global argument structure, rather like assumptions, they exist in the main from a particular perspective within a genre. Here they can be contrasted with data, phenomena, claims and so on which exist independently in a genre although perhaps not outside. Part of what a genre is about is having a tacit agreement about what constitutes a claim or acceptable evidence. In psychology the notion of situated cognition can be used as a critique of cognitive science if our intention is to elaborate the arguments in cognitive science. Situated cognition is not a critique however, rather it is an independent discipline in its own right. It can however, function as a critique when we do not need (or cannot be bothered) elaborating upon the claims, data etc. that constitute situated cognition.

It therefore seems that terms such as critique and assumption can be a double edged sword. One the one side they represent a useful way of pruning the argument tree to prevent claims being elaborated *ad infinitum* on the other side they may result in premature stoppage, providing the user with a means to cease elaborating when it would be more educationally useful (in terms of explicating argument) to carry on. We therefore have a dilemma: how do we provide encouragement to explicate argument just the right amount, without going into endless and largely irrelevant side-issues? This is seemingly impossible, like 'premature commitment' it is impossible to determine a metric that bounds the space of the network for even a subset of debates. All we can do is to provide feedback on good technique it is likely that such feedback would itself be of wider educational benefit, concerned with learning the boundaries of acceptable discussion for a given discipline, and the development of acceptable criteria for what constitutes a reasonable argument. I pursue this point in the next chapter.

11.3.3.2 Unconstrained tool subjects

Looking over the maps from the unconstrained condition, the map produced by U1 contained many of the key arguments mentioned in the study. On unusual feature of this map is that it repeats itself, distorted or dysfunctional cognitions, for example, appears three times in the network. Another failure is that the evidence for each of the models is placed in a single node, and no attempt is made to say whether it is supportive or contradictory.

The map of Subject U2 is perhaps the most idiosyncratic of the six maps created in the unconstrained condition, based as it is on a decision tree flow chart. As a result of this representation there are relatively high number of total propositions, with a low number of key propositions expressed. The majority of propositions in this map express the interrelationships between the variables that are supposed to cause eating disorders. Hence, psychological factors contribute to the feeling of worthlessness, Generally the structure expressed the causation and aetiology of the disease, rather than the structure of the arguments expressed within the text. The arguments are taken in good faith and the evidence, claims and assumptions that constitute the argument are not expressed.

The map of U3 is a highly interconnected cyclical graph that, superficially, contains a number of arguments indicated by the use of terms such as 'Hypothesis' and 'Claim', however many of these node are use to express causal rather than argumentative relationships. For example, the 'Ideal image' is said to conflict with the 'Image of self', the 'Image of self' influences the node 'Cog/ behav model' (Cognitive behavioural model). In this case it is not the model that is being influenced, but the cognitions of the individual.

The map of U4 contains all of the key models together with some of the criticisms (the 'Critique' nodes) and some evidence, although this evidence is often not stated labelled as such. The 'Treatments' of anorexia often serve the role of evidence, since treatments is often one of the main sources of evidence for the different theories. Another interesting feature of this map is that many of the links go the opposite direction that which one would expect. For example, Bulimia nervosa is said to explain the models, whereas a more accurate description is that the models explain the phenomenon of bulimia. Also the so-called 'Contributing factors' do not contribute to bulimia, but bulimia is said to contribute to these factors. Again the link direction is inconstant with the stated purpose of the proposition.

U5's map contains some of the models of interest (the anxiety model, the sociocultural model and so on), but contained practically no evidence in the network. Like number of the subjects in this condition there was a tendency to state the type of the node in the name box, this does not really affect readability and the subject was not penalised for this in the process of marking the maps.

The map of subject U6 This is rather different from the other two maps in that it is impoverished, containing only four propositions. Again the relations that exist express causal rather than argumentative relations between the nodes.

Generally, and in accordance with the analysis of the proposition types (see Section 11.3.1.3) there was a tendency for subjects in the unconstrained condition to represent lots of different types of relationships and propositions presented in the text. Also, in accordance with the proposition agreement results (see Section 11.3.2.3) the unconstrained maps were much more varied than those in the constrained condition.

11.3.4 Scores on the summaries

An additional measure was the extent to which the use of the tools had any effect on the summaries that subjects wrote at the end of the session.

11.3.4.1 Pre-test

To try and control for the effects of prior knowledge subjects were asked to write down all that they knew about anorexia and bulimia nervosa on a sheet of A4 paper before the experiment proper began. The were told to pay particular attention to the theories of the cause of the diseases. These pre-summaries were marked using a similar method to the way that the maps were marked (see section). The scores for the pre-test are shown below in Table 11.19.

This difference was shown to be non-significant using a one-way ANOVA ($F [1,10] = 0.73$, $p = 0.4$). It therefore seems that there was no appreciable difference in the amount of prior knowledge relating to the key information on anorexia and bulimia.

Condition	N	Mean score	SD
Constrained	6	3.50	1.80
Unconstrained	6	2.70	1.50

Table 11.19 Mean percent scores for the post-test.

11.3.4.2 Post-test

The summaries were marked using the same scoring scheme used to mark both the maps and the pre-test, which was simply a listing of all of the central propositions covered in the paper (see section 11.3.2). The scores for these summaries are shown in Table 11.20 below.

Condition	N	Mean score	SD
Constrained	6	23.80	2.00
Unconstrained	6	24.80	0.07

Table 11.20 Mean percent scores for post-test summaries

The table shows that the results were very close, and although subjects in the unconstrained condition showed a slightly higher mean score, this was not significant ($F [1,10] = 0.049$, $p = 0.8$).

11.3.5 Revisions

It is inevitable that maps will be revised during the process of construction: names of nodes be changed, some nodes and links will be deleted and so on. The question is will there be a difference between the conditions? In order to explore this question the screen-recordings were coded to enumerate the principle areas of revision, these are: changing the name of a node, changing the type of a node, changing the type of a link, deleting a node completely. The mean number of instances for these are shown in Table 11.21 below.

Condition	Change node type	Rename node	Change link type	Delete node	Total
Constrained	3.00	5.67	2.00	3.33	14.07
Unconstrained	0.50	1.33	0.67	0.16	2.5

Table 11.21 Mean number of revisions per condition

Out of these differences three were significant, these were: rename node ($F [1,10] = 6.35$, $p<0.5$), delete node ($F [1,10] = 46.75$, $p<0.0001$) and the total number of revisions ($F [1,10] = 11.03$, $p<0.01$). The number of instances for changing the types of both node and links being non-significant ($F [1,10] = 2.78$, $p = 0.12$) and ($F [1,10] = 2.28$, $p=0.16$) respectively. What do these results mean? It could be argued that the higher number of revisions in the constrained condition were a manifestation of premature commitment: subjects being forced to change inadequate maps as a result of committing themselves early on. This may well be the case, but what does this have to say about the very low number of revisions in the unconstrained condition? Could it was because there was little requirement for premature commitment in the unconstrained condition it meant that subjects did not need to go back on previously made decisions because they only committed when they were quite happy with the network? One possible way of investigating why these changes occurred is to look at when they occurred. One might hypothesise that if the increased numbers of revisions in the constrained condition were due to the subjects having to commit themselves early on, then the majority of revisions would occur in the latter stages of the interaction.

Action	Unconstrained		Constrained	
	First	Second	First	Second
Create node	72	28	67	33
Link node	33	66	30	70
Type node	20	80	**	**
Change node type	**25**	**75**	**62**	**38**
Change link type	**75**	**25**	**73**	**27**
Rename node	**50**	**50**	**67**	**33**
Delete node	**0**	**100***	**65**	**35**

Table 11.22 Activities for both conditions that occurred in the first and second halves of the interaction, revision activities in **bold** text. * Only one instance. ** Nodes in the constrained condition were created pre-typed.

Table 11.22 above shows two things: first the revisions in the constrained tool condition tended to be in the first half of the interaction rather than in the second half, and second that the activities of linking are remarkably similar for both conditions. Of course these findings could be explained in terms of premature commitment by stating that subjects in the unconstrained condition may have wanted to revise their maps in the second half of the interaction, but did not because as the maps gets larger and more connected it becomes harder to change. Such a claim would have to show that the maps in the unconstrained condition were somehow substandard to those in the unconstrained condition, and as has been illustrated above, this does not seem to be the case.

11.4 GENERAL DISCUSSION

In the intr duction I stated that one of the main objections to providing a tool that forces learners to pre-select node-types and select from a finite set of relations was that it requires learners to commit themselves early on to some form of structure. The implication of this is that either that the maps would be in some way sub-standard, or that they would require a lot of revising if the latter stages of the interaction. The results show that on a number of measures the maps for the constrained condition seem to be on the whole a better reflection of the task goals than those for the unconstrained condition, and that alth ugh there were more revisions for the constrained these tended to be in the first rather than the second half of the interaction. Of course, this experiment was rather short and the materials were rather limited; one could reasonably argue that early commitment to structure might show its negative consequences much later than the time scale used here. This is a likely occurrence, but one wonders how significant it is for learning. Perhaps it is better to spend a few hours creating a map for discussion with a tutor or another student, rather than spending days or weeks in isolation struggling trying to obtain a representation that is just right. On this point the issue of communication plays a role, to communicate ideas a representation needs to be easily readable and explicit, and independent raters judged the constrained maps as communicating the learners ideas more effectively than the unconstrained maps, something that should be borne in mind if the maps are to be used for discussion purposes.

A further observed difference was that subjects in the constrained condition tended to create argumentative propositions, whereas subjects in the unconstrained condition tended to create causal propositions. A great deal of reasoning involves stringing together causal chains, for example dysfunctional cognitions does not cause eating disorders directly, it does so though several other factors.

Dysfunctional cognition ---> Negative body image ---> Unrealistic desire to be thin ---> Anorexia

Each of the propositions in this causal chain represent a claim in itself that could be evaluated: do dysfunctional cognitions lead to negative body image, what evidence is there to suggest that an unrealistic desire to be thin leads to anorexia? Elaborating the causal chain is therefore an important issue in reasoning because if one fails to do this one might conceivably miss out on some of the key areas for evaluating and criticising the argument.

The fact that subjects using the constrained tool scored no higher on the summaries is rather disappointing, but in many ways insignificant. The interpretation of the significant result in Study 2 was that subjects were performing elaboration activities that they may not do otherwise, in this study it is conceivable that both groups were encouraged to do this. The potential benefits of using constrained knowledge mapping tools go beyond those measured by post-experimental tests, knowledge structuring activities can provide a way for supporting the acquisition of procedures and methods that are deployed within a domain, and the understanding of what makes a genre what it is to some extent they may support the critical evaluation of argument. As one of the constrained tool subjects stated:

> "What was interesting though was that by doing this it really, having just read through this [the paper] once I thought, 'well OK, that seems pretty reasonable' but having to build this [the network] really pointed out weakness in the article much more than if I'd just read the article"

The next chapter deal with some of these issues.

One observed problem with the constrained tool was its viscosity. Requiring learners to delete all links to change a node is clearly something that it unsatisfactory, and it would seem by looking at the screen-recordings that the number of revisions in the constrained condition would be even higher if they had been allowed to change node and link types more easily. As I mentioned in the introduction, increasing viscosity in such a tool automatically brings in problems of trying to preserve the syntactic structure between nodes and links, however it is possible to provide some limited facility for revisions by giving users the option of changing types to those which would not contravene the syntax.

Finally, the notion of unfamiliarity raises its head yet again. There is simply no way of telling how the results of this study would have differed if subjects in both conditions were experienced users of the tools that they had been given. It could be that subjects using the unconstrained tool would find it easier to represent the arguments of the paper that they were presented with, whereas subjects using the constrained tool found it unduly restricting. Such issues are the topic for future long-term studies, but there seem to be no obvious reasons why the results would be very different with experienced knowledge mappers,

In sum it seems that the constrained tool does have some problems with it, but these could be addressed by relatively simple modifications to the interface and the underlying argument model. Generally the results suggest that the tools are usable and that they offer some clear advantages over unstructured knowledge mapping tools.

12

Summary and conclusions

12.1 INTRODUCTION

This thesis began with the premises that academic concepts are difficult to learn because they often require the students to change their way of thinking, either at the level of the concepts themselves (I gave the example of electrical current, but there are many others), or at the level of the way that practitioners go about reasoning, communicating and arguing. A change is needed because often folk knowledge and practices are insufficient to act as a foundation that can be built upon. We saw that many theorists have advanced theories of conceptual change to account for the way that knowledge is restructured over the course of learning and development (see Thagard, 1992), and that certain theories, such as that of Chi (1991), propose that restructuring occurs gradually and the new structure never completely replaces the old one[1].

The learner's task is made yet harder because often many of the things that the student needs to know is often left for them to discover for themselves; the education system is often not tailored to challenge the learner's pre-existing conceptualisations directly and precipitate change[2]. Finally there are all the so-called architectural limitations on learning: the narrow focus of attention, the limitations of working memory, the computational cost of managing the mind's vast knowledge-base demand certain types of educational approach impose restrictions on what learners can meaningfully acquire.

The approach that I proposed to go some way towards addressing these problems is called directed reflection, which is instantiated in a generic approach known as

---

[1] Of course taken to its logical extreme this theory would posit that there is no old structure in terms of it being a single entity. Any structure that we have will, in fact, contain fragments of earlier structures, right back to the earliest.

[2] Gardner (1993) refers to the process of challenging misconceptions as "Christopherian Encounter" after Christopher Columbus who challenged the supposed prevailing view that the earth was flat.

knowledge mapping. The studies in this thesis are not, however, an investigation into the nature of directed reflection, rather they are a exploration into a problem that ultimately suggested directed reflection as some form of answer. The concept of directed reflection is therefore the culmination not the origin of this thesis. It emerged as a result of the observations in the experimental chapters, which I describe below.

Study 1 asked what do people do when they are using resources such as hypertext and found that often subjects can be less goal-directed that we would perhaps like. Study 2 looked at ways in which the problems of lack of goal-directedness and active engagement might be adressed by using knowledge mapping tools and found that whilst such tools may have an impact on learning, tools used to support goal-directed behaviour did not appear to have an effect. A potentially interesting finding of this study was subjects using knowledge mapping tools might need some support in forming explicitly structured maps that could encourage both reflection and ease of communication of their ideas to others. Study 3 indicated further that more task-directed knowledge mapping tools might be of some use, and some first attempts to do this were investigated in Study 4. The two case studies that constituted Study 5 suggested that constrained tools may have a number of benefits over unconstrained ones. Finally Study 6 provided data that in some ways confirmed this conjecture: showing that constraint makes maps more goal-directed, more similar to each other and more communicable.

The purpose of this chapter is two-fold. First I attempt to provide some kind of summary about knowledge mapping and structuring activities based on both the work in this thesis and what is known about learning. Second, I try to use some of these conclusions to suggest some future directions and further research.

12.2 Factors influencing knowledge mapping

All of the studies on knowledge mapping indicate that there is a single factor that is pre-eminent in determining the shape of the maps produced, that of problem framing. How one initially conceptualises the problem will have a large impact on the way that the argument is evaluated. If one sees the argument as being between two competing claims, then these two claims will be evaluated; however, often people's initial conceptualisations of the problem are incorrect. In the case studies we saw how both subjects underestimated the number of claims that were pertinent to the arguments that they were evaluating.

Problems of premature commitment can doubtless be found in all the studies reported in this thesis. Case study Subject 2's comments about building upon what was already there refers to this principle. These observations have been used to suggest that tools should not require (or early) commitment on the part of the learner. The interesting thing about these recommendations is that they are tacitly suggesting that the change in understanding was in no way influenced by the requirement to formalise ideas. The argument of the previous chapter (Chapter 11) was that often it is the requirement to formalise that makes students realise that they have faulty understanding. The famous Irish Cyclist Sean Kelly was once asked whether he went training on cold days he replied:

> "The trouble is that you never know how cold it is outside from looking out of the kitchen window. What you do is to get dressed, get out on the bike and train for a couple of hours, then you know how cold it was."

When the structure affords information relating to the task in hand (as it does in the previous chapter) playing around trying to fit ideas into some structure can provide useful feedback about your understanding of the learning materials.

Exploring one's structure by tinkering with a knowledge structuring tool requires some degree of fluidity, as it seems fair to believe that people are more likely to commit themselves to some action if it is easily reversible. There are basically two ways in which restructuring of a knowledge map can be achieved. Local fluidity, where the system permits the names and types of single nodes and links to be changed seems fairly easy to achieve. Global fluidity in which wholesale restructuring is supported seems more problematic since it tends to require changes at the local level as well. As I pointed out in Section 11.1.1.2 perhaps at this point it is better to start afresh.

Care must be made in overestimating the impact that knowledge mapping tools might have on learning. It would be all to easy too make bold claims about how knowledge structuring tools might foster the development of reasoning, argument, analytical and critical thinking skills. This seems rather rash. What these tools do is to provide a framework for getting learners to think about the structure of argument, their successfulness depends not simply upon the tool, but also the educational environment in which it is situated. First of all, the instruction that learners receive on how arguments work is of great importance. Lipman (1991) states that one of the most important factors in the development of critical thinking and analytical skills is the development of effective criteria; that is the attributes that make a good argument, as opposed to one that is less good. If students are to maximise the potential of tasks such as the ones described in this thesis, they will need to be educated in these criteria. Related to this is the quality of the feedback that is given. Spending time with the student discussing their maps is vital if students are to learn from their mistakes. As we saw in Chapter 6, knowledge maps can reveal some quite interesting misconceptions, but we must take care not to over-interpret what might be lapses of attention or slips of the pen, and if misconceptions do seem to be present we must try and resolve them.

Finally there is nothing special about using argument or theory evaluation structure, it is simply one of a large number of structures that might be used. The one selected will be dictated by the skills that we wish students to acquire and the structures used to present information to students. One could conceive of hybrid representations, designed to support a variety of educationally relevant tasks, similar to the authoring systems mentioned in Chapter 7. Thagard (1992) argues that scientific knowledge can be crudely divided into two levels: conceptual knowledge which is basically hierarchical, and propositional knowledge which is the relationship between theories and evidence, and is non-hierarchical. As we saw in the previous chapter, a lot of the ideas expressed in the paper were also causal in nature. It seems possible that these three types of relationship could be accommodated in a single tool, but the question remains as to whether or not it is educationally tractable to combine these three types of representation, or whether it merely muddies the issue and makes learners less focused. It is an empirical question.

12.3 FUTURE DEVELOPMENTS

There are a number of different directions that can be pursued in the future development of knowledge mapping for learning. These can be divided into two overarching categories of passive and active systems. Passive developments could increase the things that the learner could do with the tool, whilst keeping the amount that it interferes with the learner's actions down to a minimum; perhaps only restricting the learner to accord with a particular notation as for the constrained tool used in the last two studies. Active systems would be more interventionist either providing advice or reacting against actions that the learner performed. Some of the recommendations for passive systems are prerequisite for the development of active systems in the sense that you need to get the underlying notation and interface right before you can expect to develop active systems, for this reason the two approaches should be seen as mutually exclusive.

12.3.1 Better developed passive systems

One of the most important attributes of knowledge maps is their visual clarity; like all maps they only show the information that is relevant to a particular set of goals; effectively separating the wheat from the chaff. Unfortunately as networks get bigger, the ease with which they communicate the information to the learner tends to decrease. An obvious way round this is to reduce the complexity of the network by allowing the learner to hide certain portions of the net, as offered by Euclid and Inspiration. This would enable learners to, for example, to hide all of the data that relates to a claim so that only the key points of the argument are displayed—cutting down the amount of information which might get in the way. Another way of lowering the information overload is by permitting maps to be nested within higher-level maps, something that is permitted by a number of commercial packages such as Learning Tool. Again this serves the function of permitting learners to view only the important parts of the maps and remove irrelevant clutter. Both of these approaches have trade-offs. Hidden information can be dangerous in that users may forget that it exists, a case of out of sight out of mind. Hiding parts of a net can therefore both aid and impede visualisation in varying measures. A passive system can do little to remedy this problem, although it can keep track of nodes created and remind the user of their existence from time to time.

It also seems that there are improvements that can be made to the underlying model, the constrained tool reported earlier in this thesis has a God's-eye view of theoretical or argumentative structure, meaning that it treats argument or theory building as if all theories accounting for a set of data or phenomena are known at the outset. In order for learners to come up with a meaningful and tractable structure they have to frame the problem by pitting a particular theory against all other theories. If a new theory comes along, or the learner becomes aware of another theory or claim then they can run into problems trying to fit this into the structure that they have created, something that was evident in Case Study 2. In truth it is difficult to see how this problem can be overcome in a knowledge structuring tool. Increasing the fluidity of the tool is a possibility but, as I discussed in Section 12.2, this will only provide part of the answer; perhaps is it is an unavoidable problem.

A further problem is that there is little distinction in the model between explanatory and predictive theories. Explanatory theories are good because they explain all (or at least a major subset) of the data or phenomena in the world, predictive theories are good because they generate strong hypotheses that can be tested either by experimentation or by observation—in Karl Popper's terms they are refutable. A good theory makes sense of the world by linking together phenomena that at first blush seem disparate, and render new observations explainable. Theories make sense of the world by making assumptions which are based on data, phenomena, or generally held beliefs about the world, through these assumptions the theory can make claims, claims explain data. Claims also generate hypothesis, which can be empirically tested. Elaborating the assumptions of a theory or claim is crucial to testing its validity. For example, consider Craik and Lockhart's levels of processing theory. This theory makes the claim that there are different levels of processing, and that the depth of processing determines the extent to which something can be recalled at a later date. It then makes the assumption that semantic processing is a deep form of processing, whilst syntactic processing is a shallow form of processing, this allows a hypothesis to be generated that tasks that require subjects to focus on semantics should lead to better retention than those where the subject focuses on the syntax, which has been found by a number of studies (Hyde and Jenkins, 1969, for example). Unfortunately, among other problems for this theory, there is no evidence to support the semantic = deep assumption, short of saying that semantic *must* be better than deep because the data says so. The argument therefore largely depends upon auxiliary assumptions that allow the claim to predict the hypothesis, since this assumption has no data to support it short of the data that supports the hypothesis that it is needed to derive, the argument is therefore circular.

A better developed system might incorporate methods of representing these ways of evaluating and criticising arguments. Some of the studies reported in this thesis indicate that the representation used for AKA, described in Chapter 9, fails to capture many forms of argument in a satisfactory manner. Currently I am working on models which enable students to represent some of these attributes of argument and theory evaluation.

A final way forward using systems that are essentially passive, is to develop systems that enable collaborative argument. Students could work on a shared structure over a network with the goal to resolve, as far as they can, some relevant problem or debate, effectively learning about both content knowledge and argument structure by interacting with each other.

12.3.2 Active systems

Perhaps more educational value can be made from knowledge mapping tools if the system is made active, or reactive. An active system can offer advice to the learner on the appropriateness or well-formedness of a map, whereas a passive system, such as all the ones discussed thus far, requires a human being to do this. There is a continuum here: the simplest form of active system could give basic syntactic feedback on a net, a more complicated one could give more semantic feedback. Again there is a trade-off, not least in that as feedback becomes more informative and more domain dependent there is a concomitant increase in the amount of domain dependent information that the system needs to have and be able to communicate to the learner.

Syntactic feedback is probably the easier of the two, the system could offer the student feedback on the well-formedness of the argument, perhaps by extending the 'why not' help of AKA (see Chapter 9). The system could, for example, tell the learner who is trying to support a theory directly with evidence that it is more effective to articulate the individual claims first and then cite evidence in support of these claims.

A more complex, but still tractable, possibility would be to require learners to specify numerical or categorical link weights (for example, evidence X supports claim Y with strength of 0.8, or it supports it very strongly). The system could then run through the network taking the weighting into account and suggest which theory or claim is best supported by the available evidence. The idea of this would be to see if the claim that the system decides is the best agrees with what the learner or information source that the learner is using is the best. This may force the learner to look for more evidence, criticisms and so on to try and redress the balance.

There are some apparent problems with this approach. First, there is the possibility that given a disparity between the opinions of learner and system, the learner could merely adjust the weights blindly until agreement was reached. Second, and more worryingly, what happens if (perhaps by accident) both learner and system agree on the best solution. Given two competing claims or theories (something that is likely in many arguments— think of the nature-nurture debate) there is a 0.5 probability that the learner and system would agree at this gross level through chance alone, even thought they agree for different reasons. Notwithstanding these potential problems, an approach similar to this has been developed by Michael Ranney and colleagues (Schank & Ranney, 1993) using their *Convince Me* program. Convince Me allows students to assess the relationship between competing theories and particular bits of evidence which are either given to the student or are self-generated. Two competing theories might be the sociocultural and cognitive models of anorexia. These two competing theories are then linked to evidence that they explain, and the student can provide weights to show how strongly the explanatory link is, and how important the evidence is. Once the student has gone through this process they can run the model that they have created using ECHO a connectionist network that simulates a method of belief revision known as Explanatory Coherence (Thagard, 1992).

Useful though it is, Convince Me only really deals with the explanatory power of theories, it says nothing about their predictive power, nor does it question the validity of different sorts of evidence. Perhaps further developments of tools such as Convince Me might utilise some of the methods use in the tools used in this thesis and take a broader slice of theory and argument evaluation.

A still more complicated approach would be to build some form of domain knowledge into the system, in the form of canonical argument structures. The system would set the learner a task such as "evaluate the different models of eating disorders" and they could then look for information in a hypertext database built in to the system. When they find information that appears relevant, they create a node in the network and give it a type that reflects its role in the developing argument. Since the system has some knowledge about the way that the information relates to the argument, it can offer advice and feedback on the network as it develops (see Figure 12.1 for a mock-up interface).

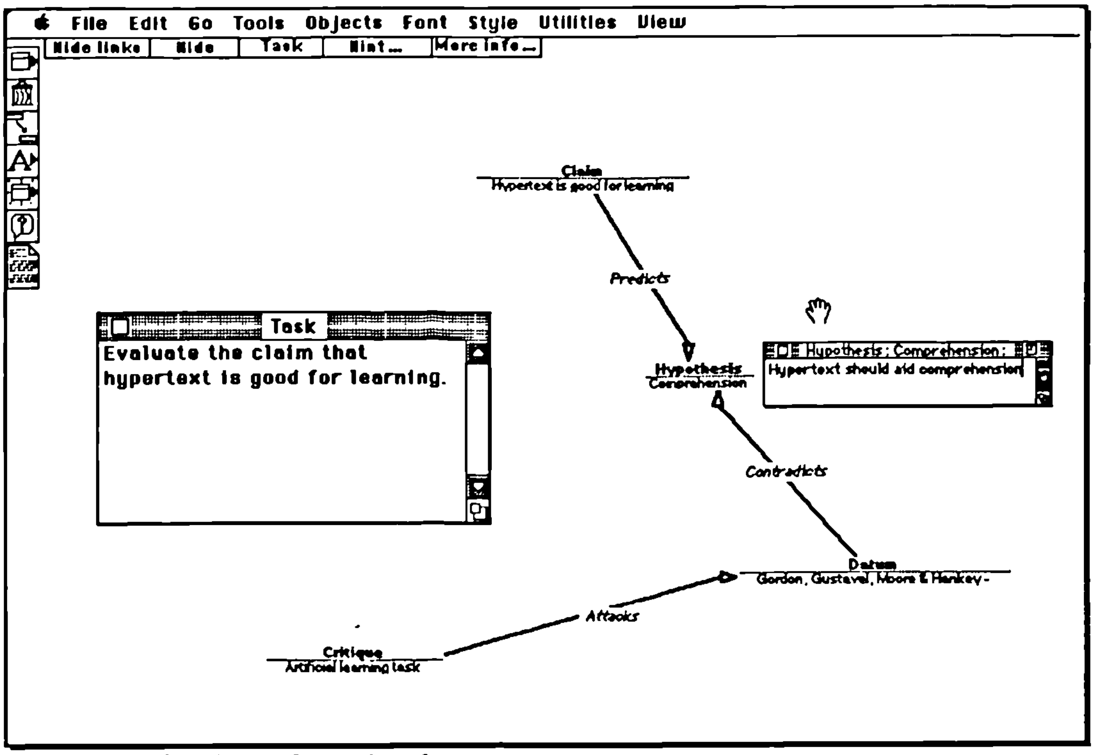


Figure 12.1 Mock up of tutor interface.

This type of approach is as of yet pure fantasy, and it is unclear if would be useful even if it were possible to build such a system. What does seem to be clear, however, is that feedback of some sort be it given by a computer or by a human is of vital importance if we are to get the most out of these tools.

This hypothetical example brings us full circle. One of the problems with hypertext that I discussed earlier in this thesis was users lack of goal-directedness when accessing the information, this 'tutoring' approach provides learners with primary task that drives the interaction; hypertext simply provides a convenient way of providing relevant information to support this task.

12.4 Some questions for future research

This thesis raises more questions than it answers, which given the fact that this research is in its early stages is both unsurprising and healthy. Below I list some of the questions that seem to be of relevance for future research.

- Will using structured tools such as those described in this thesis aid people to evaluate arguments?

- Given that the tools help evaluate arguments, will this translate into evaluative skills when not using the tool (or a paper and pencil)?
- What is the transfer between domains of any skills that learners might acquire?
- What sort of feedback should learners be given when using the tools in order to extract their maximum potential?
- What sort of collaborative discussion might the tools support or promote?
- How must the educational context be structured to best engender the activities that the tools support?

These questions are, I believe, central to the development of tools that aid directed reflection; a tool is just an artefact, it is the ingenuity and creativity with which it is used that is central to its usefulness.

REFERENCES

Allinson, L.J. (1991). Navigational issues in hypertext-based learning. *Unpublished PhD thesis*, University of York.

Anderson, J. R. & Reiser, B. J. (1985). The LISP tutor, *Byte*, vol. 10, no. 4, pp 159-175.

Anderson, J. R. (1983). *The Architecture of Cognition.* Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press.

Anderson, J. R. (1990a). *The Adaptive Character of Thought.* Hillsdale, NJ: LEA.

Anderson, J.R. & Bower, G. H. (1973). *Human Associative Memory.* Winston, Washington.

Anderson, J.R. & Singley, M.K. (1993). The identical elements theory of transfer. In J.R. Anderson, Rules of the Mind. pp 183-205.

Anderson, J.R. (1990). *Cognitive Psychology and its Implications.* (3rd ed.) New York: Freeman.

Anderson, J.R. (1993). *Rules of the Mind..* Hillsdale, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.

Anderson, J.R., Boyle, C.F. & Yost, G. (1985). The geometry tutor. *Proceedings of the IJCAI*, 1-7.

Anderson, J.R., Boyle, C.F., Corbett, A.T. and Lewis, M.W. (1990). Cognitive modeling and intelligent tutoring, *Artificial Intelligence*, *42*, 7-49.

Ausubel, D.P. (1968). *Educational Psychology; A Cognitive View* . Holt, New York: Rinehart Winston.

Baddeley, A.D. (1990). *Human Memory: theory and practice.* Hillsdale, NJ: LEA.

Baddeley, A.D. & Hitch, G. (1974). Working memory. In G.H. Bower (Ed.) *The psychology of Learning and Motivation, vol. 8.* London: Academic Press.

Baird, P. & Percival, M. (1989). Glasgow on-line: database development using apple's HyperCard. in R. McAleese (Ed.) *Hypertext: Theory into Practice.* London: Intellect.

Barnard, P.J. (1987). Cognitive resources and the learning of human-computer dialogues. In J.M. Carroll (Ed.) *Interfacing Thought: Cognitive Aspects of Human-Computer Interaction.* MA: CUP.

Barsalou, L.W. (1986). 'Are there static category representations in long term memory?' *Behavioural and brain sciences.* vol. 9(4), 651-652.

Bartlett, F.C. (1932). *Remembering.* Cambridge: CUP.

Bazerman, C. (1988). *Shaping written knowledge: the genre and activity of the experimental article in science.* Madison: University of Wisconsin Press.

Beeman, W., Anderson, K., Bader, G., Larkin, J., McClard, A., McQuillan, P., and Shields, M. (1987). Hypertext and pluralism: From lineal to non-lineal thinking. *Proceedings of the Hypertext '87 conference*, Chapel Hill, NC, November, pp 67-88.

Bernstein, B. (1992). Euclid: Supporting collaborative argumentation with hypertext. Technical Report CU-CS-596-92, Department of Computer Science, University of Colorado.

Berry, D.C. & Broadbent, D.E. (1984). On the relationship between task performance and associated verbalisable knowledge. *Quarterly Journal of Experimental Psychology, 36A*, 209-231.

Bielaczyc, K., Pirolli, P.L. & Brown, A.L. (in press) Training in self-explanation and self regulation strategies: investigating the effects of knowledge acquisition activities on problem solving. *Cognition and Instruction.*

Birnbaum, L.M., Flowers, M. & McGuire, R. (1980). Towards an AI model of argumentation. *Proceedings of the First International Conference on Artificial Intelligence.* Stanford, CA.

Bloom, B.S. (1964). *Taxonomy of Educational Objectives: The Classification of Educational Goals.* vol. 2. Longman.

Bransford, J.D. & Franks, J.J. (1971). The abstraction of linguistic ideas. *Cognitive Psychology, 3.* pp 331-350.

Bransford, J.D. & Johnson, M.K. (1973). Consideration of some problems of comprehension. In Chase, W.G. (Ed.) *Visual Information Processing*, New York: Academic Press.

Bransford, J.D., Sherwood, R.D. & Sturdevant, T. (1987). Teaching thinking and problem solving. In R.J. Sternberg & J.B. Baron, (Eds) *Teaching thinking skills: theory and practice.* New York: Freeman. pp 162-181.

Brewer, W.F. & Lambert, B.L. (1993). The theory-ladenness of observation: evidence from cognitive psychology. In *Proceedings of the fifteenth annual conference of the cognitive science society.* Hillsdale, NJ: LEA. pp 254-259

Broadbent, D.E., Fitzgerald, P. & Broadbent, M.H.P. (1986). Implicit and explicit knowledge in the control of complex systems. *British Journal of Psychology, 77*, 33-50.

Brown, J.S., Collins, A, & Duguid, P. (1989). Situated cognition and the culture of learning, *Educational Researcher,* Jan-Feb, 32-42.

Bush, V. (1945). As we may think. *Atlantic Monthly, 176*, 1, (July), 101-108.

Buzan, T. (1993). *Use your head.* London: BBC Books.

Carbonell, J.R. (1970). Mixed-Initiative Man-Computer Dialogues. Doctoral Dissertation, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, Cambridge, MA.

Carey, S. (1985). *Conceptual Change in Childhood.* MIT Press, Cambridge, MA.

Carraher, T.N., Carraher, D.W. & Schliemann, A.D. (1985). Mathematics in the streets and in the schools. *British Journal of Developmental Psychology, 3*, 21-29.

Carroll J.M. (1990). *The Nurnberg Funnel: designing minimalist instruction for practical computing skill.* Cambridge, Massachusetts: MIT press

Carroll, J.M., Singley, M.K. & Rosson, M.B. (1991). Toward an Architecture for Instructional Evaluation. Research Report, IBM Research Division, Yorktown Heights, New York.

Charney, D. (1994). The impact of hypertext on the processes of reading and writing. In S.J. Hilligoss & C.L. Selfe (Eds). *Literacy and Computers* , New York: MLA.

Charniak, E. (1972). Towards a model of children's story comprehension. Technical report 266, Artificial Intelligence Laboratory, Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

Cheng, P.W., Holyoak, K.J., Nisbett, R.E. and Oliver, L.M. (1986). Pragmatic versus syntactic approaches to training deductive reasoning. *Cognitive Psychology, 5*, 121-152

Chi, M.T.H, Glaser,R. & Rees, E. (1982). Expertise in problem solving. In R.J. Sternberg (E.) *Advances in the Psychology of Human Intelligence*, vol. 1, Hillsdale, NJ: LEA. pp 7-15.

Chi, M.T.H. & VanLehn, K. A. (1991) The content of physics self-explanations. *The Journal of the Learning Sciences*, 1 (1), 69-105.

Chi, M.T.H. (1991). Conceptual change within and across categories: implications for learning and discovery in science. In R. Giere (Ed.), *Cognitive Models of Science, Minnesota Studies in the Philosophy of Science,* vol. 15. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota.

Chi, M.T.H. (1993). Barriers to conceptual change in learning science concepts: a theoretical conjecture. In *Proceedings of the fifteenth annual conference of the cognitive science society.* Hillsdale, NJ: LEA. pp 312-317.

Chi, M.T.H., Bassok, M., Lewis, M., Reimann, P. & Glaser, R. (1989). Self-explanations: how students study and use examples in learning to solve problems. *Cognitive Science, 13,* 145-182.

Chi, M.T.H., Feltovich, P.J. & Glaser, R. (1979). Categorization and Representation of Physics Problems by Experts and Novices. *Cognitive Science* , *5*, 121-152.

Clancey, W.J. (1987). *Knowledge-based tutoring: the GUIDON program.* Cambridge, MA: M.I.T. Press

Cohen, H.J., & Squire, L.R. (1980). Preserved learning and retention of pattern analysing skills in amnesia: dissociation of knowing how and knowing that. *Science, 210*, 207-210.

Collins, A. & Brown, J.S. (1988). The Computer as a Tool for Learning Through Reflection. In H. Mandl & A. Lesgold (Eds). *Learning Issues for Intelligent Tutoring Systems.* Berlin: Springer-Verlag. pp 1-18.

Collins, A. (1977). Processes in acquiring knowledge. in R,C. Anderson; R.J. Spiro and W.E. Montague (Eds). *Schooling and the Acquisition of Knowledge.*, Hillsdale, NJ: LEA.

Collins, A.M. & Loftus, E.F. (1975). A spreading activation theory of semantic processing, *Psychological Review, 82*, 407-28.

Collins, A.M. & Quillian, M.R. (1969). Retrieval time from semantic memory. *Journal of Verbal Learning and Verbal Behaviour, 8*, 240-247.

Conklin, J & Begeman, M. L. (1988). gIBIS: a tool for all reasons, *Journal of the American Society for Information Science*, May, 200-213.

Conklin, J, (1993). CM/1. Corporate memory systems. Austin, Texas.

Conklin, J. (1987). Hypertext: an Introduction and Survey. *IEEE Computer. 20*, (9), 17-41.

Cooper, G.A. & Sweller, K. (1987). Effects of schema acquisition and rule automation on mathematical problem-solving transfer. *Journal of Educational Psychology, 79*, 347-362.

Cox, R. & Cumming, G. (1990). The role of exploration-based learning in the development of expertise. in A. McDougal & C. Dowling (Eds) *Computers in Education.* North-Holland: Elsevier Science Publishers B.V.

Craik, F.I.M. & Lockhart, R.S. (1972). Levels of processing: a framework for memory research. *Journal of Verbal Learning and Verbal Behaviour*, 11, 671-684.

Craik, F.I.M. & Tulving, E. (1975). Depth of processing and the retention of words in episodic memory. *Journal of Experimental Psychology: General, 104*, 268-294.

Craik, F.I.M. & Watkins, M.J. (1973). The role of rehearsal in short term memory. *Journal of Verbal Learning and Verbal Behaviour, 12*, 599-607.

Dansereau, D.F., McDonald, B.A., Collins, K.H., Garland, J., Holley, C.E., Diekhoff, E.M. & Evans, S.H. (1979). Evaluation of a learning strategy system. In H.F. O'Neil & C.D. Spielberger. *Cognitive and affective learning strategies.* New York: Academic Press.

Dearholt, W. & Shvaneveldt, R. W. (1990). Properties of pathfinder networks. In R.W Shvaneveldt (Ed.) *Pathfinder Associative Networks: Studies in Knowledge Organisation.* NJ: Ablex.

Di Vesta, F.J. & Rieber, L.P. (1987). Characteristics of Cognitive Engineering: The Next Generation of Instructional Systems. *ECTJ*, vol. 35, No. 4. pp 213-230.

Dooling, D. J. & Lachman, R. (1971). Effects of comprehension on retention of prose. *Journal of Experimental Psychology, 88*, 216-22.

Edwards, D.M. & Hardman, L. (1989). Lost in Hyperspace: Cognitive Mapping and Navigation in a Hypertext Environment. in R. McAleese (Ed.) *Hypertext Theory into Practice.* pp 105-125.

Elm, W.C. & Woods, D.D. (1985). Getting lost: A Case Study in Interface Design. *Proceeding of the Human Factors Society*, 927-931.

Englebart, D. C. (1963). A conceptual framework for the augmentation of man's intellect. In *Vistas in Information Handling*, Washington, DC: Spartan Books. pp 1-29.

Eysenck, M.W. & Keane, M.T. (1990). *Cognitive psychology: a student's handbook.* Hillsdale, NJ: LEA.

Ferguson-Hessler, M.G.M. & de Jong, T. (1990). Studying physics texts: Differences in study processes between good and poor performers. *Cognition and Instruction 7(1)*, 41-54.

Fiderio, J. (1988). A Grand Vision. *Byte*. October. 237-247.

Fischer, G. (1988). A critical assessment of hypertext systems. *Panel Session in Proceedings of CHI '88: Human Factors in Computing Systems,* 223-227, New York: ACM.

Fischer, G., McCall, R., and Morch, A. (1989). JANUS: Integrating hypertext with a knowledge-based design environment. *Proceedings of the Second ACM Conference on Hypertext: hypertext 89.* Pittsburgh, PA, November. 105-118.

Fisher, K.M. (1990). Semantic Networking: the new kid on the block. *Journal of Reasearch in Science Teaching*, 27(10), 1001-1018.

Fisher, K.M. (1992). SemNet: a tool for personal knowledge construction. In P.A.M. Kommers, D.H. Jonassen & J.T. Mayes (Eds) *Cognitive Tools for Learning.* Berlin: Springer-Verlag. pp 63-77.

Folz, P.W. (1991). A text comprehension model of hypertext: a theory based approach to design and evaluation. in S.P. Robertson, G. Ohlson & J.S. Ohlson *Reaching Through Technology Proceedings of CHI 1991*, 489-490. New York: ACM.

Foss, C.L. (1987). Effective Browsing in Hypertext Systems. Unpublished Paper. University of Lancaster.

Foucault, M. (1970). *The order of things.* A. Sheridan (trans.) New York: Random House.

Frase, L.T. (1975). Prose processing. In G.H. Bower (Ed.). *The Psychology of Learning and Motivation.,* vol. 9. New York: Academic Press.

Gagné, R.M; Briggs, L.J. & Wager, W.W. (1988). *Principles of Instructional Design* (3rd ed.) New York: Holt, Rinehart & Winston.

Gardner, H. (1993). *The Unschooled Mind.* London: Fontana.

Gaver, W.W. (1991). Technology Affordances. in S.P. Robertson, G, Ohlson & J.S. Ohlson (Eds) *Reaching Through Technology Proceedings of CHI 1991.* New York: ACM. 79-84.

Gentner, D. & Gentner, D.R. (1983). Flowing water and teeming crowds: mental models of electricity. In D.R. Gentner & A.L. Stevens (Eds). *Mental Models* Hillsdale, NJ: LEA.

Gentner, D. & Stevens, A.L. (1983). *Mental models.* Hillsdale, NJ: LEA.

Gick, M.L. and Holyoak, K.J. (1980). Analogical problem solving. *Cognitive Psychology, 12*, 306-355.

Glaser, R. & Bassok, M. (1989). Learning theory and the study of instruction. *Annual Review of Psychology, 40*, 631-666.

Glock, M.D. (1967). The improvement of college reading. Boston: Houghton Mifflin.

Godden, D.R. & Baddely, A.D. (1975). Context dependent memory in two natural environments: on land and underwater. *British Journal of Psychology, 55.* 325-332.

Gordon, S., Gustavel, J. Moore, J. & Hankey, J. (1988). The effects of hypertext on reader knowledge representation. *Proceedings of the Human Factors Society, 32nd Annual Meeting,* Anahelm, CA.

Green, T.R.G. (1989). Cognitive dimensions of notations. In A. Sutcliffe and L. Macaulay (Eds) *People and Computers V,* Cambridge: CUP. pp 443-460.

Green, T.R.G. (1990). The cognitive dimension of viscosity: a sticky problem for HCI. In D. Diaper, G. Gilmour, C. Cockton and B. Shackel (Eds) *Human-Computer Interaction: Proceedings of Interact '90,* 79-86. N. Holland: Elsevier Science Publishers.

Greeno, J. G. (1991). Environments for Situated Conceptual Learning. In L. Birnbaum. (Ed.). *The International Conference on the Learning Sciences: Proceeding of the 1991 conference.* Virginia: Association for the Advancement of Computing in Education. pp 211-217.

Hammond, N.V. & Allinson, L. (1989). Extending hypertext for learning: and investigation of access and guidance tools. in A. Sutcliffe and L. Macaulay (Eds) *People and Computers V,* Cambridge: CUP. pp 293-304.

Hammond, N.V. (1990). Tailoring hypermedia for the learner. Presented at NATO ARW.

Hammond, N.V. (1993). Learning with hypertext: problems, principles and prospects. In C. McKnight, A. Dillon and J. Richardson (Eds). *Hypertext: a Psychological Perspective.* Ellis Horwood: New York.

Hayes, J. R. & Flower, L. S. (1980). Identifying the Organisation of Writing Processes. In L.W. Gregg & E.R. Steinberg, (Eds). *Cognitive Processes in Writing,* Hillsdale, NJ: LEA.

Hayes, J.R. & Simon, H.A. (1977). Psychological differences among problem isomorphs. In J. Castellan, D.P. Pisoni & C. Potts (Eds), *Cognitive theory,* vol. 2. Hillsdale, NJ: LEA.

Hayes, P.J. (1985). The second naive physics manifesto in J.R. Hobbs & R.C. Moore, (Eds). *Formal Theories of the Commonsense World* NJ: Norwood.

Hayes-Roth, B. & Hayes-Roth, F. (1979). A cognitive model of planning. *Cognitive Science, 3,* 275-310.

Heeren, E. & Kommers, P.A.M.(1992). Flexibility of expressiveness: a critical factor in the design of concept mapping tool for learning. In P.A.M. Kommers, D.H. Jonassen & J.T. Mayes (Eds) *Cognitive Tools for Learning.* NATO ISI Series, Berlin: Springer-Verlag. pp 85-10.

Hyde, T.S. & Jenkins, J.J. (1969). Differential effects of incidental tasks on the organisation of recall of a list of highly associated words. *Journal of Experimental Psychology, 82,* 472-481.

HyperCard version 2.2 (1994). Apple Computers inc. Cupertino, CA.

Jegede, O.J., Alaiyemola, F.F. & Okebukola, P.A.O. (1990). The effect of concept mapping on students' anxiety and achievement in biology. *Journal of Research in Science Teaching, 27,* 951-960.

Johnson-Laird, P. N. (1983). *Mental Models* Cambridge: CUP.

Jonassen, D.H. & Grabinger, R.S. (1990). Problems and Issues in designing hypertext/hypermedia for learning. In D.H. Jonassen & H. Mandl (Eds). *Design issues in hypertext/hypermedia for learning*: Heidelberg: Springer-Verlag. pp 3-25.

Jonassen, D.H., Beissner, K. & Yacci, M. (1993). *Structural Knowledge.* Hillsdale, NJ: LEA.

Jones, T. (1990). Towards a typology of educational uses of hypermedia. in *The Proceedings of the International Conference on Computer Assisted Learning.* June 11-13 1990, Hagen, West Germany.

Kellogg, W.A. & Breen, T.J. (1987). Evaluating user and system models: applying scaling techniques to problems in human-computer interaction. In R Baecker & W. Buxton (Eds), *CHI '87: Human Factors in Computing Systems,* New York: ACM. pp 303-308.

Kelly, G.A. (1955). *The Psychology of Personal Constructs.* New York: Norton.

Kibby, M.R. & Mayes, J.T. (1991). The learner's view of hypermedia. In M.R. Kibby, G. Tanner, T. Mayes, C. Knussen, S. Grant & L. Hardman (Eds). *Final report on user interfaces for hypermedia.* The SAFE report.

Kibby, M.R., Tanner, G., Mayes,. Knussen, C., Grant, S. & Hardman, L. (1991). HYP/21 *Final report on user interfaces for hypermedia.* The SAFE report.

Kintsch, W. (1987). The role of knowledge in discourse comprehension: a construction-integration model. *Psychological Review 95,* 2 163-182.

Kintsh, W. & van Dijk, T. A. (1978). Towards a model of text comprehension and reproduction. *Psychological Review, 85,* 363-94.

Kommers, P.A.M. & de Vries, S.J. (1992). TextVision and the visualisation of knowledge: school-based evaluation of its acceptance at two levels of schooling. In P.A.M. Kommers, D.H. Jonassen & J.T. Mayes (Eds) *Cognitive Tools for Learning.* NATO ISI Series, Springer-Verlag: Berlin.

Kornbrot, D.E. & MacLeod, M. (1990). Monitoring and analysis of hypermedia interaction. In D. Diaper, G. Gilmour, C. Cockton and B. Shackel (Eds) *Human-Computer Interaction: Proceedings of Interact '90,* 79-86. N. Holland: Elsevier Science Publishers. pp 401-406.

Kotovsky, K. Hayes, J.R. & Simon, H.A. (1985). Why are some problems hard? Evidence from the Tower of Hanoi. *Cognitive Psychology, 17,* 248-294.

Kozma, R.B. (1992). Constructing knowledge with learning tool. In P.A.M. Kommers, D.H. Jonassen & J.T. Mayes (Eds) *Cognitive Tools for Learning.* Springer-Verlag, Berlin. pp 23-33.

Kozma, R.B., & Van Roekel, J. (1986). *Learning Tool.* Santa Barbara, CA: Intellimation.

Kransor, L. & Mitterer, J. (1984). LOGO and the development of general problem solving skills. *The Alberta Journal of Educational Research, 30*(2), 133-144.

Kuhn, D. (1991). *The Skills of Argument.* Cambridge: CUP.

Kuhn, T. (1970). *The Structure of Scientific Revolutions*, 2nd ed. University of Chicago Press, Chicago.

Kunz, W. & Rittel, H. (1970). Issues as elements of information systems. Centre for Planning and Development Research. Univ. of California, Berkeley, Working Paper.

Lakoff, G. (1987). *Women Fire and Dangerous Things: What Categories Reveal About the Mind.* Chicago: University of Chicago Press.

Langley, P. & Simon, H. A. (1981). The Central Role of Learning in Cognition. in J.R. Anderson (Ed.) *Cognitive Skills and their Acquisition.* NJ: LEA.

Larkin, J. & Simon, H.A. (1987). Why a diagram is (sometimes) worth ten thousand words. *Cognitive Science, 11,* 65-99.

Laurillard, D. (1993). *Rethinking University Education: a framework for the effective use of educational technology.* New York: Routledge.

Lave, J. & Wenger, E. (1991). *Situated Learning: Legitimate Peripheral Participation.* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, New York.

Lave, J. (1988). *Cognition in Practice: Mind, Mathematics and Culture in Everyday Life.* New York: CUP.

Lee, J. & Lai, K. (1991). What's in design rationale. *Human-Computer Interaction, 6* (3&4), 251-280.

Lipman, M. (1987). Some thoughts on the foundations of reflective education. In J.B. Baron and R.J. Sternberg (Eds) *Teaching Thinking Skills: theory into practice.* New York: Freeman. pp 151-161.

Lipman, M. (1991). *Thinking in Education.* Cambridge: CUP.

Logan, D. (1988). Toward an instance theory of automatization. *Psychological Review, 95*, 492-527.

Luria, A.R. (1976). *Cognitive Development: it's Cultural and Social Foundations.* Cambridge, Massachusetts: Harvard University Press.

MacLean, A., Young, R.M., Bellotti, V. & Moran, T.P. (1991). Questions, Options and Criteria: elements of design space analysis. *Human-Computer Interaction*; 6 (3&4), 201-250.

Mandler, G. (1967). Organisation in memory. In K.W. Spence & J.T. Spence (Eds) *The psychology of learning and motivation*, vol. 1, pp 327-372. New York: Academic Press.

Marchionini, G. (1988). An invitation to browse: designing full text systems for casual users. *Canadian Journal of Information Science, 12*(3/4), 69-79.

Marshall, C. C. and Rogers, R. A. (1992). Two Years before the Mist: Experiences with Aquanet. In *Proceedings of the Fourth ACM Conference on Hypertext,* 53-62.

Marshall, C.C., Halasz, F.G., Rogers, R.A. and Janssen, W.C. (1991). Aquanet: a hypertext tool to hold your knowledge in place. in. *Hypertext '91: Third ACM conference on hypertext.* New York: ACM Press.

Mayes, J.T. (1990). Come back programmed learning all is forgiven! Presented at NATO ARW.

Mayes, J.T. (1992). Cognitive tools: a suitable case for learning. In P.A.M. Kommers, D.H. Jonassen & J.T. Mayes (Eds) *Cognitive Tools for Learning.* Berlin: Springer-Verlag. pp 7-18.

Mayes, J.T., Draper, S., McGregor, A., & Oakley, K. (1988). Information flow in a user interface: the effect of experience and context on recall of MacWrite screens. In D.M. Jones and R. Winder (Eds) *People and Computers IV, Cambridge University Press*, Cambridge.

Mayes, J.T., Kibby M. R. & Watson. H. (1988). StrathTutor: The Development and Evaluation of a Learning-by-Browsing System on the Macintosh. *Computers and Education, 12*, 221-229.

McAleese, R. (1989). Navigation and browsing in hypertext. in R. McAleese (Ed.) *Hypertext Theory into Practice*, pp 6-44.

McAleese, R. (1994). A theoretical view of concept mapping. *Association for Learning Technology Journal, 2,* 1, 38-48.

McCall, R. (1987). Procedurally Hierarchical Issue-Based Information Systems. *Proceeding of Conference on Planning and Design in Architecture* Boston, MA. American Society of Mechanical Engineers.

McCloskey, M. (1983). Naive theories of motion. In D.R. Gentner & A.L. Stevens (Eds). *Mental Models* Hillsdale, NJ: LEA.

McKendree, J.E. & Reader, W.R. (1994). The homeopathic fallacy in hypertext: misconceptions of psychology in the design of computer courseware. *ALT News.* April, 1994.

Meyer, B.J.F. & Rice, G. (1982). The interaction of reader strategies and the organisation of text. *Text, 2,* 141-154.

Meyer, B.J.F. (1975). Signalling the structure of text. in Jonassen, D. (Ed.)., *The Technology of Text.* Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Educational Technology Publications

Meyer, B.J.F., Young, C.J. & Bartlett, B.J. (1989). *Memory Improved: Reading and Memory Enhancement Across the Life Span Through Strategic Text Structures.* Hillsdale, NJ: LEA.

Meyer, R. (1984). Aids to prose comprehension. *Educational Psychologist, 19,* 30-42.

Meyrowitz, N. (1986). Intermedia: The architecture and construction of an object-oriented hypermedia system and applications framework. *Proceedings of the OOPSLA '86 Conference,* (Portland, OR, September), pp 186-201.

Miller, G. A. (1956). The magical number seven, plus or minus two: some limits on our capacity for processing information. *Psychological Review, 63,* 81-97.

Mirande, M.J.A. (1984). *Studeren door schematiseren* [Studying by schematizing]. Utrech, The Netherlands: Het Spectrum.

Mitchell, P.D. & Taylor, S.G. (1991). *Concept mapping as an aid to computer-mediated conversation: an application of conversation theory.* Paper presented to the Association for Educational Communications and Technology, Orlando, FL.

Mitterer, J. & Kransor, L. (1986). LOGO and the transfer of problem solving skills: an empirical test. *The Alberta Journal of Educational Research, 32*(3). 176-194.

Miyake, N. (1986). Constructive interaction and the iterative process of understanding. *Cognitive Science, 10,* 151-177.

Monty, M.L. (1990). Issues for supporting note-taking and note using in the computer environment. Unpublished PhD Dissertation, University of San Diego, CA.

Morton, J. (1967). A singular lack of incidental learning. *Nature, 215,* 203-204.

Moulthrop, S. (1991). Beyond the electronic book: a critique of hypertext rhetoric. in. *Hypertext '91: Third ACM conference on hypertext.* New York: ACM Press.

Neely, J.H. (1977). Semantic priming and retrieval from lexical memory. Roles of inhibitionless spreading activation and limited capacity attention. *Journal of Experimental Psychology: General, 106,* 226-254.

Nelson, T. H. (1988). The Xanadu hypertext system. Unpublished manuscript, Xanadu Operating Company, Inc., Palo Alto, California.

Nielsen, J. (1986). Online Documentation and Reader Annotation. in *Proceedings of 1st International Conference Work with Display Units,* Stockholm, Sweden May 12-15 1986, pp 526-529.

Njoo, M. & de Jong, T. (1991). Support for learning with computer simulations; giving hints, supporting learning processes, and providing hypotheses. Presented at the 1991 AERA Annual Meeting, Chicago, April 3-7, 1991.

Noblitt, J. (1991). Paper presented at IBM European conference, August, 1991.

Novak, J.D. & Gowin, D.B. (1984). *Learning How to Learn.* Cambridge, England; CUP.

Novak, J.D. (1990). Concept mapping: a useful tool for science teaching. *Journal of Reasearch in Science Teaching,* 27(10), 937-951.

Olson, G.M. & Olson, J.S. (1991). *User-centred design collaboration technology. Journal of Organisational Computing.* 1 (1), 61-83.

Papert, S. (1980). *Mindstorms: Children, Computers and Powerful Ideas.* New York: Basic Books.

Papert, S. (1987). Microworlds: transforming education. in Lawler, R.W. & Yazdani, M. (Eds). *Artificial intelligence and education volume one.* Norwood: Ablex. pp 54-95

Piaget, J. (1963). *The Origins of Intelligence in Children.* New York: W.W. Norton.

Pinker, S. (1994). The language instinct: how the mind creates language. New York: Morrow/viking.

Posner, M.I. & Snyder, C.R.R. (1975). Attention and cognitive control. In R.L. Solso (Ed.), Information Processing and cognition. Hillsdale, NJ: LEA.

Quillian, M.R. (1968). Semantic memory. In M.L. Minsky (Ed.), *Semantic information processing.* Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.

Reason, J. T. (1979). Actions not as planned. In G. Underwood & R. Stevens (Eds), *Aspects of Consciousness.* London: Academic Press.

Reder, L. (1982). Elaborations: when do they help and when do they hurt? *Text, 2,* 211-224.

Reiser, B.J., Anderson, J.R. and Farrell, R.G. (1985). Dynamic student modeling in an intelligent tutor for Lisp programming. *Proceedings of the Ninth International Joint Conference on Artificial Intelligence*, Los Angeles, Morgan Kaufmann, Los Altos, California. pp 8-14.

Rosch, E. H. (1973). Natural Categories. *Cognitive Psychology, 4*, 328-350.

Rubinstein, M. F. (1975). *Patterns of Problem Solving.* Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall.

Rumelhart, D.E. & Norman, D.A. (1978). Accretion, tuning and restructuring: three modes of learning. In J.W. Cotton & R.L. Klatzky (Eds) *Semantic Factors in Cognition*. Hillsdale, NJ: LEA.

Rumelhart, D.E., Smolensky, P., Hinton, G. and McClelland, J. (1986). Schemata and sequential thought processes in PDP models. In J. McClelland & D. Rumelhart (Eds), *Parallel distributed processing: explorations in the microstructure of cognition, vol. 2.* Cambridge MA: MIT Press/Bradford Books. pp 7-57.

Rundus, D. (1971). Analysis of rehearsal processes in free recall. *Journal of Experimental Psychology, 89*, 68-77.

Ryle, G. (1949). *Concept of the mind.* London: Hutchinson.

Schank, P & Ranney, M. (1993). Can reasoning be taught? *Educator.* University of Berkeley. vol. 7(1).

Schank, R.C. & Abelson, R. (1977). *Scripts, Goals, Plans and Understanding: an Enquiry into Human Knowledge Structures.* Hillsdale NJ: LEA.

Schank, R.C. (1982). *Dynamic Memory.* Cambridge New York: University Press.

Schank, R.C. (1986). *Explanation Patterns: Understanding Mechanically and Creatively.* Hillsdale, NJ: LEA.

Schön, D,A. (1988). *Educating the Reflective Practitioner,* San Francisco: Jossey Bass.

Schuler, W. & Smith, J. B. (1990). Author's Argumentation Assistant (AAA): a hypertext-based authoring tool for argumentative texts. In A. Rizk, N. Streitz & J. André, (Eds). *Hypertext: Concepts, systems and applications.* Proceedings of the European Conference on hypertext. INRIA, France, November. 1990 Cambridge University Press.

Scott, P. (1993). Generating a hypermedia tutorial from a concept network. *Presented at CAL 93.* University of York, April, 1993.

Self, J.A. (1988). Bypassing the intractable problem of student modelling. *Proceedings of the 1st International Conference on Intelligent Tutoring Systems.* Montreal, Canada, pp 18-24.

Shipman, F.M. & Marshall, C.C. (1993). Formality considered harmful: experiences, emerging themes and directions. Technical report CU-CS-948-93. Department of Computer Science, University of Colorado, Boulder.

Shuell, T.J. (1992). Designing instructional computing for meaningful learning. In P. Winne & M. Jones (Eds) *Foundations and Frontiers in Instructional Computing Systems.* Berlin: Springer-Verlag.

Shum, S.J. & Hammond, N.V. (1994). Argumentation-based design rationale: what use at what cost?. *International Journal of Human-Computer Studies.* 40, 603-652

Shum, S.J. (1991). Cognitive Dimensions of Design Rationale, unpublished PhD thesis, University of York.

Simon, H.A. (1955). A behavioural model of rational choice. *Quarterly Journal of Economics, 69*, 268-288.

Simon, H.A. (1974). How big is a chunk? *Science, 183*, 482-488.

Singley, M.K. & Anderson, J.R. (1989). *The Transfer of Cognitive Skill.* Harvard University Press, Cambridge, MA.

Skinner, B.F. (1968). *The Technology of Teaching.* Appleton-Century-Crofts, New York.

Smolensky, P., Fox, R., King, R. & Lewis, C. (1988). Computer-aided reasoned discourse, or how to argue with a computer. In R. Guindon (Ed.). *Cognitive Science and Its Application to Human-Computer Interaction.* pp 109-162. N.J.: Ablex, Norwood,

Sowa, J.F. (1984). *Conceptual Structures: Information Processing in Mind and Machine.* Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley.

Sternberg, R.J. (1987). Teaching intelligence: the application of cognitive psychology to the improvement of intellectual skills. In R.J. Sternberg & J.B. Baron, (Eds) *Teaching thinking skills: theory and practice.* New York: Freeman. pp 182-218.

Støylen, I.J.& Laberg, J.C. (1990). Anorexia nervosa and bulimia nervosa: perspectives on etiology and cognitive behaviour therapy. *Acta Psychiatrica Scandinavian Supplement, 82.* 52-58.

Suchman, L.A. (1987). *Plans and Situated Actions: The Problem of Human Machine Communication.* New York: CUP.

Sweller, J. & Cooper, G.A. (1985). The use of examples as a substitute for problem solving in learning algebra. *Cognition and Instruction, 2*, 59-89.

Sweller, J., Mawer, R.F. & Ward, M.R. (1983). Development of expertise in mathematical problem solving. *Journal of Experimental Psychology: General, 112*, 463-474.

Tennyson, R.D., Woolley, F.R. & Merrill, M.D. (1972). Exemplar and non-exemplar variables which produce correct concept classification behaviour and specified classification errors. *Journal of Educational Psychology, 67*, 852-859.

Thagard, P. (1992). *Conceptual Revolutions.* Princeton University Press.

Thomas, E.L. & Robinson, H.A. (1972). *Improving reading in every class: a sourcebook for teachers.* Boston: Houghton Mifflin.

Tompsett, C.P. (1990). Contextual browsing within a hypermedia environment unpublished paper. Kingston polytechnic.

Toulmin, S. (1958). *The Uses of Argument.* Cambridge: CUP.

Twidale, M.B. (1991). Cognitive agoraphobia and dilettantism: issues for reactive learning environments. In L. Birnbaum (Ed.), *Proceeding of the 1991 International Conference on the Learning Sciences.* Virginia: AACE.

Twidale, M.B., Rodden, T. & Sommerville, I. (1994). Investigating the use of a computational tool to support the refinement of ideas. *Computers and Education,* vol. 22, No 1/2, 107-118.

Van Dijk, T. (1977). *Text and context: explorations in the semantics and pragmatics of discourse..* London: Longman.

Van Dijk, T. A. & Kintsch, W. (1983). *Strategies of discourse comprehension.* New York: Academic Press.

VanLehn, K. (1988). Towards a theory of impasse driven learning. In H. Mandl & A. Lesgold (Eds). *Learning Issues for Intelligent Tutoring Systems.* Berlin: Springer-Verlag. pp 18-41.

Vera, A.H. & Simon, H.A. (1993). Situated action: a symbolic interpretation. *Cognitive Science, 17*, 7-48.

Vygotsky, L. (1962). *Language and Thought.* Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.

Wainer, H. (1992). Understanding graphs and tables. *Educational Researcher,* Jan-Feb 12-23.

Wandersee, J.H. (1990), Concept Mapping and the Cartography of Cognition. *Journal of Research in Science Teaching, 27*(10), 923-936.

Wason, P.C. & Shapiro, D. (1971). Natural and contrived experience in a reasoning problem. *Quarterly Journal of Experimental Psychology, 23* , 63-71.

Wason, P.C. (1977). 'On the failure to eliminate hypotheses...' — a second look. In P.C. Wason & P.N. Johnson-Laird, (Eds) *Thinking: Readings in cognitive science.* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.

Wellington, D.B., Nissen, M.J. & Bullemer, P. (1989). On the development of procedural knowledge. *Journal of Experimental Psychology: Learning, Memory and Cognition, 15*, 1047-1060.

Wenger, E. (1987). *Artificial Intelligence and Tutoring Systems.* Morgan Kaufman inc. California.

White, B.Y. & Frederiksen, J.R. (1990). Causal model progressions as a foundation for intelligent learning environments. *Artificial Intelligence*, *42*, 99-157.

White, B.Y. (1993). Intermediate abstractions and causal models: a microworld-based approach to science education. P. Brna, S. Ohlsson & H. Pain (Eds), *Proceedings of AI-ED 93*. pp 26-33.

Wright, P. (1991). Cognitive overheads and prostheses: some issues in evaluating hypertexts. *Hypertext '91: Third ACM conference on hypertext.* New York: ACM Press.

Zadeh, L. (1965). Fuzzy sets. *Information and Control* ,*8*, 338-53.

Zellweger, P.T. (1989). Scripted documents: a hypermedia path mechanism. In *Hypertext '89*. New York: ACM Press.

Appendix 1: instructions for study 1

Session 1: familiarisation with operations.

How to use these instructions

These sheets constitute a tutorial describing the basic features of the hypertext system 'Atomic structure' and are thus designed to be used whilst using the system. With this in mind these instructions attempt both to describe the various features of the system and give you a series of exercises to perform which should enable you to get a feel for the various facilities available in the system. Thus exercises are denoted by boxed text, whilst descriptions are left un-boxed. Y might therefore find it useful, at least in the early stages, to stick as closely as possible to the exercises that are given; you will get a chance to explore on your own later on in this session.

Starting out

The first screen that you encounter is a startup screen bearing the title "Atomic Structure".

> At the start up screen click the mouse anywhere on this screen. A screen called introduction should reveal itself, read this.
>
> After you have finished go to the contents screen by selecting the "-- Next --" button near the bottom right hand corner of the screen, you now should be on the contents screen.

Using the contents facility

The box on the left contains four Topics, selecting one of these with the mouse brings up the sub-topics relating to this chapter heading in the left hand box. Once displayed you can go to any of these sub-topics by selecting them with the mouse.

> Select one of the titles in the left hand Topics box, notice how it causes the listings in the right hand box to change appropriately, try this a few times to get the feel for it. Select one of the names in the right hand "Sub-topics" box, when you reach the relevant screen return to the contents screen by selecting the light bulb icon on the right hand side of that screen The light bulb always takes you to the contents screen (this icon is known as a 'button 'see next section). When you get back to the contents screen note that the topic that you selected is now italicised indicating that you have seen that particular topic (this happens whenever you first visit a screen). Try this a few times to get used to it.

Within text links

Within this system there are objects known as buttons, these are parts of the screen that are active, selecting one of these areas with a mouse click initiates a certain action. There are a number of different buttons in this system which you will encounter in due course, you have already encountered the light bulb button that returns you to the contents screen. A type of button in this system is the cross reference button, these are located within the text itself and are represented by **Bold underlined text**. These buttons denote cross references that are related to the current topic in some way, selecting such a button takes you to a screen of information that relates to the meaning of the text that you selected.

> Select the Topic "Atomic structure" in the left hand box, this brings up a list of topics about the structure of the atom. Select the sub-topic "The electron". The screen that you arrive at contains words in **Bold underlined text**, if you move the mouse over these then they blacken indicating that they are buttons. Select the text "**Neutrons**" by clicking on it, this should take you to a screen of information titled "The neutron".

Backtracking

So much for that, but it may also be necessary to backtrack through the screens that you have seen already, such a facility is available. In the bottom right hand corner of every text screen is a icon that is a sort of bent arrow icon with the word "Back" underneath it. This button when selected with the mouse has the effect of taking you back to the last screen that you saw, repeated selections of this button will take you back through all the screen that you have seen previously in reverse chronological order.

> Select the "Back' button at the bottom right of the screen. This should return you to the screen entitled 'The electron"

Note buttons

Another type of textual button is the note button, this has the effect of showing a pop up field with a brief note relating to the relevant piece of text, these buttons are represented by ***bold underlined italicised text.***

> The screen that you are currently on (the electron) contains text of this sort, select the text "***energy***" with the m use, hold the mouse button down to keep the note visible, releasing the mouse button hides it again. Return to the contents page via the light bulb icon.

The index

As well as the contents facility there is an alphabetically ordered index of key-words that can be accessed fr m any screen in the system.

From the current screen (Contents) select the button 'Index" on the right hand side of the screen. This takes you to the index screen containing a list of key-words. Select one of the titles in the index box, this should take you to a screen of information relevant to the title. Try this a number of times to get a feel for the way it works. After you have finished go back to the contents screen.

Guided Tours

In the previous section you saw how different screens of information can be accessed in three ways:

1. By accessing the material directly via the contents page using a list of titles;
2. By following within text cross reference links;
3. By using the alphabetically ordered index facility.

There is a further way of accessing material, the guided tour. Unlike the previous methods which rely on your judgement to make decisions about where to go next, the guided tour facility allows you to follow a linear sequence of screens rather in the manner that you might follow the pages of a book.

Taking a tour

A tour can be taken from the contents page by selecting the "Take tour " button which is located at the bottom of the right hand sub-topics box on the contents page.

Select the title "Radioactivity" (left hand title box), then select the "Take tour" button this should take you to a screen titled "Tour on radioactivity". This contains a brief description of the information covered in the tour. Select the "-- Next --" button near the bottom right of the screen, repeat this procedure until tour reach a screen entitled "Radiation hazards".

Whilst in a tour the "-- Next --" button is used to move forward through the screens in the tour.

During a tour all the other buttons mentioned previously are still available, selecting **within text links** will take you to the appropriate screen as before. However, since you are on a tour selecting any button that takes you to another screen other than the "-- Next --" button will result in the tour being suspended until you wish to return to it. Another important point is that "-- Next --" buttons only really make sense within the confines of the tour, if you are outside the tour then all "-- Next --" buttons are hidden, being shown again once the tour is rejoined. Because of this you must select the "rejoin tour" button to rejoin a tour! (see later).

Another type of button that you may see outside a tour is the "-- More --" button, this simply means that there is more information available on the same topic as the screen that you are currently on.

> From the screen entitled "Radiation hazards", select the text button "ionisation", this takes you to a screen on the topic of ionisation. Note that a button appears near the bottom right of the screen bearing the name "Rejoin tour" at any point after leaving a tour it can be rejoined at the point that you left it by selecting this button. Select the rejoin tour button to take you back to "Radiation hazards" where you left off.

Ending a tour part-way through

Sometimes you may want to end a tour (as opposed to simply suspending a tour see above) part-way though. On the right hand strip of buttons is a bus icon, when you are in a tour it has a diagonal bar through it, selecting this allows you to end a tour.

> From the screen you are at ("Radiation hazards") select the Bus icon, select "OK" on the dialog box, the next dialog box asks whether you wish to go back to the contents screen or stay where you are, opt to remain where you are for the moment, by selecting "Remain".

Joining a tour from text screens

Sometimes you may wish to start a tour from a text screen rather than from the contents screen. If you are not currently in a tour and you are on a screen that is part of a tour then there should be a bus icon (no diagonal bar (see quick reference)).

> From the screen now displayed ("Radiation hazards") select the bus button, note that the dialog allows you to carry on with the tour from the point that you are at, or go to the beginning of the tour. Opt to continue.

Taking the option to start at the beginning, not surprisingly, takes you to the first screen in the tour, as if you started from the contents screen.

Making notes

Within the system is a facility that allows you to create your own notes when you want to.

> From the screen you are currently at "Radiation hazards", select the note pad button (second from the top, right-hand strip). This brings up a dialog box asking whether you wish to access previously created note pad, or make a new one, for the moment do not respond.

Making new notes

Since you are a first timer opt to make a new one by selecting the "Create..." option. A new box appears asking you to name the note card, give it a name (normally you will give it a name with some relevance to the notes that you wish to make for now anything will do (names longer than "12" characters are automatically truncated). Click on "OK" if you have not already done so. A note pad with "Notes on <YOURNAME>" appears, click the mouse on the pad part of it and type away to make notes. When you have finished click on the closebox (top left hand corner)) to get rid of the notepad.

Retrieving a previously made note pad

Select the note pad button again, this time opt for the "Existing" option. A window is brought up that contains a small "page" icon with the name on the note pad you created underneath it, this icon 'contains' the note you just made, accessing it is covered in the next section on the concept mapping tool.

The concept mapping tool

Accessing notes

Notes are stored in a window as page icons with the associated name underneath, as well as accessing notes there are a number of other things that you can do with the page icons, these will be covered later.

At the moment the K-Tool window should be open after following the last set of instructions. The page icon in the centre of the window should bear the name that you gave the note pad (or some truncated form of it). This icon is movable in a similar way to the way that files, folders etc. are moveable in a standard Macintosh window.

Move the icon, put the mouse pointer over it, hold down the mouse button (the icon should highlight black), then move the mouse pointer, still holding the button down, the icon should follow the movements of the mouse pointer. Release the mouse button and the icon stays where you put it. Try dragging the icon to different part of the screen to get a feel for the way that it can be moved.

Accessing previously made notes via K-Tool

Highlight the icon by clicking on it with the mouse, then go to the button at the bottom of the K-Tool window named "**Notes**", select this with the mouse. The note that you made should now be brought up in a separate window, you can edit this or add more to it if you wish. To hide the window click in the close box (top left hand corner) with the mouse or alternatively click on the screen (or screens) behind it with the mouse, this becomes active hiding the note pad window.

Creating concept icons and note cards with K-Tool

As well as creating note pads via the main screens of the hypertext document you can also create them via the concept mapping tool.

> Click on the button named "**Create icon...**" at the bottom of the K-Tool window, type a name different to the one you used previously into the dialog box as you did when creating the note card, click "OK", then wait. An icon bearing the name you gave it (or a truncated form of it) should appear in the centre of the window, a note pad can be accessed from this as before.

Linking icons together.

The icons in the concept map window in addition to being used as a means to access and create note cards can also be linked together as a means for noting the relationships between the concepts that you see in the hypertext database. You have seen that the icons can be dragged around in the manner of standard Macintosh icons, but they can also be linked together to form a conceptual map of the domain.

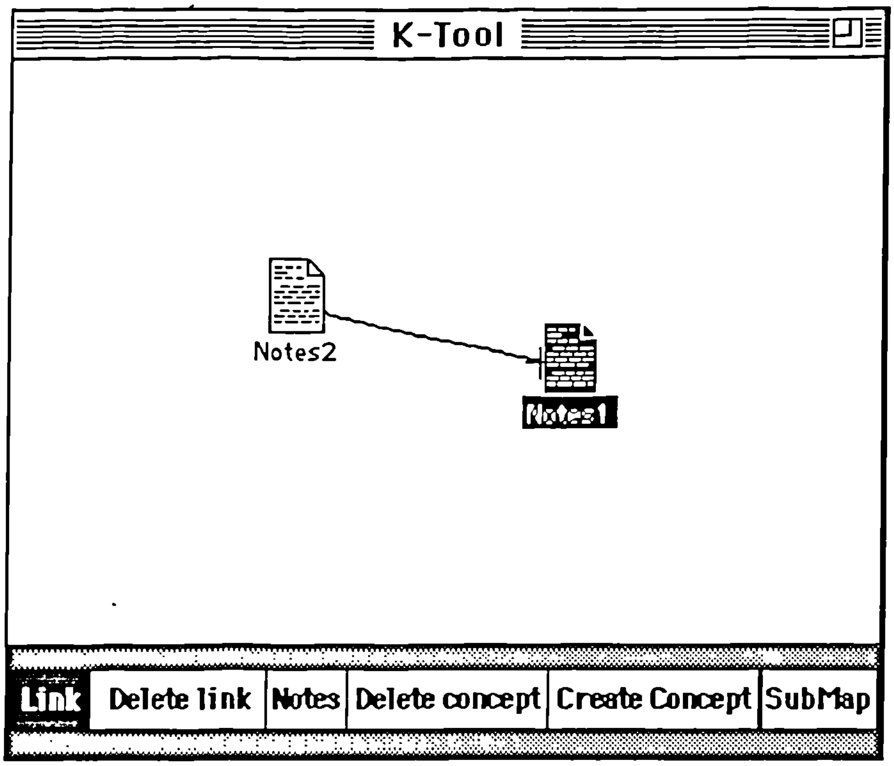


Figure 1 linking icons together in the concept mapping window

> Select the button named "**Link**" at the bottom of the concept map window, (it should remain highlighted in black when you do this). Move the mouse pointer to one of the two icon currently in the window, hold the mouse button down and drag from the location of this icon to the other icon, then release the mouse button. A dialog box will then ask you if you wish to name the link, select "Yes" type in a name and click on "OK". A line should now be seen linking the two concepts together with the name you gave it (or a truncated form) on it.

Deleting links

Deleting links follows a similar to the process of drawing links.

Select the 'Delete link' button (it remains highlighted), position the mouse pointer over the start of the to-be-deleted link, hold down the mouse button and then drag the pointer over the link, the mouse pointer should change to a square the link should delete as you do this.

Other operations

Other operations can be performed using the concept mapping tool, all follow a similar pattern to the ones above and will not be covered here.

Bookmarks

The bookmark facility allows you to mark a particular screen of information that you consider to be important in some way and may wish to return to it in the future.

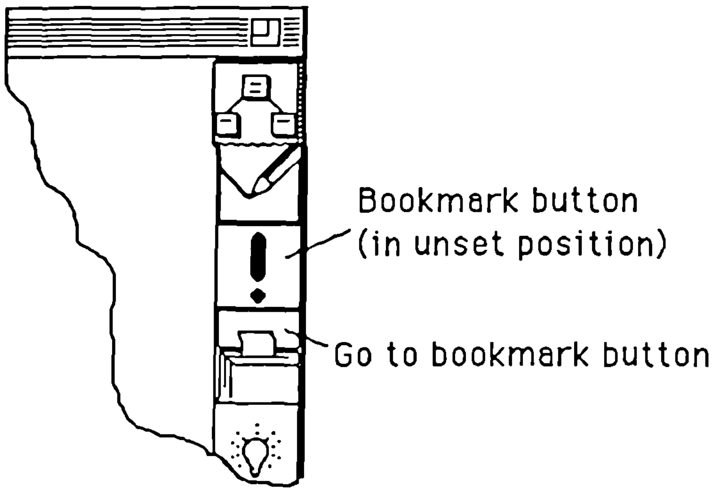


Figure 2. bookmark in unset position

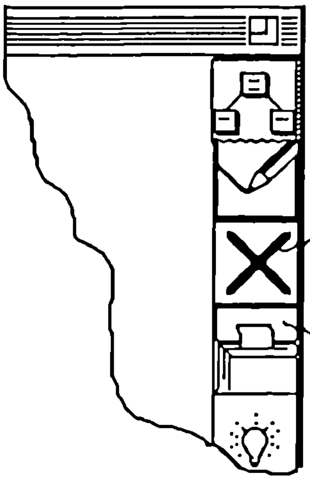


Figure 3: bookmark in set position

Close the concept mapping tool window and any open notepads. Go to any card in the system via the contents screen, set the bookmark by selecting the exclamation mark button (a cross means that a bookmark for that card is already set see (figures 2 and 3), the button changes to a cross to show that the bookmark has been set (see figure 3). The name of this screen is then placed on a list of names on another screen, to view this list select the 'go to bookmark button' (see diagram). The list that you see should contain the card that you have just left, go to it by selecting its name in the list. Once you have returned to the card remove the bookmark by selecting the cross icon, if you go to the bookmark list again (the same procedure) the name of the screen should have been removed.

Return to the contents page and wait for the next set of instructions...

Session 1 - Parts 2 & 3

Task

Your task is to find information relating to the following:

1. The properties of the electron, 2. How radiation is measured, 3. How the Thompson atomic model differs from the Rutherford atomic model: what evidence led to the adoption of the Rutherford model.

To find the information you can use any means that is at your disposal, but note that some of the information in the system is more relevant to the task in hand than other information. You may therefore find it necessary to spend more time on material that you feel is relevant, and less (or perhaps none) on that which you feel is less so. Be selective, but make these decisions with your partner.

Feel free to ask questions, at ány point.

Remember...

The system has been designed with a number of facilities to aid you in our task, it may be v reminding you of these.

Guided tours - allow you to follow linear sequences of information.

Contents- allows you to straight to material that you feel is relevant.

Hypertext links (bold text) - allow you to go to cross references within the text itself.

Bookmarks - allow you to mark material that you think particularly important and/or ma that you wish to return to.

Index - an alphabetically ordered list of key-words.

Note tool - allows you to make on screen notes.

Concept mapping tool - Can be used to access notes and as a means for depicting between pieces of information that you feel are connected.

Session 2

Introduction

Previously you saw a hypertext system containing information relating to the atom. In this part of the experiment you will use a similar system on as different subject matter. All the facilities that you used previously are available on this system including guided tours, hypertext links, bookmarks, concept mapping and note tools, etc. etc. If you have not used any of these facilities before say so before the session begins.

The system that you are to use contains information on a historic monument; the stone circle at Callanish in the Outer Hebrides. The material covers the structure of this stone circle; theories of why it was built; the people who built it and other related information. Your task is to use the material in the system to learn about certain aspects of the Callanish stone circle, specified below.

Study task

Find out about some of the theories relating to the purpose of Callanish, pay particular attention to the relationship between these theories and the overall structure of the monument.

At the end of the session you will be presented with a few questions that relate to the above, these will be answered without notes. After this session you will be required to give a brief summary of the material that you have seen, for this you will be allowed to use any notes that you have made.

Finding information

To find the information you can use any means that is at your disposal, but note that some of the information in the system is more relevant to the task in hand than other information. You may therefore find it necessary to spend more time on material that you feel is relevant, and less (or perhaps none) on that which you feel is less so.

Feel free to ask question when you feel it is necessary.

Remember...

The system has been designed with a number of facilities to aid you in our task, it may be worth reminding you of these.

Guided tours - allow you to follow linear sequences of information.

Contents- allows you to straight to material that you feel is relevant.

Hypertext links (bold text) - allow you to go to cross references within the text itself.

Bookmarks - allow you to mark material that you think particularly important and/or material that you wish to return to.

Index - an alphabetically ordered list of key-words.

Note tool - allows you to make on screen notes.

Concept mapping tool - Can be used to access notes and as a means for depicting links between pieces of information that you feel are connected.

If you have any problems, do not hesitate to ask the experimenter.

Questions

Below are a number of questions relating to the information contained in the system that you just used. Due to the nature of the system and time constraints it is entirely possible that you missed some of the information required by one or more of the questions; do not worry about this and do not be afraid to guess.

1. What artefacts denoted by the names:
a) Callanish main site,
b) Callanish complex?

2. Why is it difficult to find alignments between Callanish and stars today?

3. 'It is as likely that potential alignments have been ignored as it is that hypothesised alignments are spurious.' Why might this be?

4. Despite being cross shaped, the Callanish main site is not of Christian origin, why not?

5. Draw a rough sketch of the Callanish main site, indicating the main features.

6. The builders of Callanish must have been less primitive than we generally assume, (briefly) give reasons in support of this statement.

7. Give some reasons as to why no dwelling places of comparable age have been found near to Callanish?

8. How tall and how heavy is the central menhir?

9. Roughly how big is the stone circle itself?

10. Approximately when was Callanish constructed?

11. There is a theory that unlike today stone age and bronze age man divided the year up into three seasons. Based on the information that you have seen in the system, which points of the year do you think would signify the onset of these seasons and where would these seasons fall? Give reasons for you choices.

Appendix 2: instructions for study 2

[Same instructions for hypertext system as for Study 1]

Q-Tool: a concept mapping tool.

Q-Tool is an application known as a concept mapping tool, this allows you to represent the key concepts of the domain graphically by creating small 'page' icons and linking them together to show how the domain concepts relate to each other. These icons created using Q-Tool can contain text that are accessed by a clicking on the icon with the mouse, thus the tool provides you with a way of organising and structuring your notes.

In addition to allowing the creation of 'note' icons Q-Tool can also be used to aid the learning processes in other ways by provision of features such as the 'question' and 'answer' facilities. The purpose of these is to encourage the learner (you) to explore the material in a more efficient way

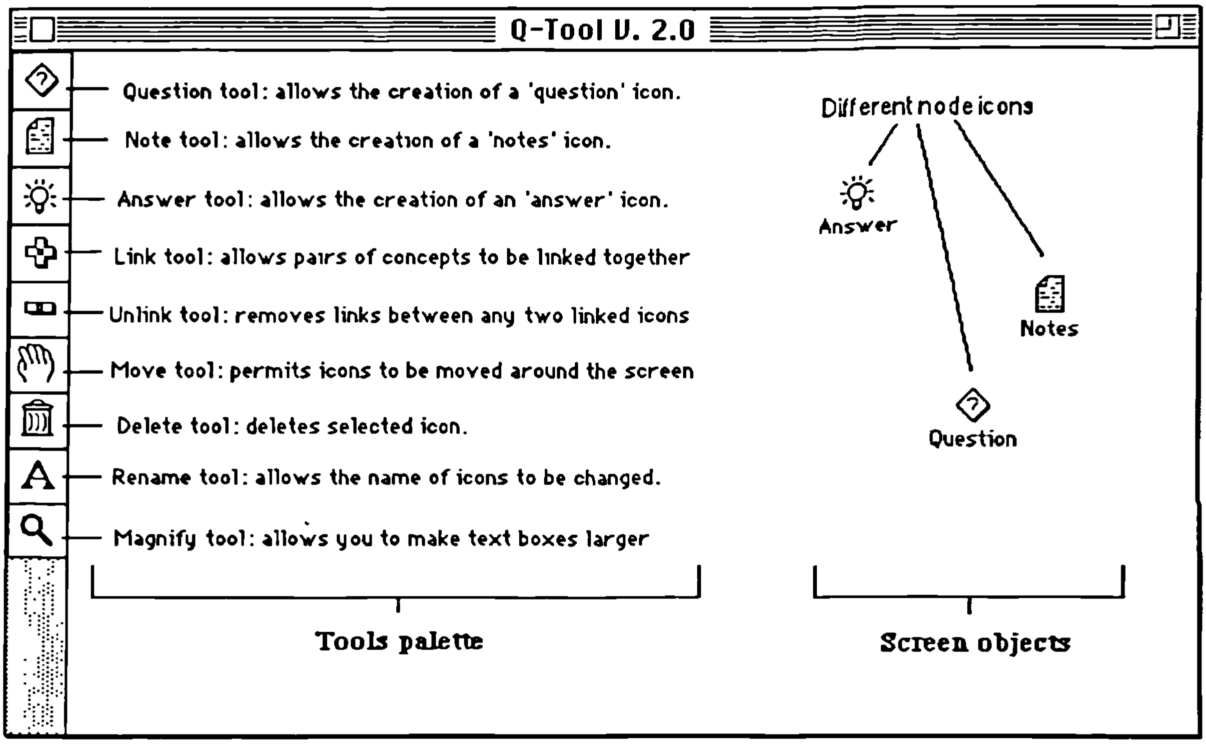


Figure 1: overview of the features of Q-Tool

Select the 'Note' tool from the tools palette by clicking on it with the mouse, the cursor should now adopt the same appearance as the Note icon, if it doesn't try again. Without touching the mouse button, move the mouse so that the cursor is positioned somewhere in the Q-Tool work-space, click the mouse button to create the icon. In response to the dialog box give the icon a name* . When the icon is created try each of the following procedures:

1. Moving the icon - click on the 'hand' icon (fourth from the bottom in on the tools palette), the cursor should become an open hand, position this over the icon, hold down the mouse button, wait until the icon highlights in black, then move the mouse, still holding down the button, the icon should follow the mouse pointer, to release the icon let go of the mouse button.

2. Renaming the icon - click the rename button (the 'A' button, second to bottom in the tools palette), the cursor should change to a letter 'A'. Click this over the icon, it should flash. Give the button another name via the dialog box, click 'OK', the button should now have its new name. **Note** clicking 'Cancel' returns the name to its original.

3. Deleting the icon - click at the 'Dustbin' icon (second from the bottom on the tools palette), click this over the icon to delete it, respond to the dialog box by choosing 'Cancel' to cancel the operation (or else the icon will be lost, if this happens create a new one as before).

4. Show and edit the text box - With no other tools active, click on the icon, a box 'pops up' next to it. Type some text into the text box then close the text box either by hitting the enter key on the keyboard (extreme right), or by clicking over the icon itself.

5. Making the text box larger - open up a text box, click on the magnifying glass icon, click this over the open text box. This will give you a larger text box that makes reading and typing easier. Hide this text box by clicking on the 'OK' button, or press <ENTER> whilst the cursor is in the text box.

Note - When the text box is open, the corresponding icon cannot be moved, always close the text box before attempting to move.

N.B. If you mistakenly choose a tool, you can cancel it by moving the cursor to the tools palette and clicking the mouse button.

Linking icons together

Icons of all different types (see above) can be linked together, and these links can be named the following exercise shows you how to link two icons together.

Create another 'Note' icon as before, drag it using the 'Move' tool so that it is some distance from the first icon that you have created. Click on the 'Link tool' (the cross shaped icon), the cursor should change to a cross shape. Position the cursor over one of the icons and click the mouse button once, the icon should flash in acknowledgement, move the cursor so it is over the other icon and click once again. A dialog box will now ask you to name this link (the default is

* Note: when giving icons names, two rules of thumb apply in all cases 1. the shorter the better, names should be long enough to be identifiable and meaningful, but not so long as they clutter up the screen (12 characters including spaces is a good upper limit); 2. give each icon a unique name where appropriate so to avoid confusing it with others.

'untitled') type a name in, and select 'OK', the icons should now be linked together.

Re-naming a link

Renaming a link is the same as renaming an icon above.

Select the 'Rename' icon from the tools palette, the cursor should change to a capital letter 'A'. Click on the name of the link that you made previously (this may be a bit tricky if the name is short.)

Moving and deleting links

First of all note that the links are flexible, moving a linked icon results in the appropriate links re-aligning themselves.

Drag one of the icons away from the end of the link using the 'Move' tool as before, note that the link(s) move accordingly.

Select the unlink tool (fifth from the top in the tools palette), then click over the tow icons that are joined by the link these should flash accordingly,. the link should then disappear.

The two buttons in the tools palette that you have not yet used are the 'Answer' button that looks like a light-bulb, and the 'Question' icon in the form of a letter 'Q' (see diagram). These operate in exactly the same way as the 'Note' icon that you've just created, apart from the having a different appearance, the reason for them having different appearances will be explained later.

Using Q-Tool

Step 1: formulating questions

Question icons are designed to allow you to type in questions that you feel need answering, and can be used to remind you of what you should be looking for whilst browsing the material (see Figure 2)

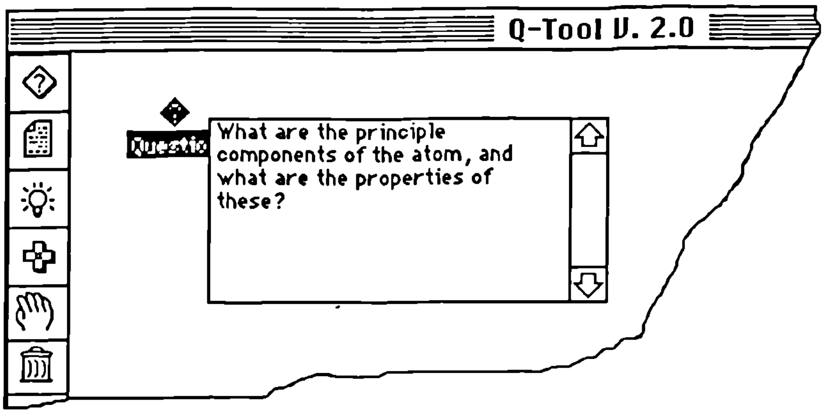


Figure 2: the top level question.

In Figure 2 a question has been formulated that relates to what the learner is primarily interested in - the components of the atom, this can be referred to in order to stop the leaner from digressing too far into irrelevant material.

At this point the Q-Tool work-space contain 1 icon, a question icon, the purpose of this is to allow you to type in a question to help you to keep to the subject in hand and not deviate too far off course when reading the material.

In the above example the question posed was before the material was looked at, just a cursory glance at the material, for example looking at topic headings can lead to insight into the way that the material is structured within the system and hence to more specific and tractable questions. An example of this is show in Figure 3

In Figure 3 the learner has looked at the way that the material is structured and formulated a more specific question, answering this question can be seen as a sub-goal to the original question. The learner has split the question into more than one sub-component (another sub-component of the top level question may be "What are the properties of the atomic components")

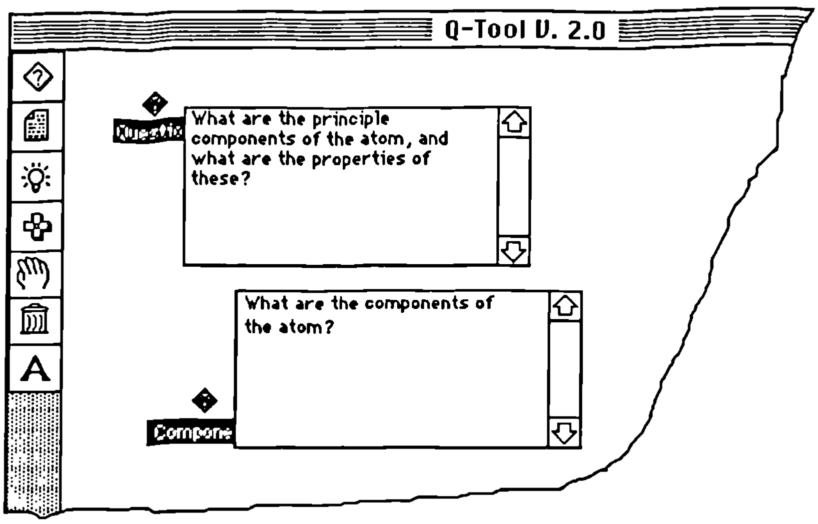


Figure 3: a second order question or sub-goal (components).

Step 2: selecting relevant material

Once the learner has decided on some broad questions to answer, these can be used to guide the search as an aid to decide which material is relevant. Note icons (see Figure 1) can be used to represent key domain concepts, and detailed notes can be typed into the text box of this icon. Notes icons then are designed to be used as ways of representing the material contained within the system unlike the question icons that are used as an aid to the selection of appropriate material. In Figure 4 below it can be seen that a notes icon has been used to provide a brief summary of the properties of the electron, thus fitting in part of the jigsaw set up in the top level question (see Figure 2). Many different notes icons may be used, the idea being that the learner creates as many as they need to cover the relevant material.

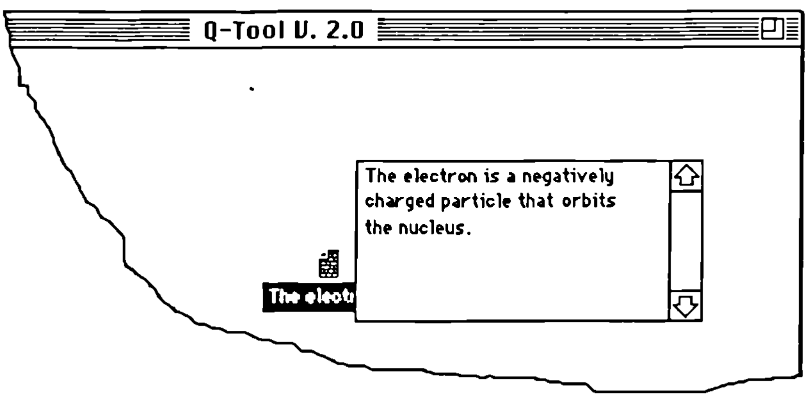


Figure 4: a brief note on the electron in a 'note' icon.

Create a 'Notes' icon (same as creating a question icon only use the notes button). Move it (using the move hand) so it is some distance from the single question icon that should still be present. Open up the text box, type some text into it (nonsense will do at this point), close the text box using <Enter-key> or by selecting the icon.

Step 3: organising the material

Once the learner has collected all the material that appears to be relevant to the study goal as referred to in the top level question, the process of organising the notes and questions can begin. The purpose of this is two-fold, firstly to produce an overview of the various inter-relationships of the material in the domain, and secondly in order to see if the notes adequately answer the top level question and hence realise the study goal. There are two parts to the process of organising the material, structuring and question answering.

Structuring the material

Structuring involves linking together the 'notes' icons to form a network that depicts the way that the various concepts relate to one another.

Figure 5 shows a simple example of a concept map in the domain of introductory particle physics, the way in which the various components of the atom relate to each other can be seen.

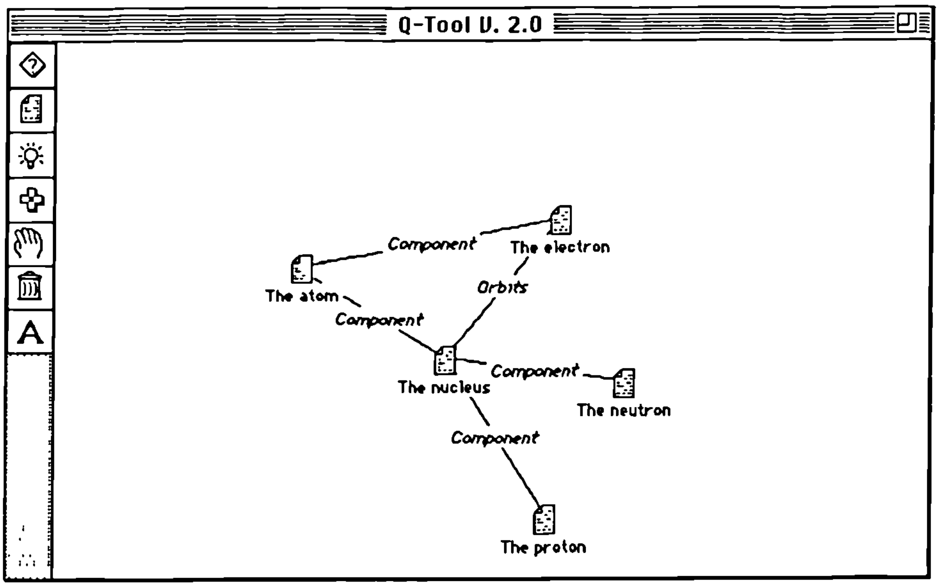


Figure 5: organising notes based on structure of domain concepts.

Question answering

In addition to allowing the learner to organise their notes by graphically representing the relationships between concepts, Q-Tool can also be to aid the learning process by ensuring that the objectives (i.e. the study goals) are fully addressed, this involves the use of 'answer' icons. 'Answer' icons bridge the gap between the questions that were generated in step 1 and the notes/icons that were generated in step 2.

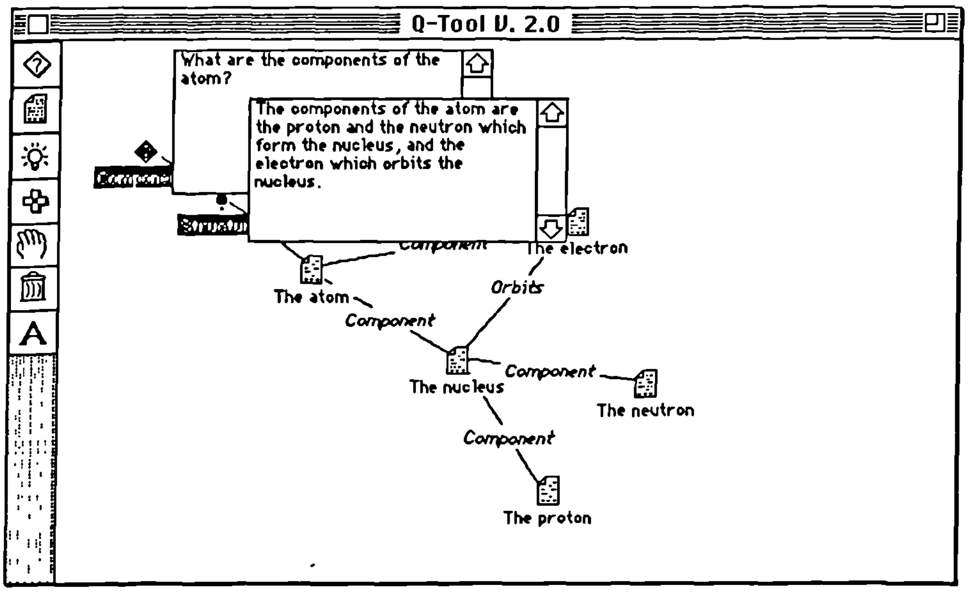


Figure 6: answering the 'top level' question based on concept map made.

Figure 6 show that the note in the text box of the 'answer' icon entitled 'Structure' summarises the network to its left in such a way as to answer the sub-goal question relating to the components of the atom (see Figure 3). The learner is therefore forced by the nature of the task to ensure that they have enough information to answer the questions that they formulated in step 1, and in attempting to answer the questions directs the search for relevant material, forces them to think about the relevance of material and gets them to process the material in a more active way.

Select 'The Atom' by clicking on the open window, then return to the contents page an wait for the next set of instructions...

Practice session

In the following instructions you will find out some information about the atom using both the atom hypertext system for access of information and Q-Tool in order to make notes on the material that you have found. You will do this by following the instructions below.

Study goal

Find out the properties of the alpha particle and the various ways in which they are measured.

This session involves you accessing material that is relevant to your study goal and making notes on them..

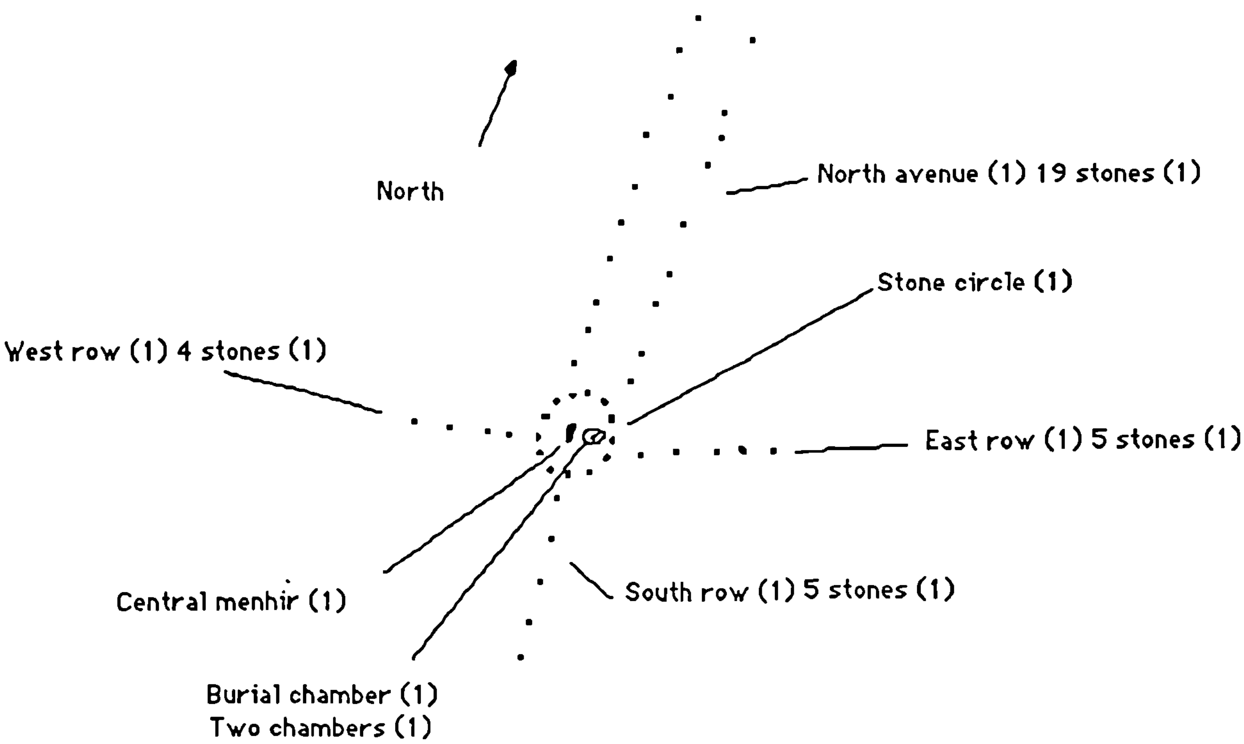
If it is not already active, click on the 'Atom' window to make it so, you should still be on the 'Contents' screen. Access any material that you feel is relevant to your study goal, make notes on any material that seems relevant *using the note facility in the Q-Tool window.* When you fell that you have covered enough information to adequately address the goal, this session is at an end.

Questions for session 2

The following questions relate to the material that you have covered in the system although some of the questions will relate to material from several screens, if you feel that you didn't cover the material that relates to a question, have a think, it may be one of these questions. If you guess the answer to a question (educated or otherwise), or answer from background knowledge (i.e.. information that you didn't get from the system), then note this after the question. **[Answers and marks are given in italics]**

Answer in as much detail as you can.

1. Draw as accurately as you can the layout of the Callanish main site, show on your diagram the orientation of the site to North.



12 marks in total, see diagram

2. What comprises the feature called the Callanish complex?

Three stone rows (1), North avenue (1), Stone circle (1), burial chamber (1), cnoc an tursa (1), ceann hulavig (1), cnoc cul a chleit (1). 7 marks in total.

3. What is the height and weight of the central Menhir?

15.6 feet (4.75 meters) tall; 5 tonnes. (2 marks).

4. Who built the stone monument at Callanish?

Iron or bronze age people (1 mark).

5. Approximately when was Callanish built?

Approx. 1500 BC (1 mark)

6. How has dowsing been utilised in the exploration of stone circles?

Mystical connections with ley-lines. (1)

7. What is the diameter of the stone circle?

11-13 metres (2)

8. What astronomical alignments are there with:

a. The central menhir?

Solar alignment with cnoc an tursa points north, also used as clock. (2)

b. The north avenue?

Aligns with Clisham to show southern maximum (2)

9. What other alignments are there in the main site?

North avenue and capella (north in the old days) (2)
Ceann hulavig to main sight, midsummer sunrise (summer solstice) (2)

10. Where does the name "Callanish" come from?
Kjallari = "cellar", Ness = Headland both from the Norse (2)

11. Why wasn't the pole star the pole star when Callanish was built?
Pole star was not north this was served by the star capella. (2).

12. Of what type of rock is Callanish, and where was it obtained?

Lewissian gneiss from Loch Baravat (2).

13. What makes us think that the so-called burial chamber served this purpose?
Contained human remains (1) similar structure to other burial chambers (2).

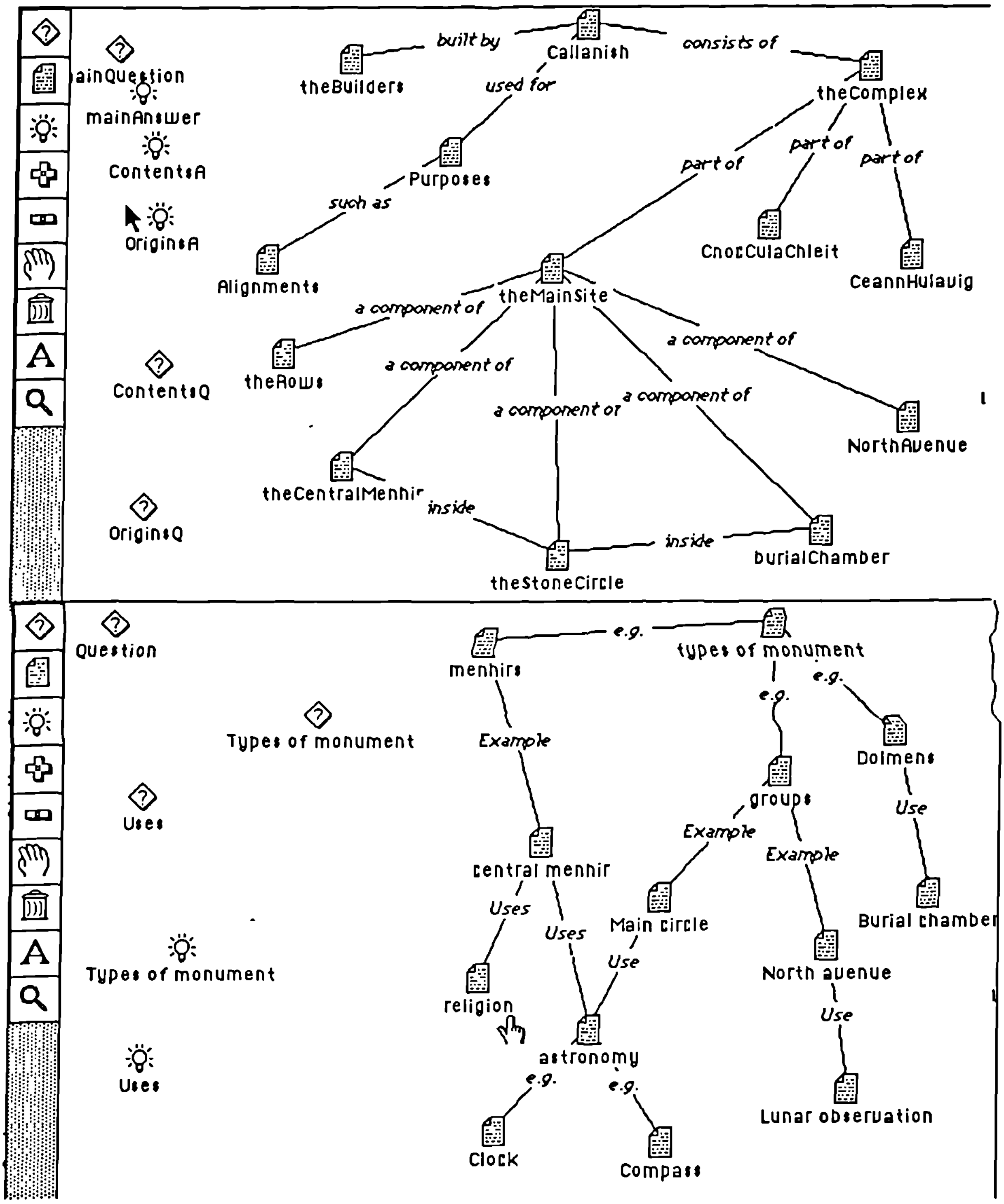
14. What purposes have been put forward to explain the existence of the central Menhir?
Astronomical alignments, phallic symbolism. (2).

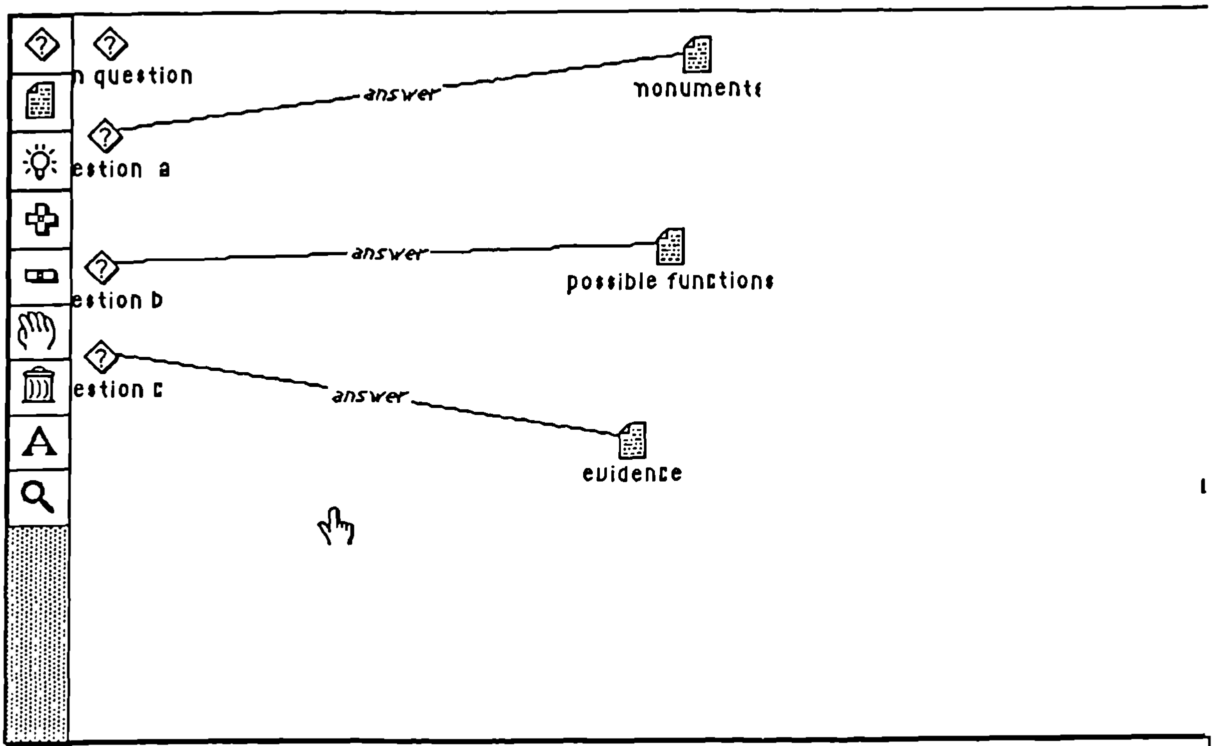
15. What is a dolmen?
Stone structure consisting of uprights and a flat roof (like a table) (1).

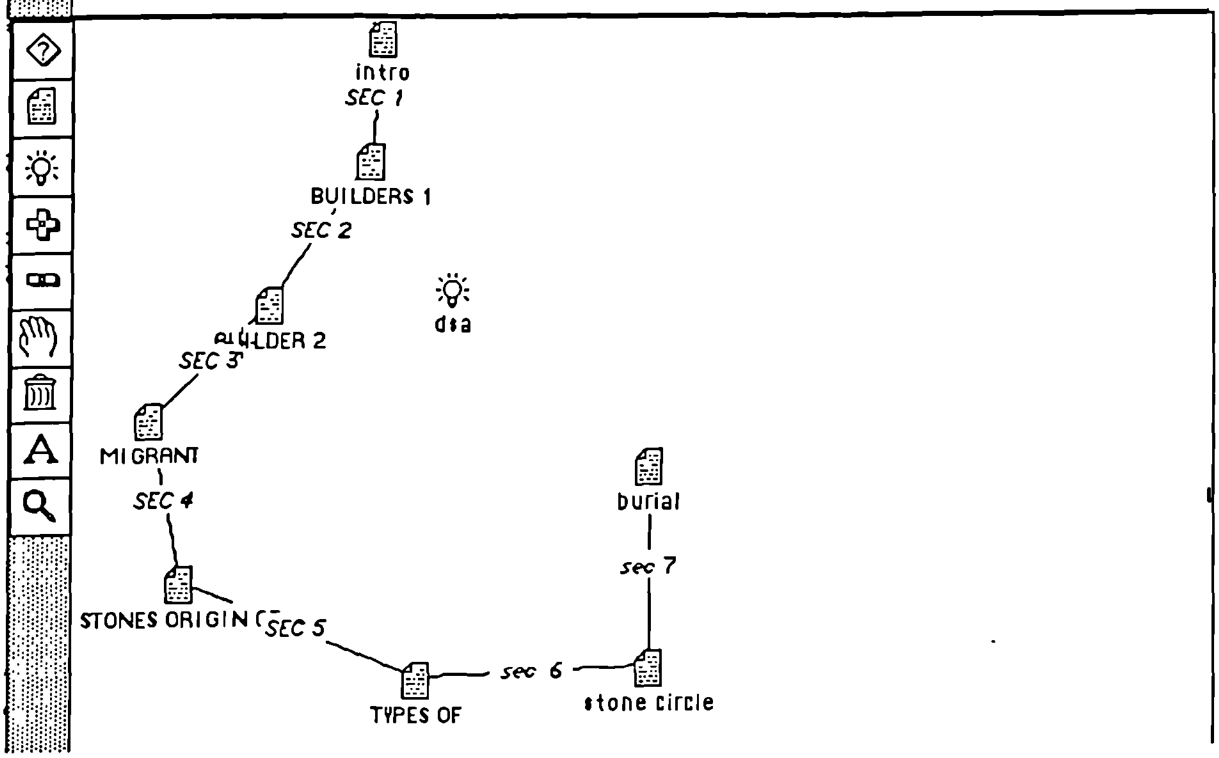
16. What role did the druids play in the history of stone circles such as Callanish?
None (1).

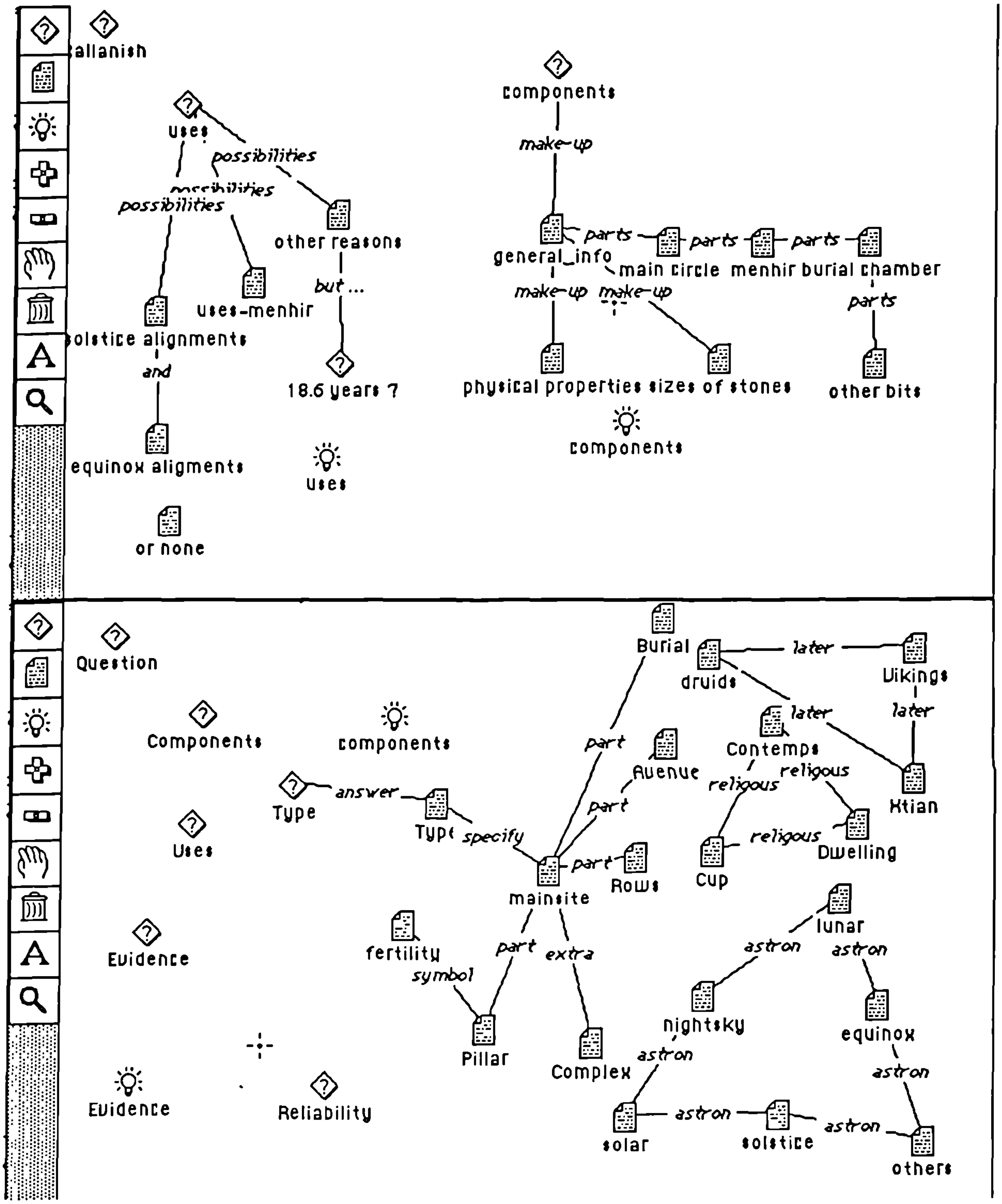
KNOWLEDGE MAPS

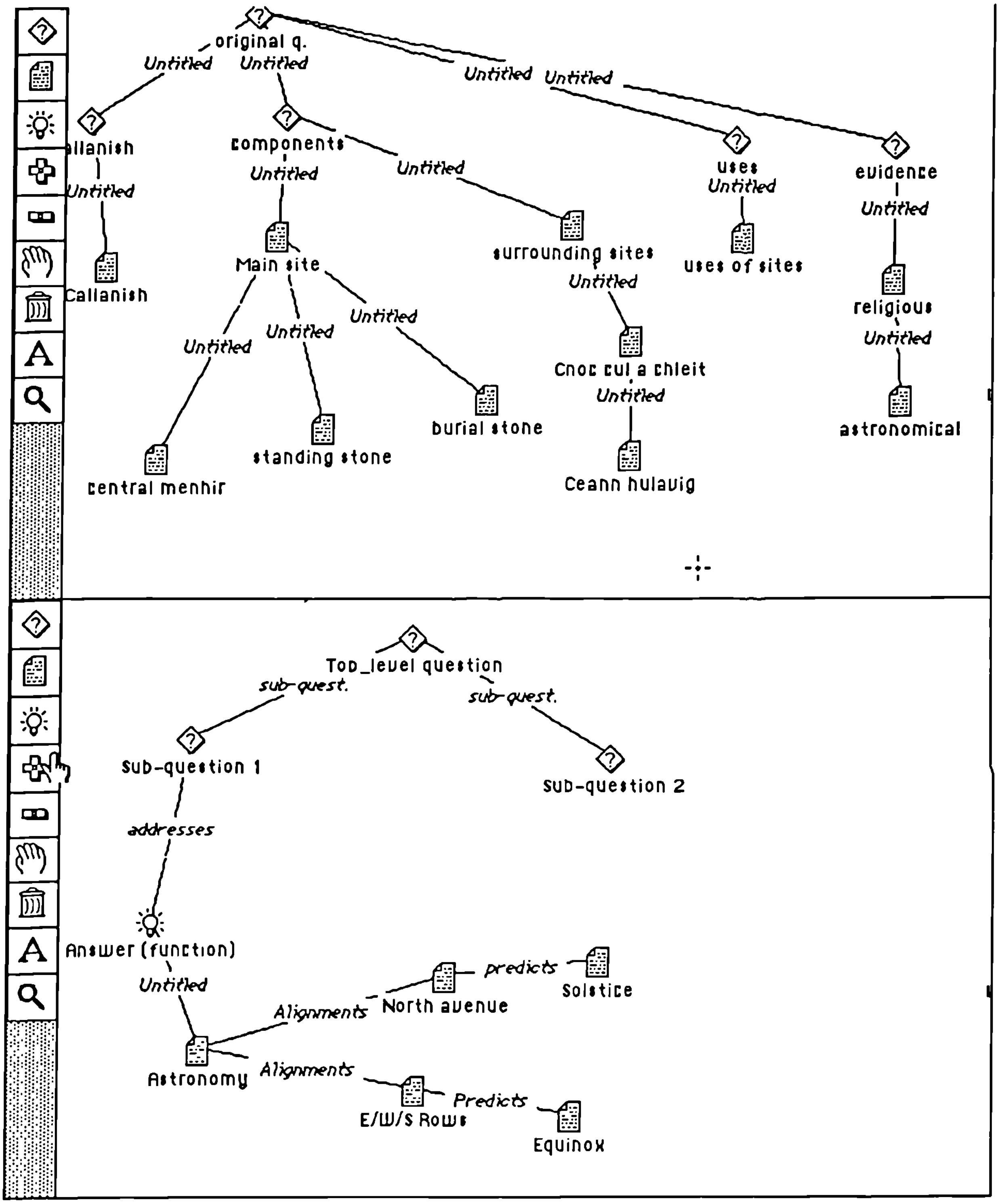
Maps from augmented knowledge mapping tools



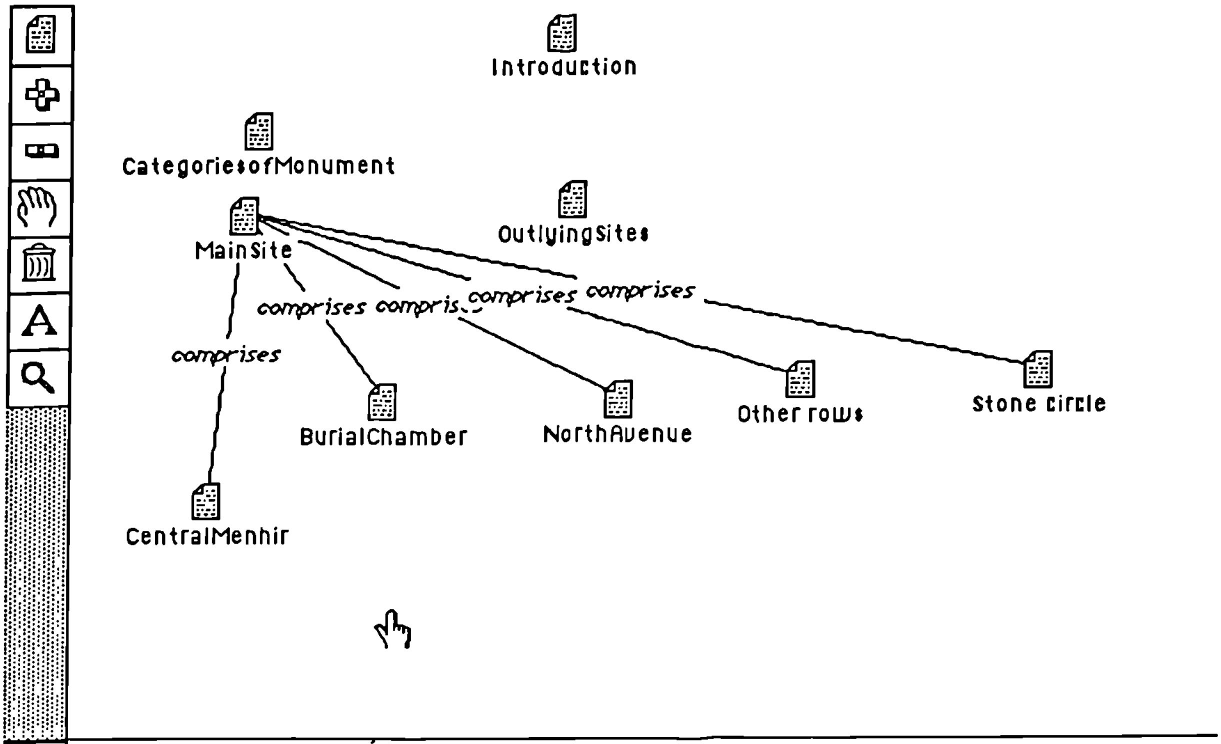

question
answer
nonumente
estion a
answer
possible functions
estion b
estion c
answer
evidence

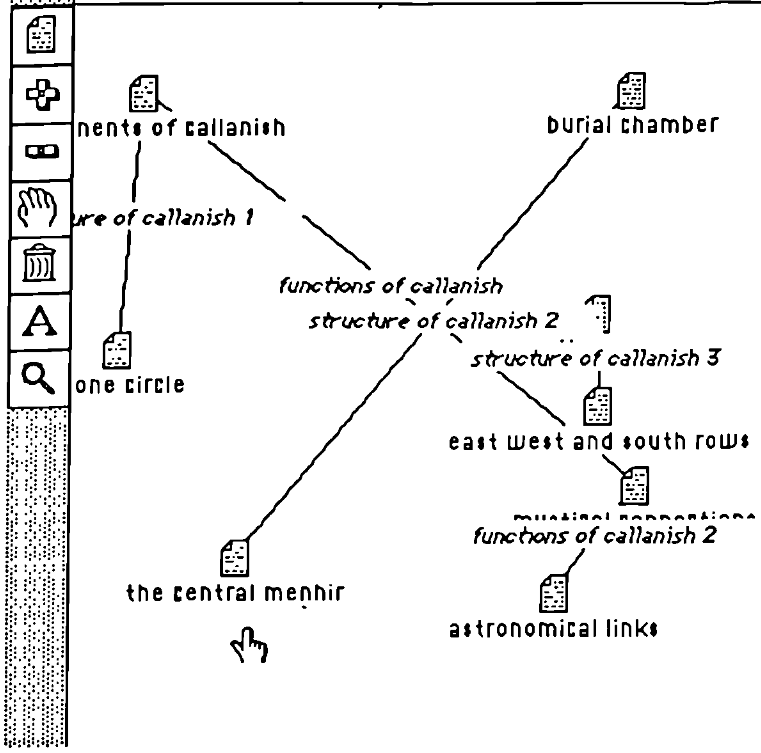

intro
SEC 1
BUILDERS 1
SEC 2
BUILDER 2
SEC 3
dsa
MIGRANT
SEC 4
burial
sec 7
STONES ORIGIN
SEC 5
sec 6
TYPES OF
stone circle

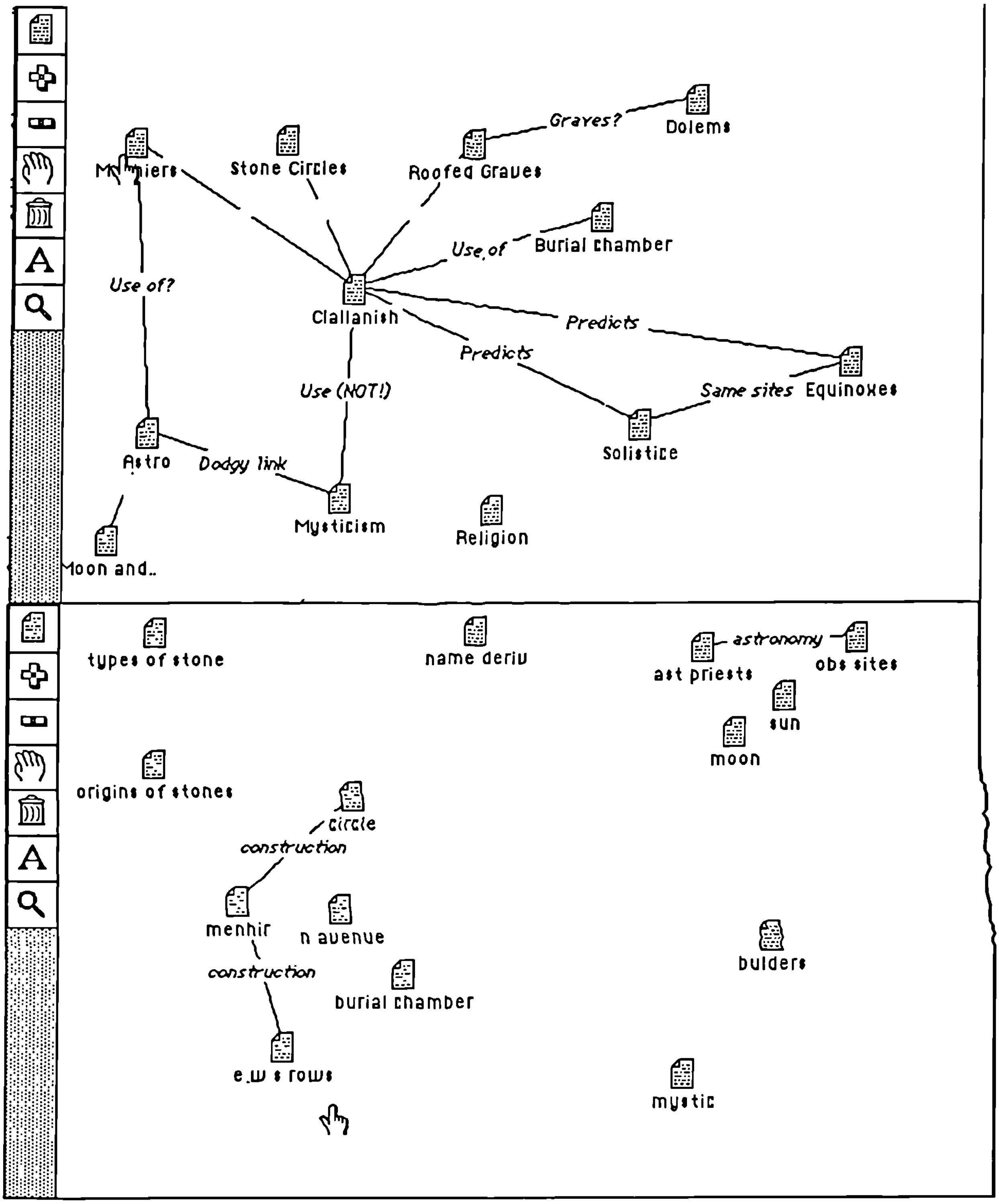

allanish
uses
possibilities
possibilities
other reasons
but...
uses-menhir
olstice alignments
and
equinox aligments
18.6 years ?
uses
or none
components
make-up
general_info
parts
main circle
menhir
burial chamber
make-up
physical properties
sizes of stones
other bits
components
Question
Components
components
Type
answer
Typ
specify
Uses
Evidence
Evidence
Reliability
Burial
druids
later
Vikings
later
Contemps
Xtian
Avenue
part
religous
Cup
Dwelling
mainsite
Rows
fertility
symbol
extra
Pillar
Complex
lunar
astron
nightsky
equinox
solar
solstice
others

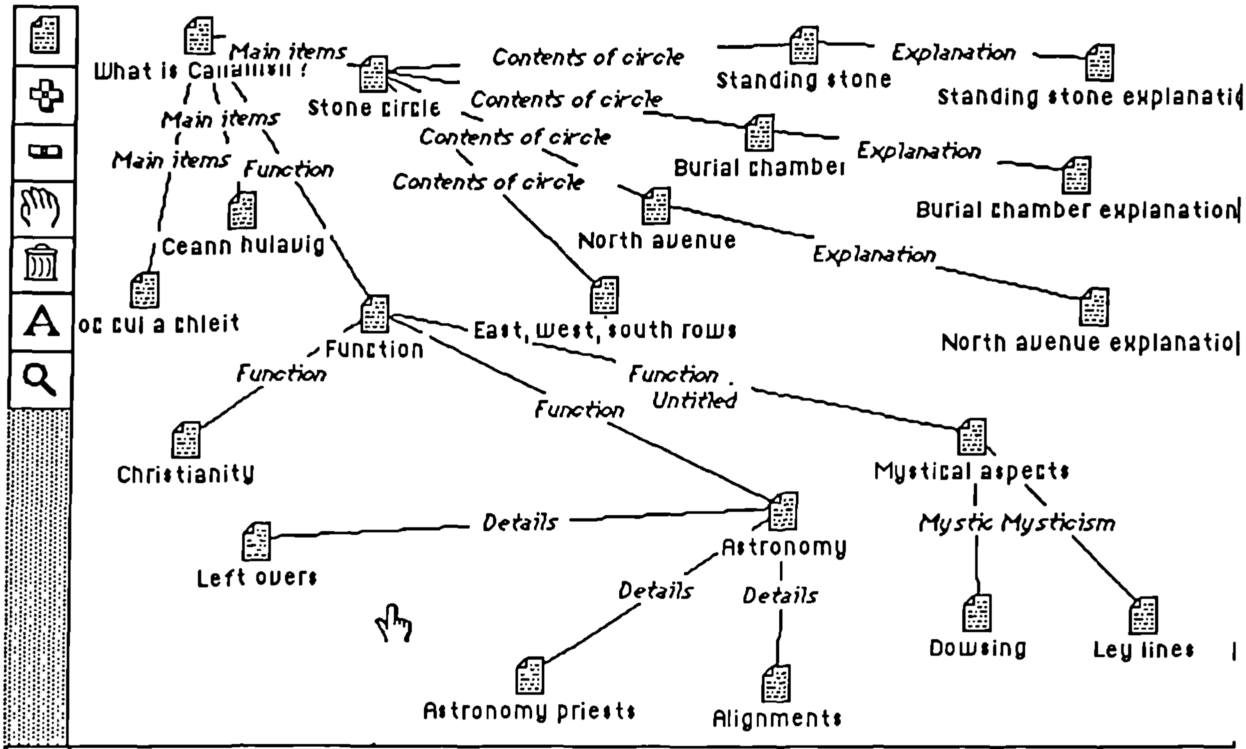


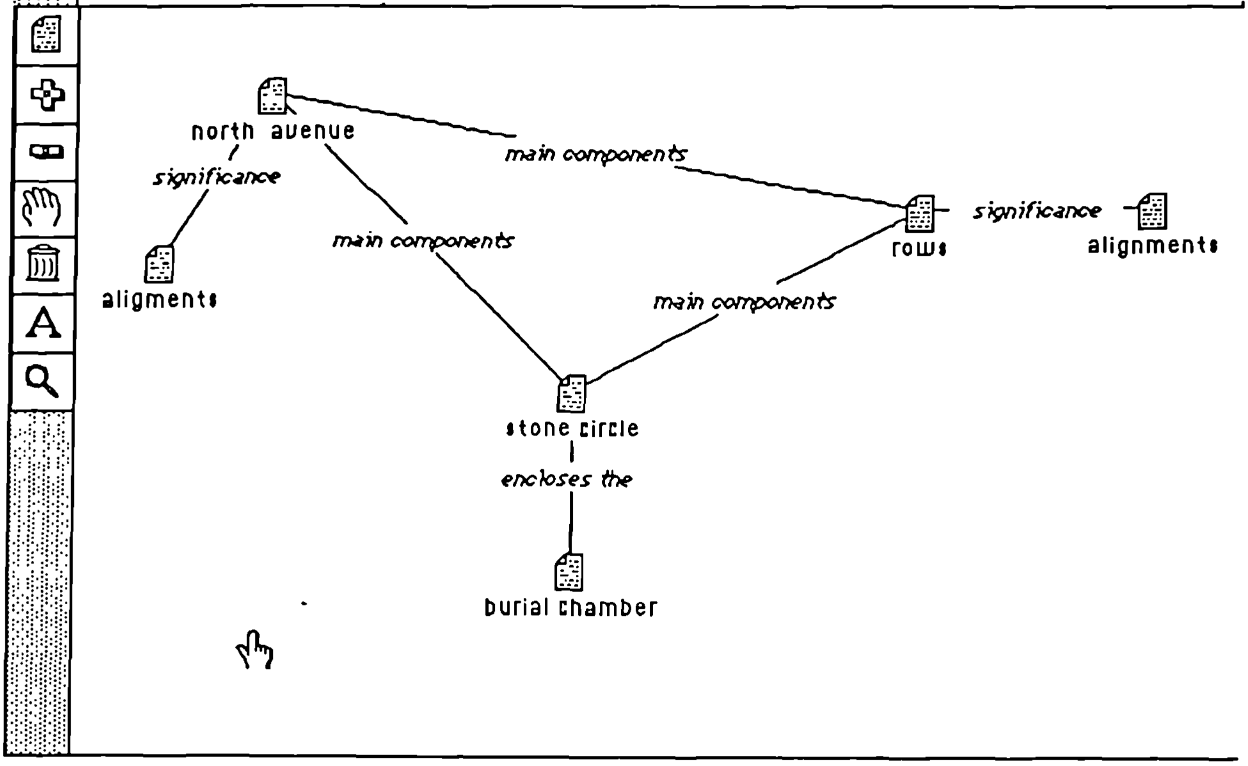
Maps from knowledge mapping tools

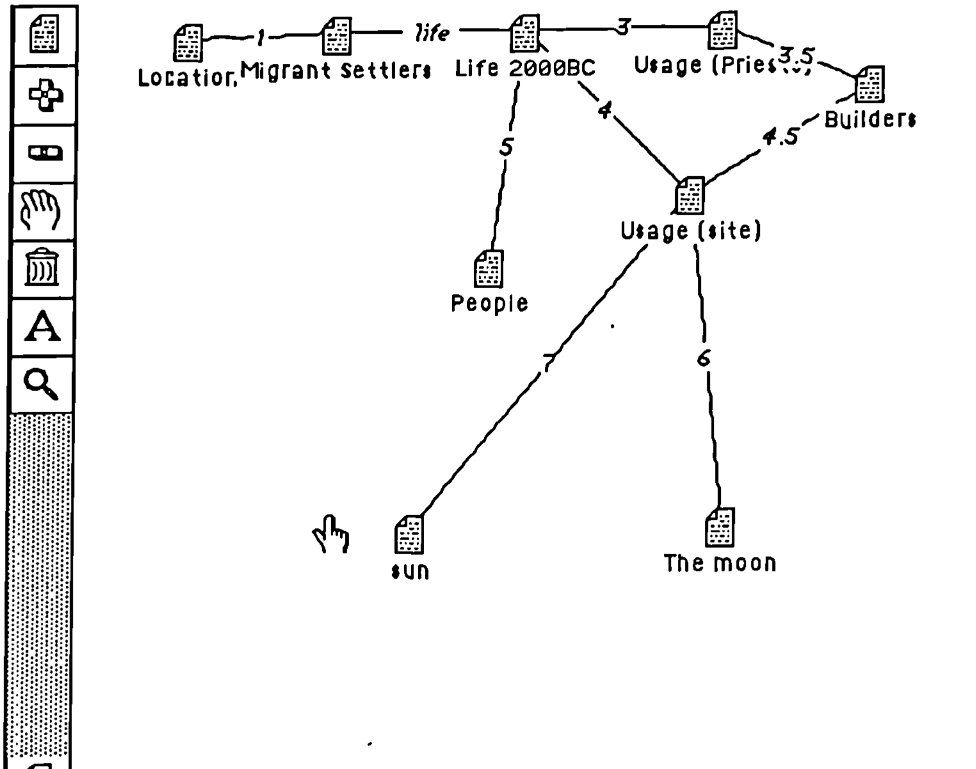

Introduction
CategoriesofMonument
OutlyingSites
MainSite
comprises
comprises
compris
comprises
comprises
BurialChamber
NorthAvenue
Other rows
Stone circle
CentralMenhir

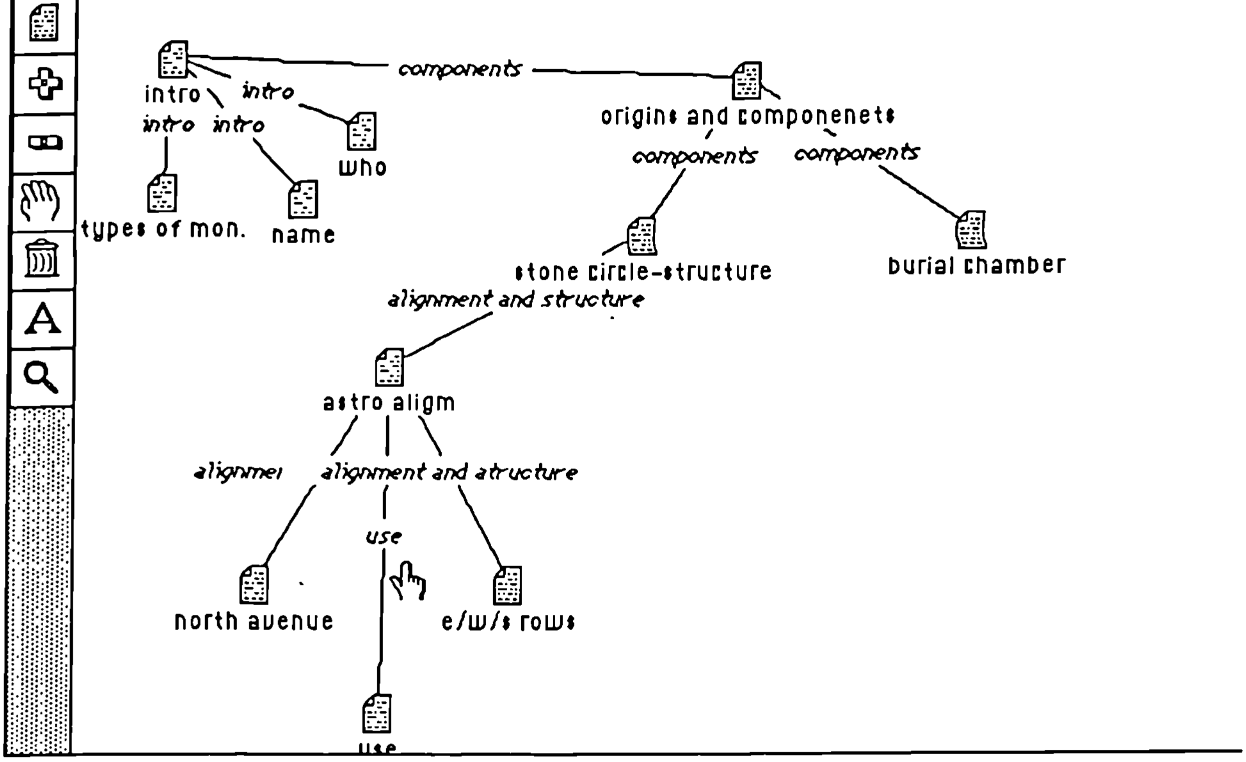

nents of callanish
burial chamber
ure of callanish 1
functions of callanish
structure of callanish 2
structure of callanish 3
one circle
east west and south rows
functions of callanish 2
the central menhir
astronomical links


Stone Circles
Roofed Graves
Graves?
Dolems
Use of
Burial chamber
Use of?
Callanish
Predicts
Predicts
Same sites
Equinoxes
Use (NOT!)
Solistice
Astro
Dodgy link
Mysticism
Religion
Moon and..
types of stone
name deriv
ast priests
astronomy
obs sites
sun
moon
origins of stones
circle
construction
menhir
n avenue
construction
burial chamber
e.w s rows
bulders
mystic


What is Callanish ?
Main items
Stone circle
Contents of circle
Standing stone
Explanation
Standing stone explanati
Contents of circle
Burial chamber
Explanation
Burial chamber explanation
Main items
Main items
Function
Contents of circle
Contents of circle
North avenue
Explanation
North avenue explanatio
Ceann hulavig
oc cul a chleit
East, west, south rows
Function
Function
Function
Untitled
Function
Christianity
Mystical aspects
Mystic Mysticism
Details
Left overs
Astronomy
Details
Details
Dowsing
Ley lines
Astronomy priests
Alignments


north avenue
significance
aligments
main components
main components
rows
significance
alignments
main components
stone circle
encloses the
burial chamber


Location
1
Migrant Settlers
life
Life 2000BC
3
Usage (Pries
3.5
Builders
4
4.5
5
Usage (site)
People
7
6
sun
The moon


intro
intro
intro
intro
components
origins and componenets
who
types of mon.
name
components
components
stone circle-structure
burial chamber
alignment and structure
astro aligm
alignment and atructure
use
north avenue
e/w/s rows

Appendix 3: instructions and marking schemes for Chapter 11

INSTRUCTIONS FOR USING AKA

INTRODUCTION

AKA is a graphically-based tool for helping you to represent argument. It does this by allowing you to construct argumentation networks which are built from a small number of elements put together in accordance with particular syntactic rules. AKA therefore has a language associated with it, albeit a very restricted one.

Central to AKA are the different node types and permitted relationships, these are outlined below together with some rationale for their use.

A *theory* is a coherent set of claims about the world, put together in a systematic way. Theories are normally backed up by a lot of evidence, or used to explain certain phenomena. For example Einstein's relativity is a good example of a theory.

A *hypothesis* is a specific claim about the world that has been specifically designed to be testable empirically, via experiments of observations.

Claim This is some assertion about a phenomenon that is held by a person, or a set of people. Claims may be accepted or rejected for a number of reasons, experimental or observational evidence may support of refute claims, additionally other claims can support or contradict claims.

Evidence As has been alluded, evidence is information that can *support* or *contradict* some assertion such as a hypothesis, theory or claim. Evidence can be experimental, or observational; there is no distinction made in AKA between the two.

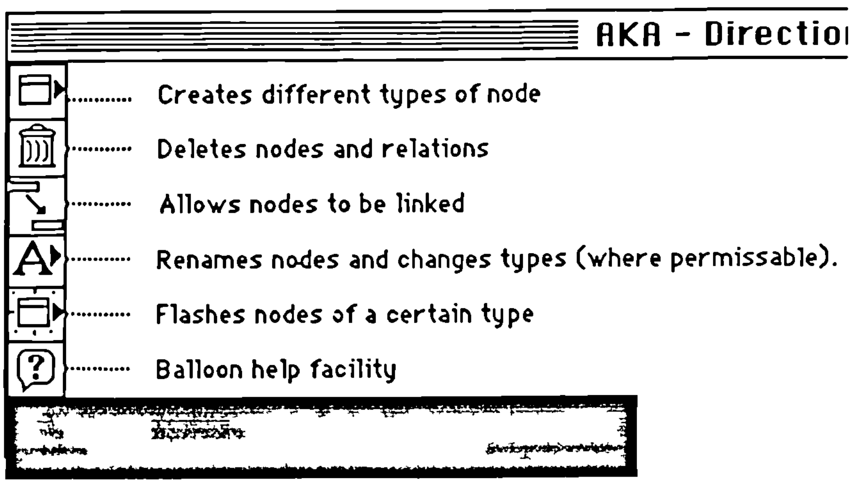
Critiques Often statements that cast doubt on the validity of claims and/or evidence are made that are not strictly speaking pieces of evidence themselves. Such statements may criticise experimental methodology, or some philosophical standpoint embodied in a claim. In order to represent this AKA has *critique* nodes that can be used to represent such objections.

Assumptions Often theories claims and evidence make certain assumptions in order for them to be true. For example the philosophical assumption that human intelligence can be simulated on a computer assumes that computers and the brain are functionally similar in some way because they are both symbol processors. Assumptions are really arguments in their own right, consisting of claims supported by evidence, and perhaps based on assumptions of their own. However in many arguments we may be prepared to accept certain assumptions on face value, without going into a systematic analysis of their make up, but still be aware that they exist and play a role in the argument.

A *phenomenon* is some observation that in the world that needs to be explained. For example auditory hallucinations is a phenomena (also a symptom) of schizophrenia. Claims and theories are often created to explain specific phenomena.

Questions, these generally define the purpose of the argument in terms of its content: what should and, crucially, what should *not* be included in the argument. A question asking "What is Marx's economic theory?" will require not only an exposition of Marxist theory, but also perhaps a discussion of how Marx flew in the face of previous interpretations of economics. Often question will need sub-questions; for example in the above example a sub-question; "What was the prevailing economic theory" will need to be addressed before the top level question can be addressed adequately.

Sometimes you may find that you need to use some other form of node, the *WildCard* option allows you to do this. WildCard nodes can have any type that you wish to give them, and can have any relationship with other nodes, they are denoted by *italicised* text to distinguish them from other nodes.



Overview of the different types of buttons on the tools palette.

Creating nodes

Nodes are created by using the topmost button on the tools palette, selecting this button brings up a pop-up menu that lists the different types of nodes that you can create, selecting one of these options can allow you to create an icon of the corresponding type.

Hold the mouse down over the create node button, notice the menu that pops up. Still holding the mouse button down drag it over the menu options until the 'Claim' option is highlighted in black, then release the mouse button, notice that the pointer changes to a small rectangle. Move the pointer so that it is somewhere in the work-space. Click the mouse button once. Respond to the dialogue box by typing in a name (anything) and clicking on the "OK" button with the mouse. After a few seconds a claim node should be created of the type you selected, with the name you gave it, in the place on the screen where you clicked the mouse.

Then create some more nodes as before.

Click over the "create argument" button, select "Evidence" from the pop-up menu; create a node giving it a name as before. Then create another "Evidence" node.

You should now have three nodes a claim and two evidence nodes.

Moving nodes

Nodes can be moved around the workspace, by dragging them with the mouse.

Move the mouse pointer so that it is over one of the nodes that you created. Notice that the mouse pointer changes to an open hand. Whilst the pointer is over the node click the mouse button and hold it down, the pointer should then change to a closed hand. Still keeping the mouse button held down move the mouse around, notice that an outline of the node is dragged around the screen, place this rectangle somewhere in the workspace and release the mouse button, the node should then be moved to this place.

Linking nodes together

The nodes that you just created can be linked together in order to represent arguments. For example imagine that the claim that you created made some assertion about the acquisition of language, such as "Language constrains thought", we may seek evidence in order to decide whether this assertion is plausible, relevant evidence may either support of contradict this position.

Suppose that we find a tribe of people who only have two colour names, red and green, and that they see all other colours as shades of red of green, such that blue is dark green and black is dark red. We may put this forward as evidence in support of the claim above. This can be represented by linking and evidence node to the claim node by the relation "supports".

Click over the link button (third from the top in the tools palette). Hold the mouse button down over the "Evidence" node, notice that the cursor changes to an arrowed cross, and drag the mouse, still holding the mouse-button down, until the pointer is over the "Claim" node, then release the mouse button. The system will ask you to choose the type of relationship that you want between these two nodes, choose 'supports', then select 'OK'. After a few seconds a link will be drawn between the two nodes with the relationship that you specified between them, and an arrow showing the direction of the relationship.

Note that the direction in which you drag the mouse when linking is vitally important, the arrow will always point in the direction that you drag.

Checking for directionality

If the networks get very tangled you may find that it is difficult to determine the directionality of a link purely from the arrows on the lines, to remedy this you can check the direction by double-clicking over a link name with the mouse pointer, this causes the linked objects to flash in the direction of the link.

Place the mouse pointer over the link name that connects the evidence and claim nodes, and click the mouse button twice in rapid succession. The two linked nodes should flash in the direction of the link. Demonstrating that the Evidence either supports or contradicts the Claim - not the other way round.

Restrictions placed on linking

Because AKA is designed to help you represent argument, there are restrictions placed on what nodes can be linked together and the types of relations that can exist between nodes. Thus in this system evidence can only support or contradict claims, critiques and assumptions, it cannot say anything about other evidence.

Balloon help can be of use here, with balloon help switched on moving the mouse pointer over any of the nodes will give you information about what any of the nodes can be linked to, with the relations that can hold.

Click over the balloon help button (the small speech bubble in the tools palette). The icon should change to a speech bubble with a cross showing that it is active. Place the mouse pointer over any of the nodes on the workspace a bubble should appear informing you what the node can be linked to. When you have finished, turn balloon help off by clicking over the button again.

Changing the name and type of nodes

The name of any node can be changed at any time, however there are limitations on changing node types. A *type* is a category of node that denotes the role that the information plays in the network, for example 'evidence'; a *name* is an identifier to some information, for example 'my evidence' (see diagram below). Since there are restrictions placed on the relationships that nodes can have with each other, the types of nodes can only be changed to other types that would not contravene the linking rules. Thus in the diagram below the type of the evidence node 'Evidence 1' could only be changed to a type that can be linked to a claim using the 'supports' relation; in this case it could be changed to another claim node, because a claim can support another claim. Note that WildCard nodes (italicised text) can always have their types changed.

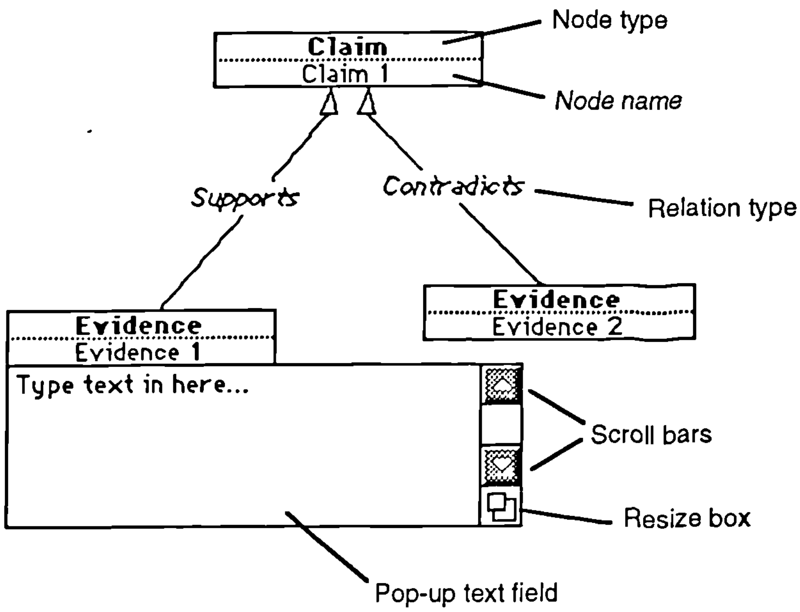


Diagram showing the some of the features of a network.

Try this, choose the 'Change Type' option via the 'Rename button', and click on the evidence node that you created, assuming that it is still linked to the claim node, the system should permit you to change this to a claim. Cancel the dialog box and then try to rename the claim in the same way as before. Notice that you cannot change the type of this at all since evidence cannot support evidence in the scheme.

Nodes that are not linked to other nodes can have their type changed to any other type since this cannot contravene any of the rules of the system. Thus if you wish to change the type of a node you can do it by deleting its links and changing its type.

Select the change type option from the menu as before. This time click over the unlinked Evidence node. Notice that because this is unlinked you can its type to any other type available.

Changing the name of a node is similar to the above.

Select "Change name" menu option from the rename button. Click over one of the nodes that you have, the system should prompt you for a name. Enter a new name into the dialog box and click "OK"; the node should now have a new name.

ADDING STRENGTH TO LINKS

All links are created of equal strength, sometimes you may wish to show that a link is particularly strong or weak. You can choose how strong a link is by selecting the link name with the mouse.

Click over a link name with the mouse and hold the mouse button down (if there are no links, create one). A pop-up menu should appear, Still holding the button down, move the mouse so that the word "Weakly" is highlighted in black, release the mouse button. After a few seconds the link should change in thickness showing that it is a weaker relation than it was before.

The same can be done to indicate stronger relationships, this time by selecting "Strongly" from the menu.

DELETING NODES AND LINKS

Both nodes and links can be deleted in the same way; using the delete tool: the dustbin button on the tools palette.

Click over the delete button with the mouse; notice that the cursor changes to a dustbin icon. Position this over the relation name of the link that you have created, click the mouse button once. The relation name should flash to show that it has been selected. Now select "OK" in response to the dialog box. After a few seconds the link should disappear.

Now select the delete button again. This time click the cursor over one of the nodes. Notice that as before the name flashes to show that it has been selected. This time select the option "Cancel" at the dialog box. This cancels the procedure and no deletion is done selecting "OK" would have resulted in the node being deleted.

DEALING WITH TEXT FIELDS

Each concept node contains a text-field, which are accessed by double-clicking with the mouse.

Hold the mouse-pointer over the node, and click the mouse button twice in quick succession, the text-field should appear just below the node. When a text-field is first opened it puts the text cursor at the end of any text that the field contains, so that you simply need to type to add notes at the end of the existing notes. However if you click anywhere else on the screen (for example to open another field up) then you will need to place the text cursor back in the field, to do this simply position the mouse over the field and click the mouse button, the flashing cursor indicates that you can now type in text.

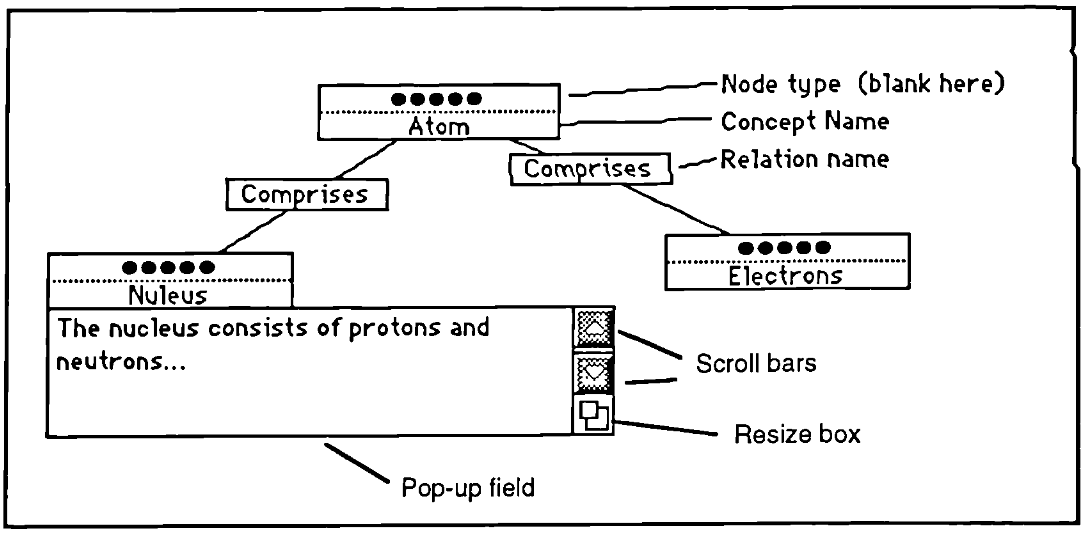
OTHER NODES

Of course, not everything that you may wish to include in your network will be part of an argument; some information may just offer additional information to the reader, and so forth. This is where WildCard nodes really come into their own as they can stand for anything that you want them to, and can be linked to any other node with any name that you wish to give.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR USING K-TOOL

K-Tool is a computer-based tool known as a concept mapping tool, it allows you to represent your knowledge or other information graphically; using K-Tool you can construct networks that represent your current understanding of a particular topic. K-Tool allows you to create networks in which node icons stand for particular domain concepts and links between them represent the relationships in the topic itself.

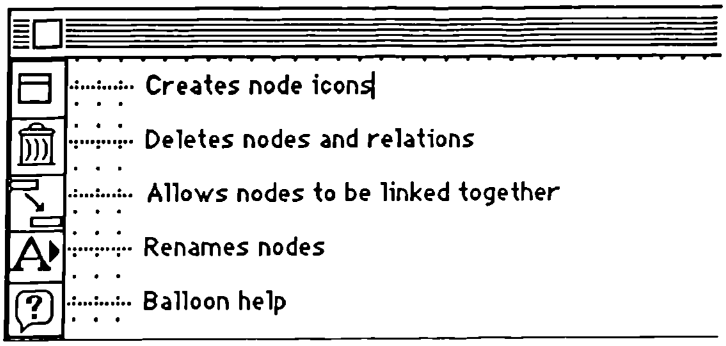
The diagram below show a very simple example of a concept map in the domain of atomic structure. The concept nodes can refer to particular concepts (the atom, the nucleus and the electron) whilst the links denote the relationships between them (electron and neutron both comprise the atom). As you can see concept nodes contain note fields that can be easily accessed to allow you to make notes.



In addition to the hierarchical structural relationships shown above, other relationships may be specified, for example, in the above example, relationships relating to the function and properties of various atomic components may be incorporated in the network.

Creating a concept map: a brief tutorial.

The diagram below show the tools palette which allows you to create a network, some of the operations that you can perform are discussed below.



Creating concept nodes

Nodes are created using the topmost button in the tools palette.

Click on the topmost button with the mouse pointer, notice that the mouse pointer adopts the same appearance as the icon on the button. Position the mouse pointer somewhere in the workspace (the patterned area that makes up most of the K-Tool surface) and click the mouse button to create a concept node. Type a name into the dialog box (anything will do for the time being), and click OK.

You should now have a concept node positioned in the workspace. If the name that you gave was longer than about 15 characters then you may find that not all of the name is visible, don't worry, the node can be expanded (see later). Also notice that the top line of the node contains five bullet points (•••••), this always happens when you first create a node, later you can change this to give your node a type or category if you wish (again see later).

Moving concept nodes

Concept nodes can be moved around the workspace easily.

Position the mouse pointer over the node and hold the mouse button down, wait until the mouse-pointer changes to a hand shape and, still holding the mouse button down move the mouse. Releasing the mouse button deposits the node in the position that you left it. Note: if you move the mouse pointer off the workspace then the node will remain in its original position.

Linking nodes together

Nodes can be linked quite simply by using the link button in the tools palette (third from the top).

First of all create another concept node in the same way as before. When this is done, click over the link button with the mouse, this should highlight black, alternatively hold *down the option key (the key two along to the left of the space bar). Position the mouse-pointer over one of the nodes and hold the mouse button down, drag the mouse pointer from this node (still holding down the mouse button and option key, if you're using this method). Release the mouse when it is within the destination node. Type a name into the dialog box and click OK. After a few seconds the two nodes should be linked with a relation name corresponding to the one that you gave it.*

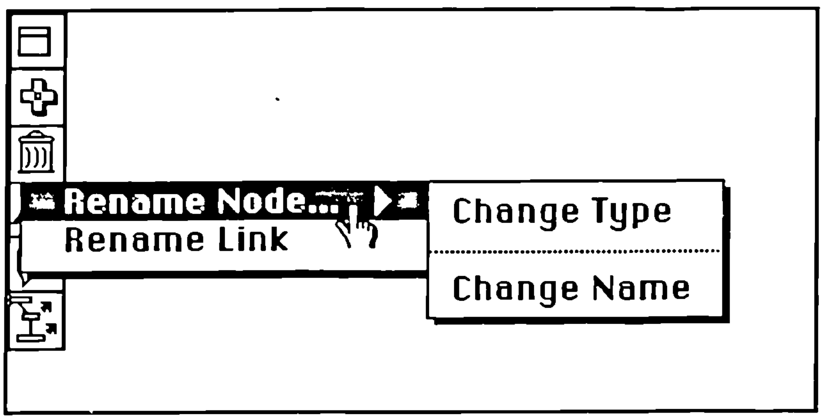
IMPORTANT - if you used the 'link' button to link the two icons together, it remains operational until you switch it off, moving nodes or opening text fields is not possible as long as it is switched on. If you wish to turn linking off, do so by clicking over the button so that it becomes un-highlighted.

Renaming nodes and links

The rename facility allows you to change both the type and name of concept nodes, and the type of links using the rename facility. Names of nodes (the bottom most title in the node box) provide labels for the concept that they denote, whereas types (the top most title, more than likely ••••• at the moment) specify the sort of information contained in the concept, for example the type of information may be a fact, a theory, a piece of evidence, etc..

Changing link and node types and node names is all done in the same way by using the rename facility.

Click over the rename button (the button with the capital letter A on it), and hold the mouse button down. A pop-up menu should appear (see below)



Notice that rename node has a sub-menu , this is because two attributes can be changed, the sub-menu is designed to resemble the way that the titles in the node itself are arranged (i.e. type at the top, dotted line, name at the button). Select the "Rename Link" option by dragging the mouse pointer over it until it highlights and then releasing the mouse button.

The mouse-pointer should now change to a capital 'A'. Click the mouse over the link that you created, and type in a new name in response to the dialog box.

Try this procedure for node names

Changing node types

The type of a node (top line in bold) can also be changed, this time by using the 'Change type' option from the menu.

Select 'Change type' from the menu, then click the mouse-pointer over one of the nodes. A scrolling dialog box should appear containing a list of types, select one of these by clicking over the name with the mouse and then selecting 'OK'. The type of this node should now have changed to the one that you selected.

K-Tool has a number of node-types built in to it, these are listed below with some explanation of what they refer to:

A *theory* is a coherent set of claims about the world, put together in a systematic way. Theories are normally backed up by a lot of evidence, or used to explain certain phenomena. For example Einstein's relativity is a good example of a theory.

A *hypothesis* is a specific claim about the world that has been specifically designed to be testable empirically, via experiments of observations.

Claim This is some assertion about a phenomenon that is held by a person, or a set of people. Claims may be accepted or rejected for a number of reasons, experimental or observational evidence may support of refute claims, additionally other claims can support or contradict claims.

Evidence As has been alluded, evidence is information that can *support* or *contradict* some assertion such as a hypothesis, theory or claim. Evidence can be experimental, or observational; there is no distinction made in AKA between the two.

Critiques Often statements that cast doubt on the validity of claims and/or evidence are made that are not strictly speaking pieces of evidence themselves. Such statements may criticise experimental methodology, or some philosophical standpoint embodied in a claim. In order to represent this AKA has *critique* nodes that can be used to represent such objections.

Assumptions Often theories claims and evidence make certain assumptions in order for them to be true. For example the philosophical assumption that human intelligence can be simulated on a computer assumes that computers and the brain are functionally similar in some way because they are both symbol processors. Assumptions are really arguments in their own right, consisting of claims supported by evidence, and perhaps based on assumptions of their own. However in many arguments we may be prepared to accept certain assumptions on face value, without going into a systematic analysis of their make up, but still be aware that they exist and play a role in the argument.

A *phenomenon* is some observation that in the world that needs to be explained. For example auditory hallucinations is a phenomena (also a symptom) of schizophrenia. Claims and theories are often created to explain specific phenomena.

Questions, these generally define the purpose of the argument in terms of its content: what should and, crucially, what should *not* be included in the argument. A question asking "What is Marx's economic theory?" will require not only an exposition of Marxist theory, but also perhaps a discussion of how Marx flew in the face of previous interpretations of economics. Often question will need sub-questions; for example in the above example a sub-question; "What was the prevailing economic theory" will need to be addressed before the top level question can be addressed adequately.

You do not need to stick to the types given, you can create your own node type.

Select the 'Change type' option again and click over one of the nodes. This time select "New Type" from the dialog box; type a new type of node into the second dialog box and click 'OK'. Now the node should have the new type.

Note that K-Tool stores the type that you just entered and it appears in the dialog box next time you try to change a type.

ADDING STRENGTH TO LINKS

All links are created of equal strength, sometimes you may wish to show that a link is particularly strong of weak. To do this you can choose how strong a link is by selecting the link name with the mouse.

Click over a link name with the mouse and hold the mouse button down (if there are no links, create one). A pop-up menu should appear, Still holding the button down, move the mouse so that the word "Weakly" is highlighted in black, release the mouse button. After a few seconds the link should change in thickness showing that it is a weaker relation than it was before.

The same can be done to indicate stronger relationships, this time by selecting "Strongly" from the menu.

Deleting screen objects

Both nodes and links can be deleted individually using the "delete object button" (the dustbin icon). Note that deleting a concept node automatically deletes any notes that are in it, it is always worthwhile to check before you delete.

Click on the dustbin button, notice that the cursor changes to a dustbin shape. Click mouse over one of the concept nodes, answer yes to the dialog box. The node should now be deleted, notice that the link between the two nodes deletes also, since it would make no sense to leave an unattached link.

The process of deleting links is the same as for nodes.

Create a new node as before, then link this to the other node in the workspace. Select the delete button as before, click over the name of the link that you just created - this can sometimes be tricky, it works best if you position the 'lid' of the dust-bin mouse-pointer dead centre on the link name box. Answer OK to the dialog box and after a few seconds the link name and the link should be deleted.

Dealing with text-fields

Each concept node contains a text-field, which are accessed by double-clicking with the mouse.

Hold the mouse-pointer over the node, and click the mouse button twice in quick succession, the text-field should appear just below the node. When a text-field is first opened it puts the text cursor at the end of any text that the field contains, so that you simply need to type to add notes at the end of the existing notes. However if you click anywhere else on the screen (for example to open another field up) then you will need to place the text cursor back in the field, to do this simply position the mouse over the field and click the mouse button, the flashing cursor indicates that you can now type in text.

Resizing text-fields

Depending on how many notes you make you may wish to make the text boxes bigger than they are initially, you can do this using the resize box.

Click at the bottom right of the field over the resize box (the icon that looks like two overlapping squares); drag with the mouse button held down, the field should resize itself accordingly.

Scrolling through text

No matter how small the text-field is you can still type up to 32,000 characters into the field and access this text. The text-field is a window on a much larger document, and typing of the bottom of the field causes the window to move down. To move through the text for reading purposes without resizing position the mouse on the up and down arrows on the right of the field and hold the mouse button down until the text you are interesting scrolls past. Note that the up and down arrows are only active when the text is larger that the window itself.

Moving text-fields

Sometimes you will find that a text-field obscures some other piece of information on the screen, for example a node or another text-field. Although you can move the field by moving the node that it corresponds to, it is not always desirable to do this, if this happens then you can move the text-field on its own.

Open up any text-field as before. Hold down the CONTROL key ,at the extreme front left of the computer keyboard, position the mouse pointer anywhere on the field, and hold the mouse button down, the cursor changes to an arrowed-cross, moving the mouse will now cause the text-field to move.

Copying text

Sometimes you may wish to copy text from one field to another, this can be done by using the 'Edit' menu.

If there are no fields open, then open one up by double clicking on a node. Type some text into the field (rubbish will do). Select the text in the field by holding the mouse button down at the beginning of the text that you wish to select, and then dragging the mouse over the rest of the text, the text should highlight as you do this. Release the mouse button when the text is selected. Move the mouse to the 'Edit' menu towards the left hand side of the menu bar, hold down the mouse button and select the option 'Copy'. Open up another text field and place the insertion point in the field. Go up the file menu again, and select the option 'Paste Text'. The text that you copied should now appear in the field.

Expanding nodes

To reduce screen clutter all the nodes are created the same size, this may mean that the name that you gave to it is obscured by the edges of the node. In order to allow you to read the name of a node it can be expanded briefly simply by holding down the shift key on the keyboard, and clicking over the node with the mouse.

Try this now although you may find that none of your names are long enough for it to have an effect, if this is so try it later on.

USING BALLOON HELP

In order to help you as you create a network a balloon help facility is provided that allows you to find out what the various buttons do.

Click on the balloon help button (the icon with the question mark in the speech bubble). Placing the cursor over any of the buttons will result in a bubble appearing telling you what function the button performs. To turn balloon help off, simply click over the balloon help button again.

The goals of the task [All subjects]

The paper that you have been given contains information that relates to anorexia and bulimia nervosa. Read through the paper making use of the tool to construct a map of the information. Pay particular attention to:

- The nature of the diseases,
- Proposed theories for why they arise,
- Evidence supporting or refuting these theories.

You have a maximum of 2 hours to complete the task, but you can finish before this if you wish. When you have finished I will ask you to write a short summary of the information in this paper, this will

Instructions for writing summary [All subjects]

Write a summary of the information contained in the paper with particular reference to:

- The nature of the diseases,
- Proposed theories for why they arise,
- Evidence supporting or refuting these theories.

Try and get across the main points rather than the details, and pay attention to the structure of the summary; try and make it as clear as possible. Write no more than a page.

Hints Sheet [All subjects]

- Start by identifying and specifying the question that you are interested in answering, make it your goal to answer this, use sub-questions if necessary.

- Identify the key claims of the argument(s).

- Identify the evidence that relates to these claims.

- Don't be in a rush to link nodes together, often it's better to wait a while until you're more sure of what should be linked to what.

- Reflect upon what you are doing regularly. Asking yourself questions relating to the identity of certain components of the argument, for example: "Is this a claim or a critique?", "Is there any evidence to support this claim?" can often be of great benefit.

- Try and use as little text as possible, when typing check whether some of the information in the text might not be better represented as part of the network.

- Check the validity of the relationships that you have created; you may find that you will need to change them, or restructure the network as you progress.

- Try and provide a summary of your conclusions in the question box.

Rating sheet [independent raters]

Here are some guidelines for marking the maps that I have given you. Completeness refers to how well the subject managed to incorporate the information in the paper (with respect to the goals of the task). Remember that some of the information that was in the paper is NOT necessarily relevant to the task in hand. It's up to you how you deal with this. Communication relates to how clearly the subject communicates the ideas that they have in the map. To some extent these are independent factors. Someone may include everything, but may communicate it poorly, and vice versa.

Remember it is the maps that you are marking NOT the text. Use the text to disambiguate uncertain nodes, but mark only the map. Some things that you may find useful. (1) Are the nodes given meaningful and appropriate type names (the top name on the node). (2) Are the names clear. (3) Are the link names understandable and correct, etc.

Overall impression. This is a subjective mark that you can assign yourself. Basically how good is the map (imagine that you are learning about the stuff for the first time). This will naturally have both communication and completeness in it, but try and make it more than just the sum of these two scores.

Add comments if you wish.

Card number 1

Completeness

Communication

Overall impression

Comments

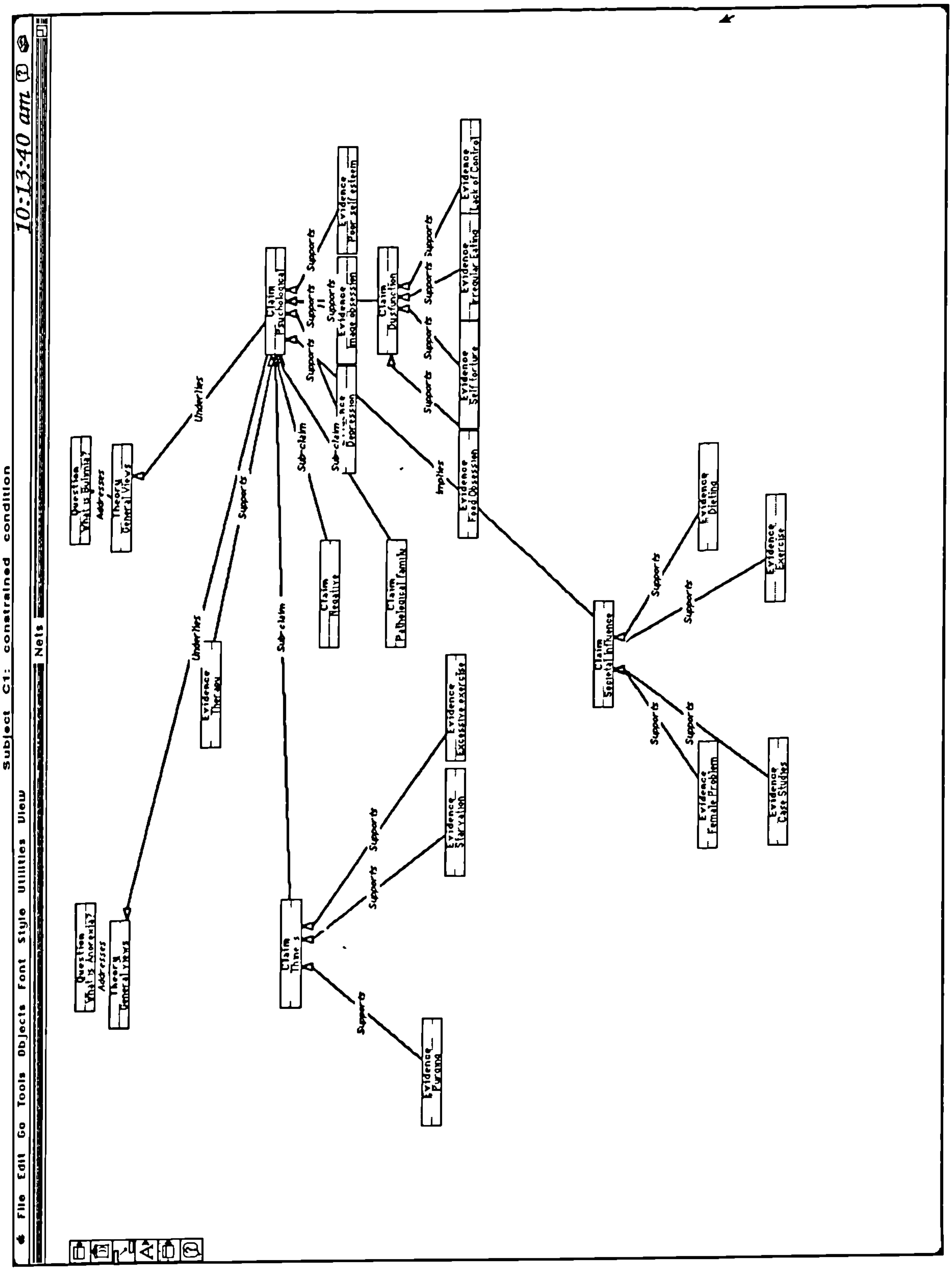
[...ETC]

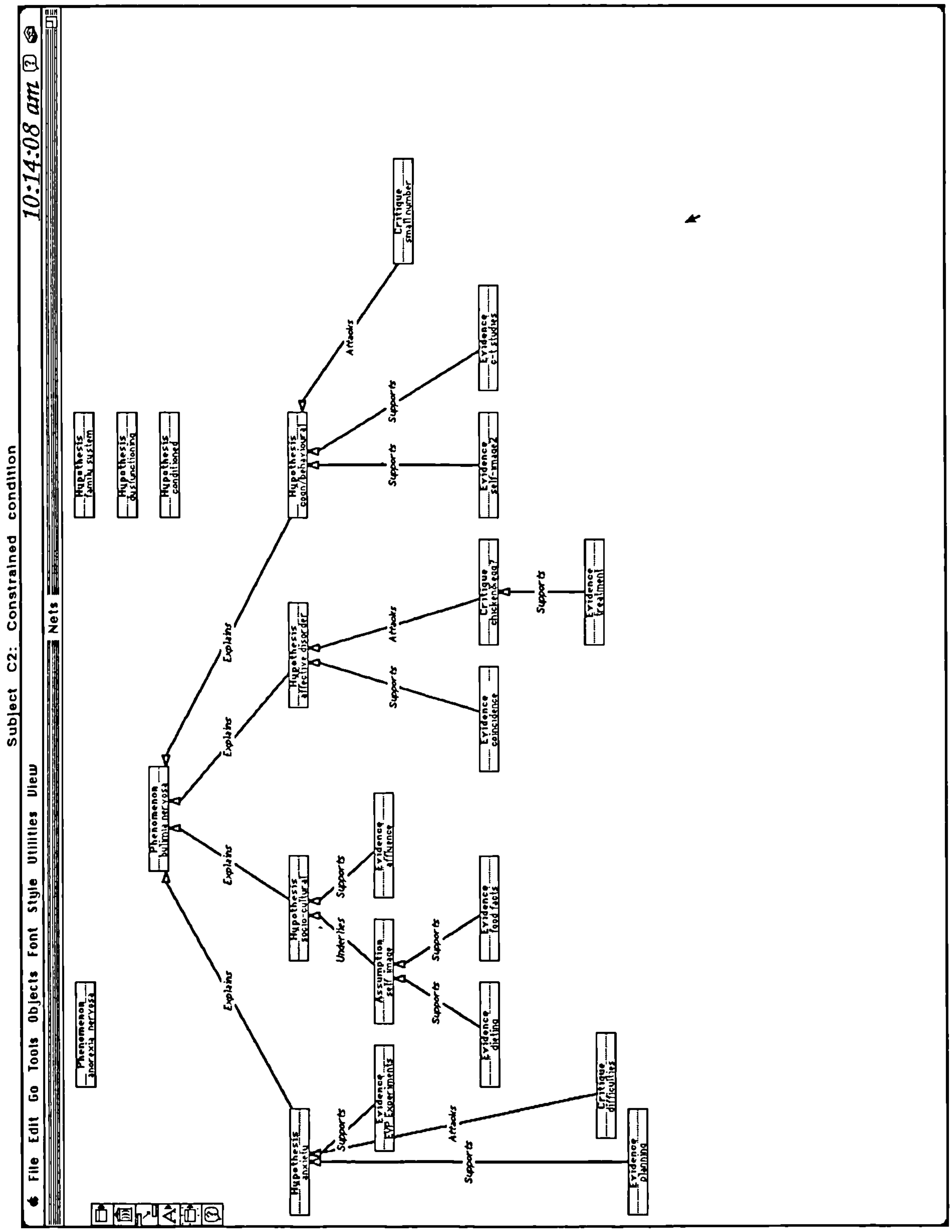
Marking scheme for maps (numbers in bold denote points for inclusion)

Central Models (also theories) 2 points for model 2 for theory 1 for claim 1 for hypothesis		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
Affective disorder **2**	2												
Anxiety model **2**	2												
Cognitive-behavioural model **2**	2												
Society model **2**	2												
Periphral models (also theories)													
Ego-psychological **1**	1												
Reinforcement **1**	1												
Family systems **1**	1												
Biological model **1**	1												
Central propositions													
Socio													
Dieting supports Socio **2**	2												
Disease of affluence supports Socio **2**	2												
Essentially female problem supports Socio **2**	2												
Critique (or evidence) Men that men are also anorexix Attacks (or contradicts) Socio-cultural model **1**	1												
Case studies support sociocultural model **2**	2												
Family systems model can't explain why it is a disesase of Affluent Society **2**	2												
Anxiety model can't explain why it is a disesase of Affluent Society **2**	2												
Affective can't exaplain why it is a disesase of Affluent Society **2**	2												
Family systems can't explain why women tend to get eating disorders **2**	2												
Anxiety can't explain why women tend to get eating disorders**2**	2												
Affective can't exaplain why women tend to get eating disorders**2**	2												
Socio-cultural model Explains AN & BN **2** Strongly **3**	3												
Affective disorder model													
Evidence - Depression associated with with eating disorders supports Affective model **2**	2												

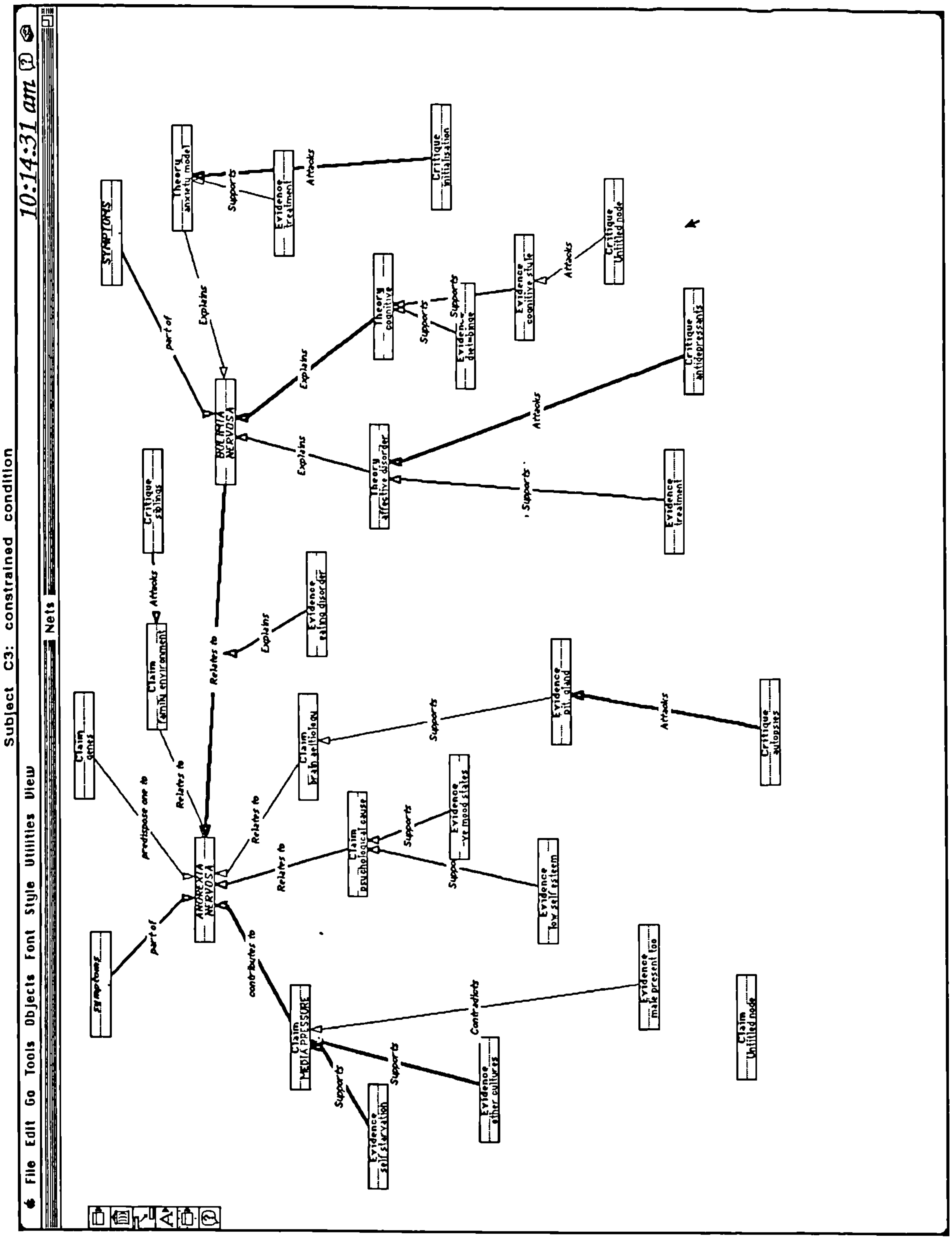
Critique - No notion of whether this above is a cause or effect Attacks depression (or affective model) **2**	2												
Evidence - Anti-depressants no use in treatment of eating disorders contradicts Affective model **2**	2												
Evidence - No relation between treatment for depression and recovery Contradicts depression (or Affective model) **2**	2												
Evidence (or claim) The fact that suffers have poor self-esteem Supports Affective model	1												
Evidence (or claim) Family members score highly on situational depression scale Supports Depression (or Afffective model) **1**	1												
Affective disorder Explains AN & BN **2** Weakly **3**	3												
Anxiety model													
Claim - Vomiting reduces anxiety **2**	2												
Evidence (or critique) - Why do sufferers binge if fear of overweight? contradicts (or attack) Anxiety model (or contra-position) **2**	2												
Evidence - The fact that sufferes plan to binge Supports Anxiety model (or attacks above evidence) **2**	2												
Claim (or assumption) binging result of vomiting rather than cause Underlies Anxiety model **1**	1												
Anxiety model Explains (or these underly or Support the anxiety model:													
Anxiety model explains Maintenance **1**	1												
Critique No account of start attacks Anxiety model **2**	2												
Evidence Sufferes show Cog. dysfunctions explained by or supports Anxiety model **1**	1												
Assumption - Two factor model Underlies Anxiety model **1**	1												
Critique - Correlates rather than causal attacks any of this evidence (or model) **2**	2												
Hypothesis -- Cues antecedent to onset of binge/vomit cycle**1**	1												

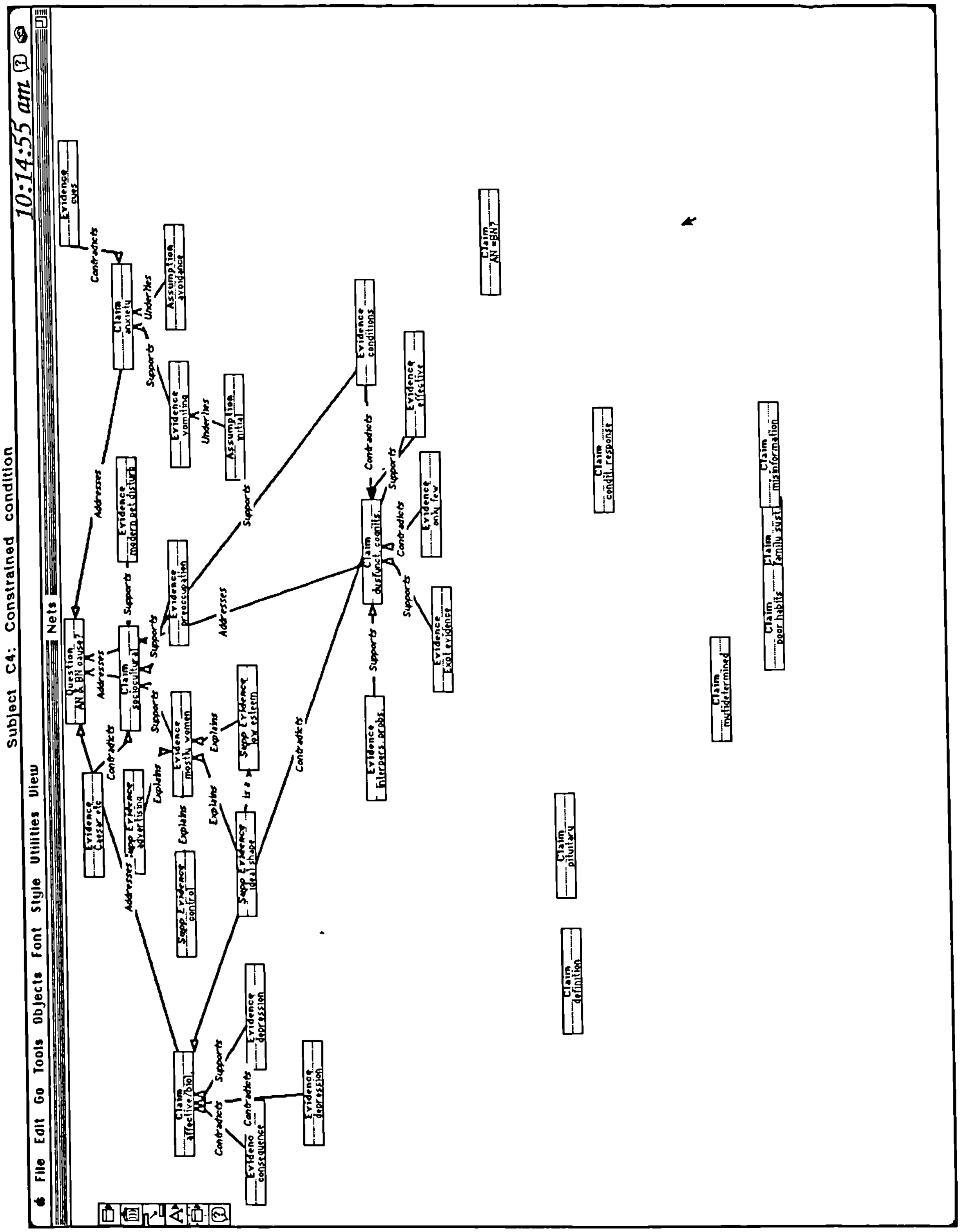
Evidence Cues not arousing contradicts Anxiety model **2**	2												
Evidence Treatment (EVP) Supports (ish) Anxiety model (Poss claim) **2**	2												
Anxiety model explains AN & BN **2** Weakly **3**	3												
Cognitive model													
Evidence BNs high in dietary restraint Supports Cog. model **2**	2												
Evidence Sufferes show dysfunctional cognitions Supports Cog. model **2**	2												
Evidence Results of Heyneman study Supports Cog. style (or cog model)**2**	2												
Cog. model Explains Paradoxical binging **1**	1												
Evidence (or claim or critique) not all People with cog dys are BN Contradicts (or attacks) Cog. model. **2**	2												
Claim (or Assumption) Dysfunctional cognitions Underlies Cog. model **1**	1												
Evidence Treatment studies Supports Cog. model **2**	2												
Evidence (or critique) Psychotherapy as good as cognitive therapy Contradicts Cog. model **1** or Attacks treatment studies **2**	2												
Critique (**2**) or Evidence (**1**) Methodology Attacks or Contradicts Treatment studies (or cog model)	2												
Critique Mechanisms elusive Attacks Cog model or treatment **1**	1												
Evidence better than pharmacological treatments Supports Cog. model or Treatments **1**	1												
Cog model Explains BN or addresses Question BN **2** Weighted strong **3**	3												
Cog model Explains AN & BN or Eating disorders **2** Weighted Weak (or not explains 2) **3**	3												

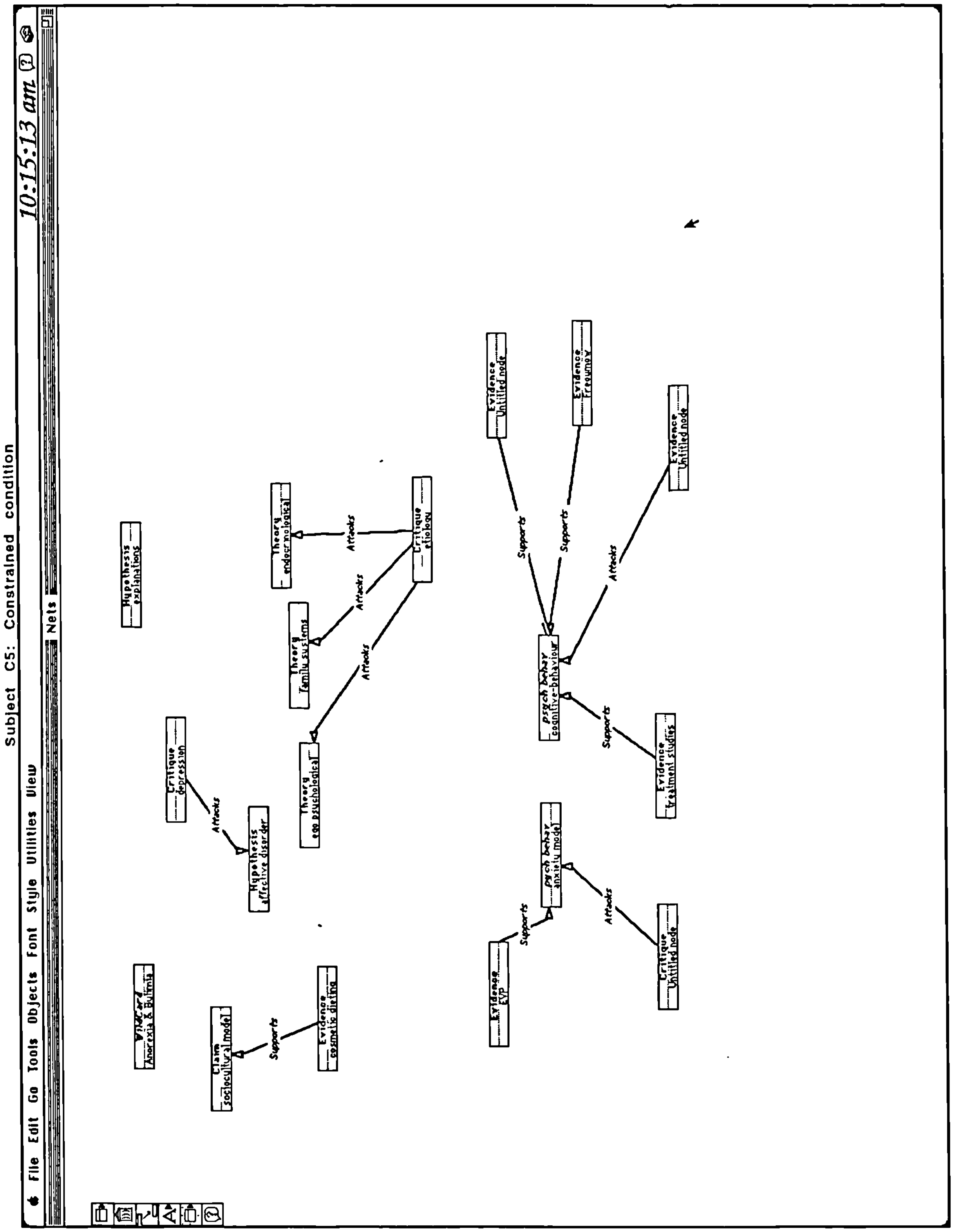

File Edit Go Tools Objects Font Style Utilities View
Subject C1: constrained condition
10:13:40 am
Nets
Question
What is Bulimia?
Addresses
Theory
General Views
Underlies
Claim
Psychological
Supports
Evidence
Poor self esteem
Evidence
Image obsession
Claim
Dysfunction
Evidence
Irregular Eating
Evidence
Lack of Control
Evidence
Self torture
Evidence
Depression
Sub-claim
Implies
Evidence
Food Obsession
Claim
Negative
Claim
Pathological family
Evidence
Therapy
Claim
Societal Influence
Evidence
Dieting
Evidence
Exercise
Evidence
Female Problem
Evidence
Case Studies
Evidence
Excessive exercise
Evidence
Starvation
Question
What is Anorexia?
Theory
General Views



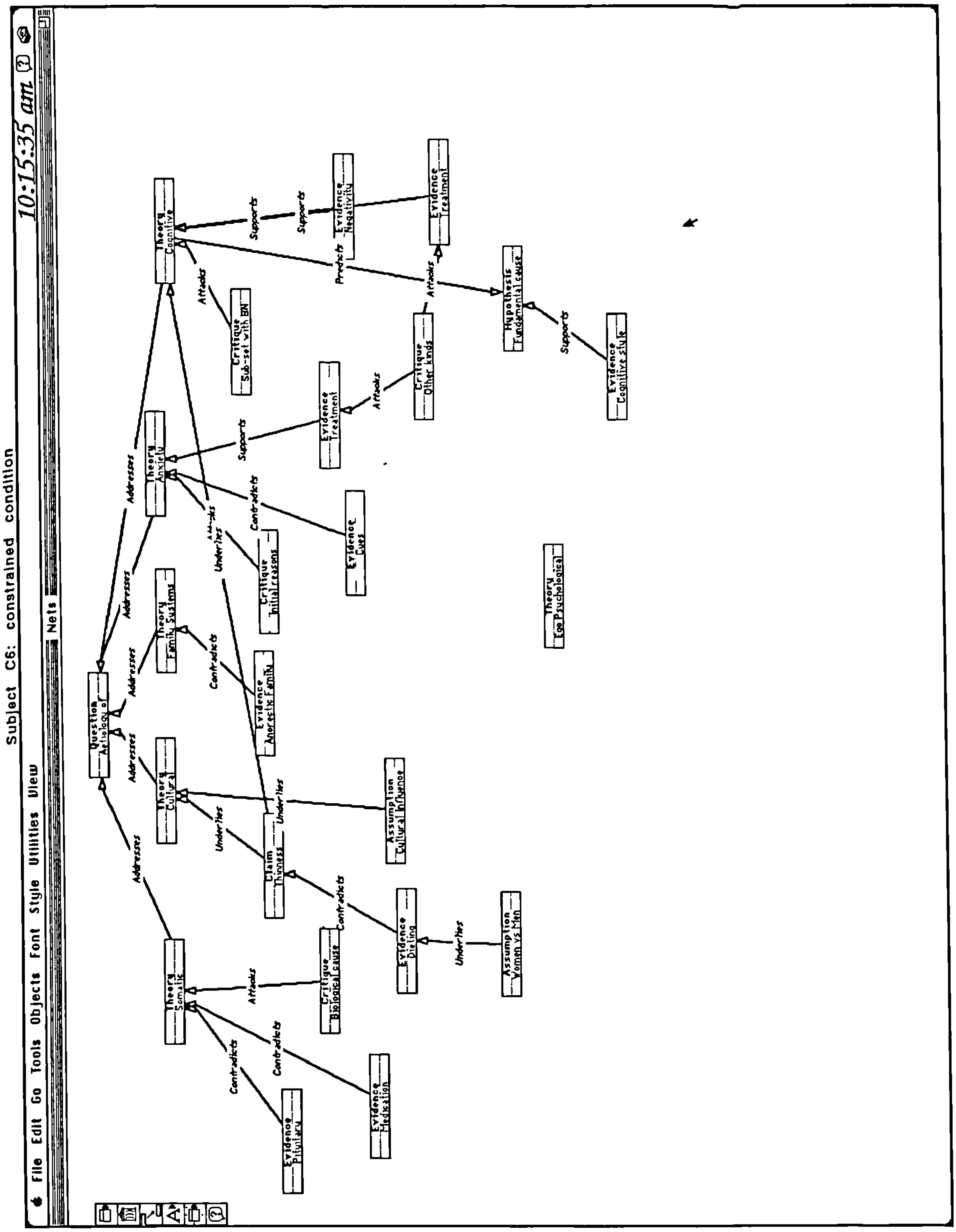
Subject C2: Constrained condition
File Edit Go Tools Objects Font Style Utilities View
10:14:08 am
Nets
Phenomenon anorexia nervosa
Phenomenon bulimia nervosa
Hypothesis family system
Hypothesis dysfunctioning
Hypothesis conditioned
Hypothesis anxiety
Hypothesis socio-cultural
Hypothesis affective disorder
Hypothesis cogn/behavioural
Assumption self image
Evidence EVP Experiments
Evidence affluence
Evidence dieting
Evidence food facts
Evidence coincidence
Evidence self-image
Evidence c-l studies
Evidence treatment
Evidence planning
Critique difficulties
Critique chicken&egg?
Critique small number
Explains
Supports
Attacks
Underlies

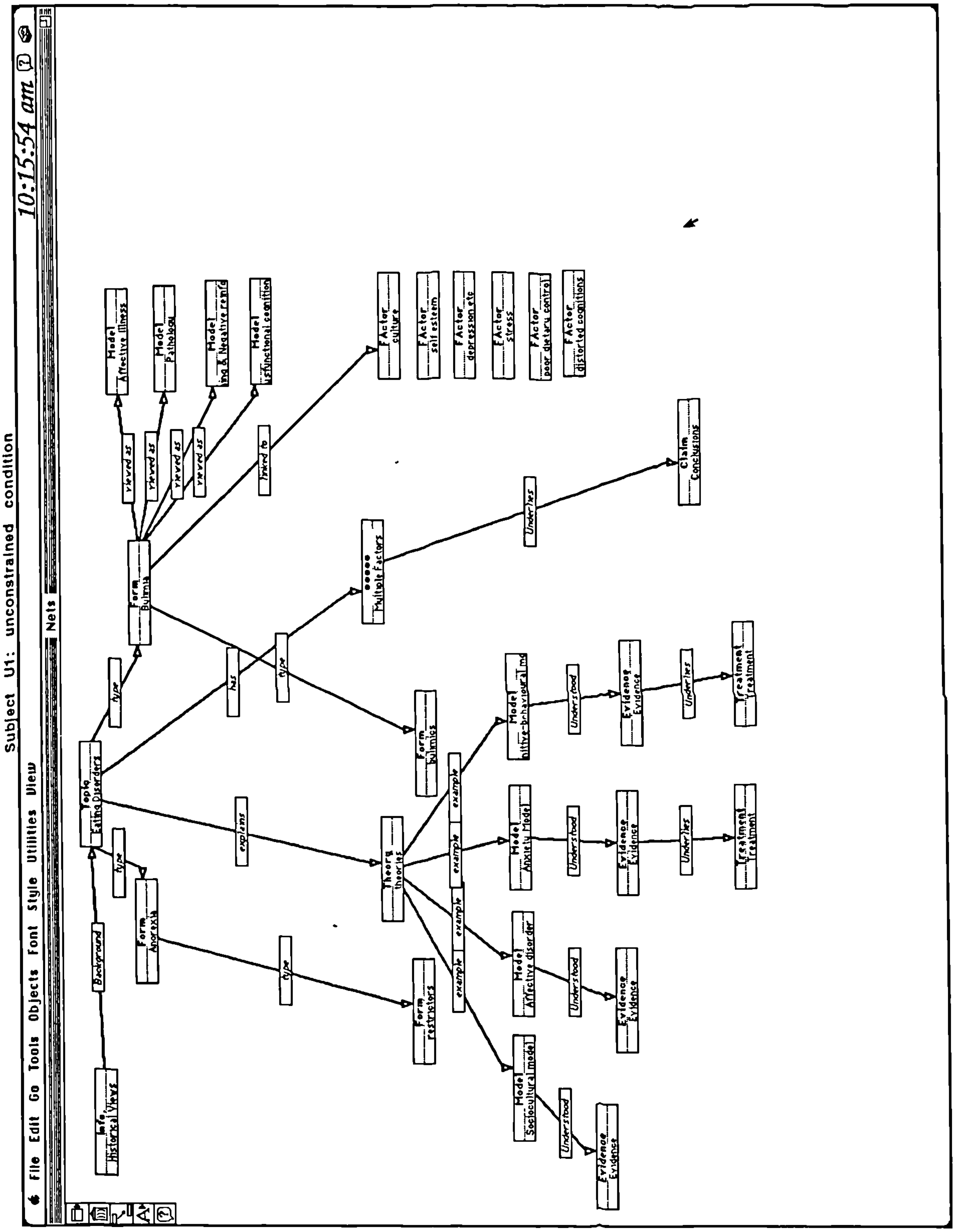

File Edit Go Tools Objects Font Style Utilities View
Subject C3: constrained condition
10:14:31 am
Nets
BULIMIA NERVOSA
ANOREXIA NERVOSA
Claim MEDIA PRESSURE
Theory anxiety model
Theory cognitive
Theory affective disorder
Evidence treatment
Critique initialisation
Evidence cognitive style
Critique Untitled node
Critique antidepressants
Critique sibling
Claim family environment
Evidence eating disorder
Claim genes
Claim brain aetiology
Evidence pit. gland
Critique autopsies
Claim psychological cause
Evidence -ve mood states
Evidence low self esteem
Evidence male present too
Evidence other cultures
Evidence self starvation
Claim Untitled node
SYMPTOMS
Explains
Supports
Attacks
part of
Relates to
predispose one to
contributes to
Contradicts

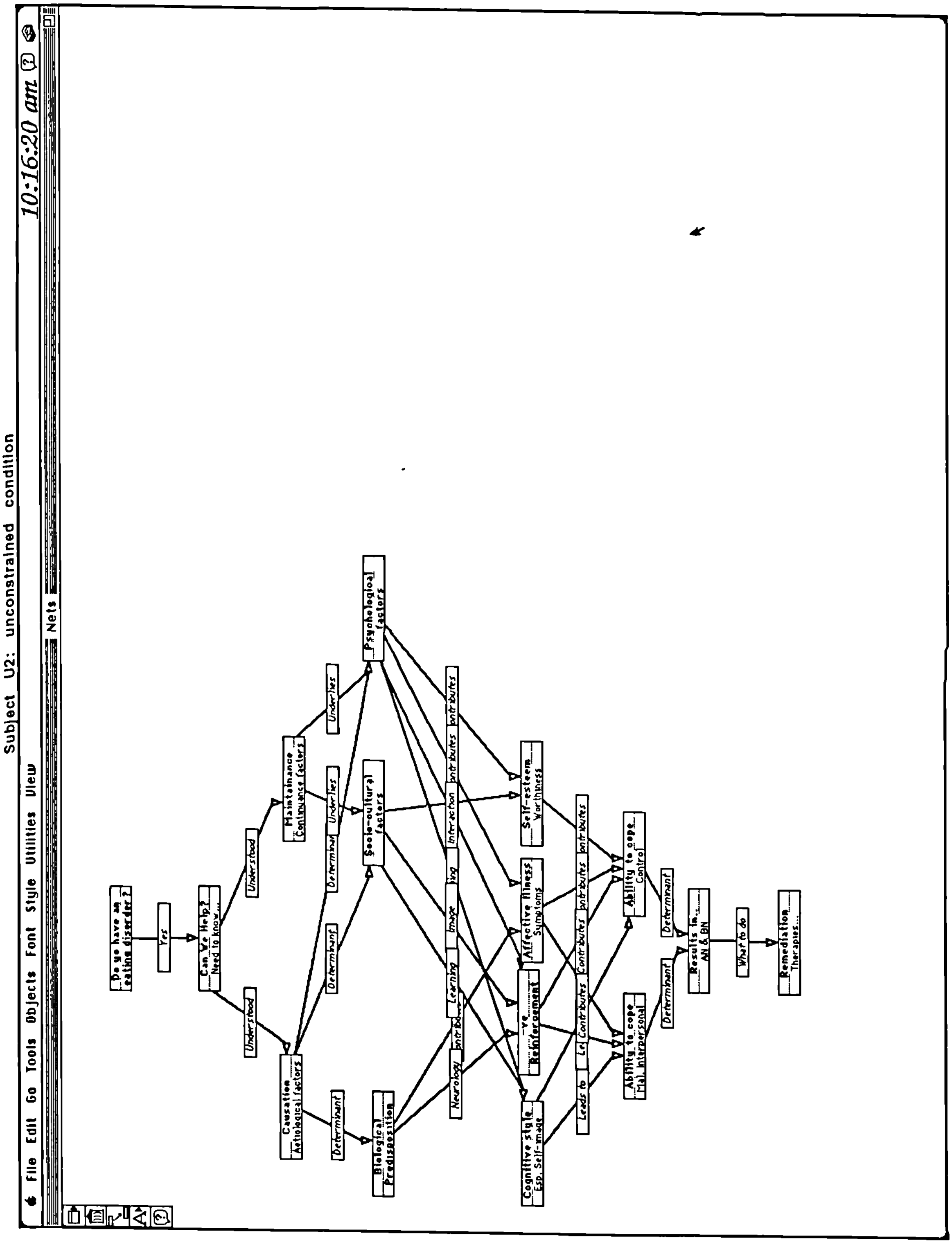

Subject C4: Constrained condition
File Edit Go Tools Objects Font Style Utilities View
Nets
10:14:55 am
Question
AN & BN causes?
Claim
anxiety
Claim
sociocultural
Claim
dysfunct. cognits.
Claim
affective/bio
Claim
AN =BN?
Claim
condit. response
Claim
misinformation
Claim
family sust.
Claim
poor habits
Claim
mutidetermined
Claim
pituitary
Claim
definition
Evidence
cues
Evidence
vomiting
Evidence
modern pet disturb
Evidence
preoccupation
Evidence
conditions
Evidence
effective
Evidence
only few
Evidence
Expl evidence
Evidence
Interpers. probs.
Evidence
mostly women
Evidence
Caesar etc
Evidence
depression
Evidence
consequence
Assumption
avoidance
Assumption
initial
Supp Evidence
advertising
Supp Evidence
control
Supp Evidence
ideal shape
Supp Evidence
low esteem
Addresses
Supports
Contradicts
Underlies
Explains
is a



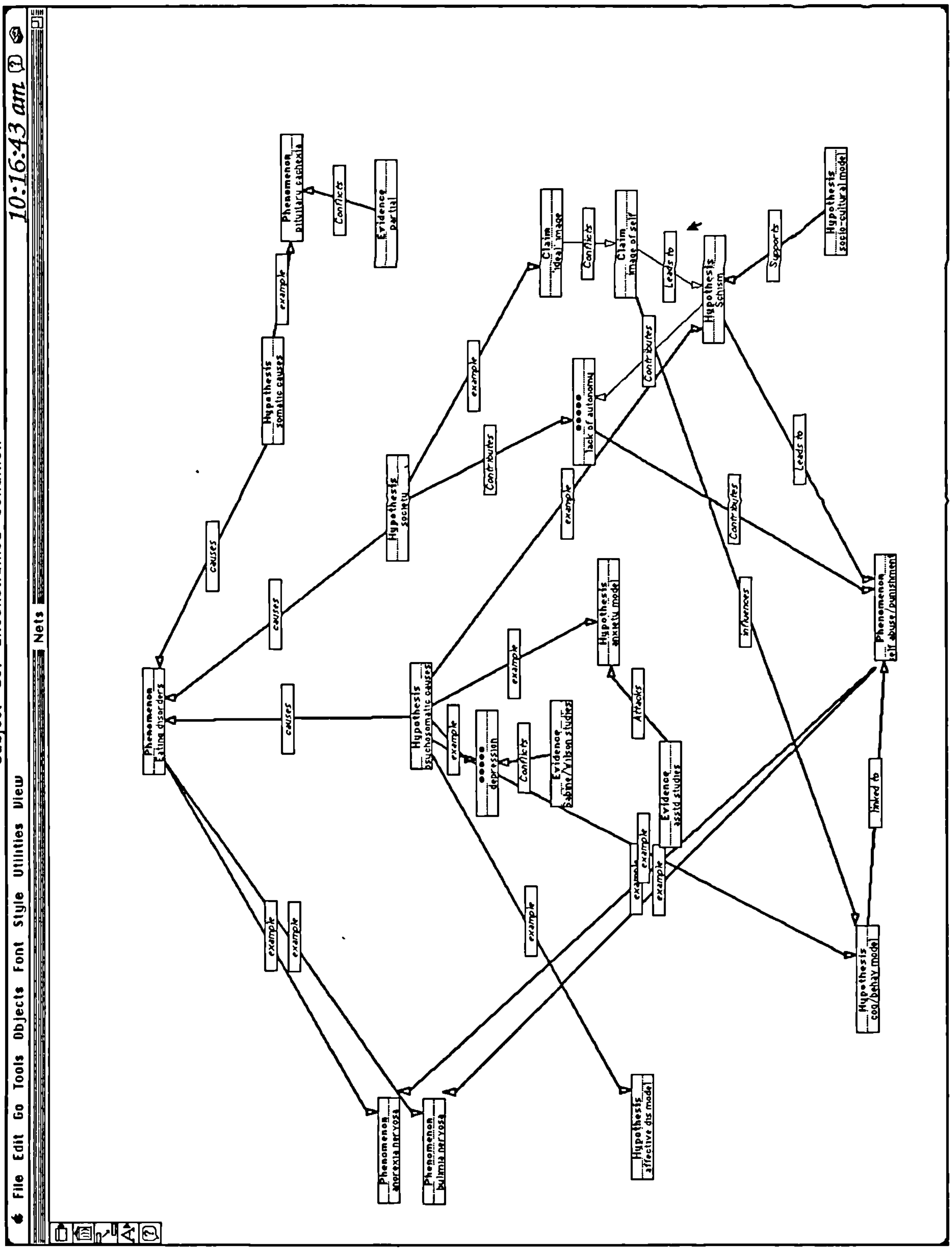
Subject C5: Constrained condition
10:15:13 am
File Edit Go Tools Objects Font Style Utilities View
Nets
Hypothesis
explanations
Theory
endocrinological
Critique
etiology
Theory
family systems
Theory
ego psychological
Critique
depression
Hypothesis
affective disorder
Claim
sociocultural model
Evidence
cosmetic dieting
Anorexia & Bulimia
Evidence
Untitled node
Evidence
Frequency
psych behav
cognitive-behaviour
Evidence
treatment studies
psych behav
anxiety model
Critique
Untitled node
Evidence
EVP
Attacks
Supports

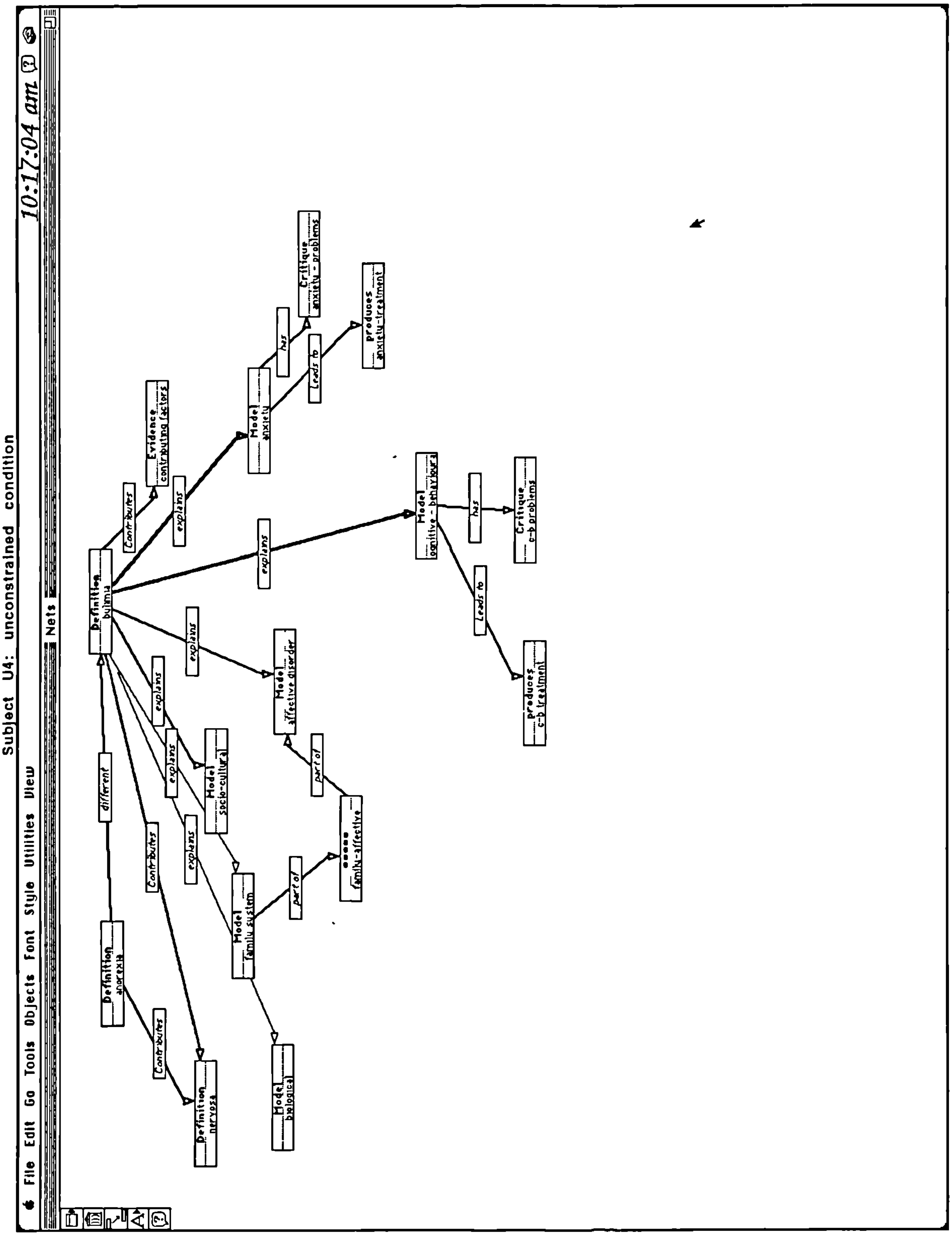

File Edit Go Tools Objects Font Style Utilities View
Subject C6: constrained condition
10:15:35 am
Nets
Theory Cognitive
Evidence Negativity
Evidence Treatment
Hypothesis Fundamental cause
Evidence Cognitive style
Critique Sub-set with BN
Critique Other kinds
Evidence Treatment
Theory Anxiety
Evidence Cues
Critique Initial reasons
Theory Family Systems
Evidence Anorectic Family
Theory Ego Psychological
Question Aetiology of
Theory Cultural
Assumption Cultural Influence
Claim Thinness
Evidence Dieting
Assumption Women vs Men
Theory Somatic
Critique Biological cause
Evidence Medication
Evidence Pituitary
Supports
Predicts
Attacks
Addresses
Contradicts
Underlies

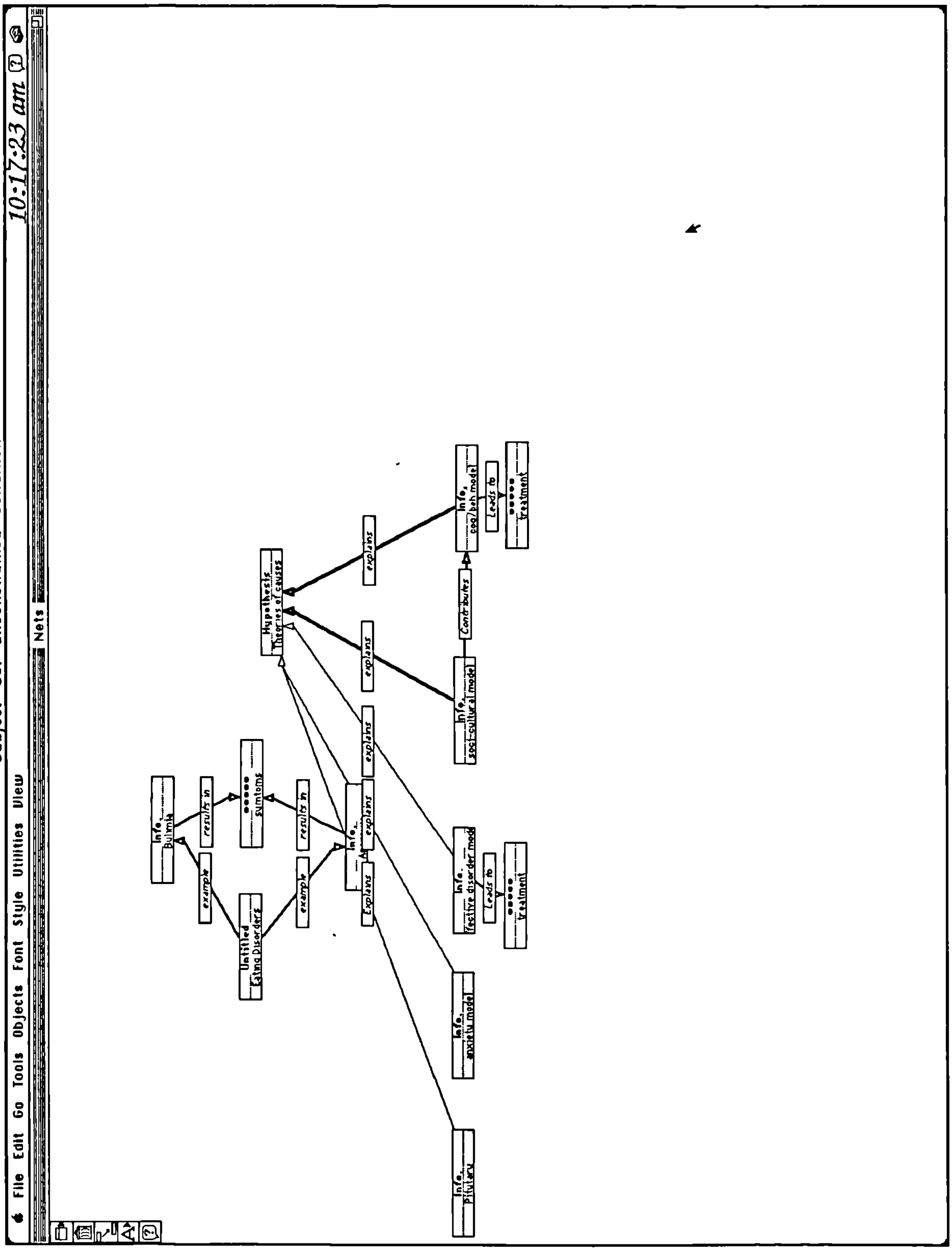

Subject U1: unconstrained condition
10:15:54 am
File Edit Go Tools Objects Font Style Utilities View
Nets
Topic
Eating Disorders
Info
Historical Views
Background
type
Form
Anorexia
Form
Bulimia
viewed as
linked to
Model
Affective illness
Model
Pathology
Model
Dysfunctional cognition
FActor
culture
FActor
self esteem
FActor
depression etc
FActor
stress
FActor
poor dietary control
FActor
distorted cognitions
has
Multiple Factors
Underlies
Claim
Conclusions
Form
bulimics
Form
restrictors
explains
Theory
theories
example
Model
Anxiety Model
Model
Affective disorder
Model
Sociocultural model
Understood
Evidence
Treatment

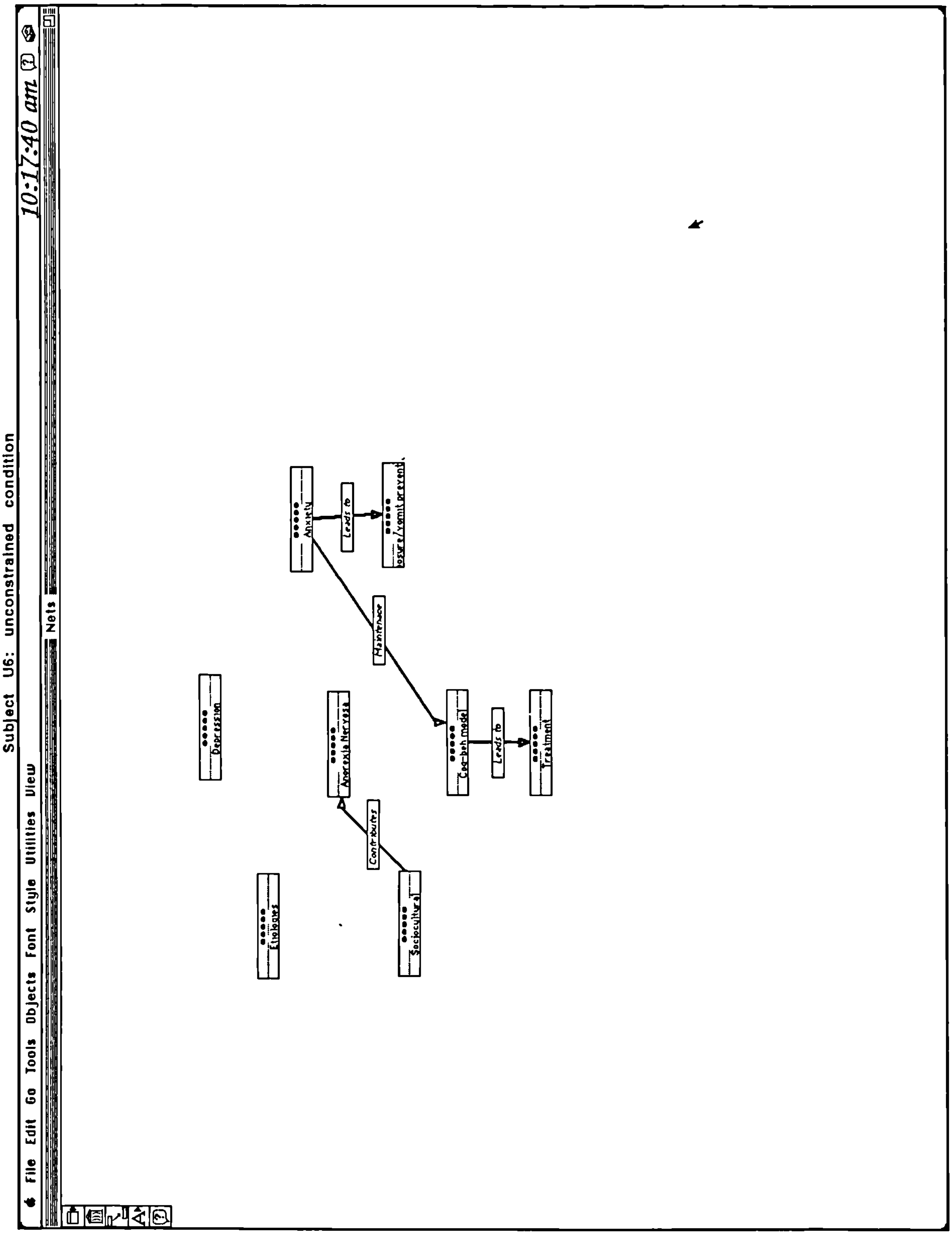


Subject U2: unconstrained condition
File Edit Go Tools Objects Font Style Utilities View
10:16:20 am
Nets
Do you have an eating disorder?
Yes
Can We Help?
Need to know...
Understood
Understood
Maintenance
Contributory factors
Causation
Aetiological factors
Underlies
Underlies
Determinant
Determinant
Determinant
Psychological factors
Socio-cultural factors
Biological Predisposition
Contributes
Contributes
Interaction
Image
Learning
Neurology
Self-esteem
Worthiness
Affective illness
Symptoms
-ve Reinforcement
Cognitive style
Esp. Self-image
Contributes
Contributes
Contributes
Contributes
Leads to
Ability to cope
Control
Ability to cope
Mal. interpersonal
Determinant
Determinant
Results in...
AN & BN
What to do
Remediation
Therapies...


Subject U3: unconstrained condition
File Edit Go Tools Objects Font Style Utilities View
Nets
10:16:43 am
Phenomenon Eating disorders
causes
Hypothesis somatic causes
example
Phenomenon pituitary cachexia
Conflicts
Evidence partial
Hypothesis society
Contributes
Claim "ideal" image
Conflicts
Claim image of self
Leads to
Hypothesis Schism
Supports
Hypothesis socio-cultural model
●●●●● lack of autonomy
Hypothesis psychosomatic causes
Hypothesis anxiety model
Attacks
●●●●● depression
Evidence Sabine/Wilson studies
Phenomenon self abuse/punishment
influences
linked to
Hypothesis cog/behav model
Phenomenon anorexia nervosa
Phenomenon bulimia nervosa
Hypothesis affective dis model


File Edit Go Tools Objects Font Style Utilities View
Subject U4: unconstrained condition
10:17:04 am
Nets
Definition bulimia
Definition anorexia
Definition nervosa
Evidence contributing factors
Model anxiety
Critique anxiety - problems
produces anxiety-treatment
Model cognitive - behavioural
Critique c-b problems
produces c-b treatment
Model affective disorder
Model socio-cultural
Model family system
Model biological
family-affective
explains
contributes
different
has
leads to
part of


Subject U5: unconstrained condition
File Edit Go Tools Objects Font Style Utilities View
10:17:23 am
Nets
Hypothesis Theories of causes
explains
Info. cog/beh model
Leads to
Treatment
Contributes
Info. soci-cultural model
Info. Bulimia
results in
symtoms
example
Untitled Eating Disorders
Info.
Info. fective disorder mode
Info. anxiety model
Info. Pituitary


Subject U6: unconstrained condition
File Edit Go Tools Objects Font Style Utilities View
10:17:40 am
Nets
Depression
Anorexia Nervosa
Etiologies
Contributes
Sociocultural
Anxiety
Leads to
osure/vomit prevent.
Maintenance
Cog-beh model
Leads to
Treatment